



# Project Manual for CCHS FIELDHOUSE & SOCCER FIELDS

12943 South 700 East  
Draper, Utah 84020

Construction Documents

**VOLUME 1**

(DIVISIONS 00 – 14)



Prepared by:



233 So. Pleasant Grove Blvd., Suite 105  
Pleasant Grove, Utah 84062

CORE Project No. 24-013  
September 12, 2024

THESE SPECIFICATIONS ARE COMPLEMENTARY TO THE CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS AND  
THE SPECIFICATIONS AND CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS CONSTITUTE THE CONSTRUCTION  
DOCUMENTS FOR THE PROJECT

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

| Division | Section Title |
|----------|---------------|
|----------|---------------|

**VOLUME ONE**

**DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 00 0001 | TABLE OF CONTENTS   |
| 00 0101 | PROJECT TITLE PAGE  |
| 00 0102 | PROJECT DIRECTORY   |
| 00 2113 | INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS   |
|         | CORNER CANYONS SCHOOL DISTRICT BIDDING INSTRUCTIONS                     |
| 00 3132 | GEOTECHNICAL DATA   |
|         | PROCUREMENT FORMS   |
|         | AIA A201-2017 General Conditions of the Contract for Construction       |
|         | AIA A310 - Bid Bond   |
|         | AIA A312 - Performance Bond   |
|         | Aia G701 – Change Order   |
|         | AIA G702 - Application and Certificate for Payment                      |
|         | AIA G703 - Continuation Page  |
|         | AIA A101 - Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor_2017 |
|         | AIA Document A101 - Exhibit A Insurance and Bonds                       |
| 00 4113 | BID FORM – STIPULATED SUM (SINGLE-PRIME CONTRACTOR)                     |

**DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 01 0010 | DEFERRED SUBMITTALS   |
| 01 1000 | SUMMARY   |
| 01 2300 | ALTERNATES  |
| 01 2500 | SUBSTITUTION REQUEST  |
|         | CSI Form 1.5C - Substitution Request During the Bidding Stage |
|         | CDI Form 13.1A – Substitution request After the Bidding Stage |
| 01 2600 | CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES                              |
| 01 2900 | PAYMENT PROCEDURES  |
| 01 3100 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION                           |
| 01 3200 | CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION                           |
| 01 3233 | PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION                                    |
| 01 3300 | SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  |
| 01 4000 | QUALITY REQUIREMENTS  |
| 01 4200 | REFERENCES  |
| 01 5000 | TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS                             |
| 01 6000 | PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS  |
| 01 7300 | EXECUTION   |
| 01 7419 | CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL                    |
| 01 7700 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES   |
| 01 7823 | OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA                                |
| 01 7839 | PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS                                      |

**DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**

|         |                                  |
|---------|----------------------------------|
| 03 1000 | CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES |
| 03 2000 | CONCRETE REINFORCING             |
| 03 3000 | CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE           |

**DIVISION 04 – MASONRY**

|         |                  |
|---------|------------------|
| 04 0110 | MASONRY CLEANING |
| 04 2000 | UNIT MASONRY     |
| 04 2613 | MASONRY VENEER   |

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

|         |                           |
|---------|---------------------------|
| 05 1200 | STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING  |
| 05 3100 | STEEL DECKING             |
| 05 4000 | COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING |
| 05 5000 | METAL FABRICATIONS        |
| 05 5113 | METAL PAN STAIRS          |
| 05 5213 | PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS    |

**DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTIC AND COMPOSITES**

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| 06 1000 | ROUGH CARPENTRY                                |
| 06 1600 | SHEATHING                                      |
| 06 4116 | PLASTIC-LAMINATED-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS |

**DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| 07 1100    | UNDERSLAB VAPOR BARRIER                   |
| 07 1113    | BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING                   |
| 07 1900    | WATER REPELLENTS                          |
| 07 2100    | THERMAL INSULATION                        |
| 07 2500    | WEATHER BARRIER.                          |
| 07 4213.23 | METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS      |
| 07 5419    | POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING          |
| 07 6200    | SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM             |
| 07 7200    | ROOF ACCESSORIES                          |
| 07 8413    | PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING                  |
| 07 8446    | FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS              |
| 07 9200    | JOINT SEALANTS                            |
| 07 9513.13 | INTERIOR EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES |

**DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 08 1113 | HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES                 |
| 08 1416 | FLUSH WOOD DOORS                              |
| 08 3113 | ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES                       |
| 08 3323 | OVERHEAD COILING DOORS                        |
| 08 4113 | ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS     |
| 08 4523 | TRANSLUCENT STRUCTURAL SKYLIGHT & WALL SYSTEM |
| 08 7100 | DOOR HARDWARE                                 |
| 08 8000 | GLAZING                                       |
| 08 8300 | MIRRORS                                       |

**DIVISION 09 – FINISHES**

|         |                              |
|---------|------------------------------|
| 09 2216 | NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING |
| 09 2900 | GYPSUM BOARD                 |

|         |                                |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| 09 3013 | CERAMIC TILING                 |
| 09 5113 | ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING       |
| 09 6513 | RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES |
| 09 6519 | RESILIENT TILE FLOORING (LVT)  |
| 09 6566 | RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING    |
| 09 6813 | TILE CARPETING                 |
| 09 9113 | EXTERIOR PAINTING              |
| 09 9124 | INTERIOR PAINTING              |
| 09 9623 | GRAFFITI-RESISTANCE COATINGS   |

**DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| 10 1100    | VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS                     |
| 10 1200    | DISPLAY CASES                            |
| 10 1423    | PANEL SIGNAGE                            |
| 10 2113    | PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS        |
| 10 2600    | WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION                 |
| 10 2623.11 | DECORATIVE PROTECTION PANELS             |
| 10 2800    | TOILET, BATH AND LOCKER ROOM ACCESSORIES |
| 10 4413    | FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS               |
| 10 4416    | FIRE EXTINGUISHER                        |
| 10 5113    | METAL LOCKERS                            |

**DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT**

|            |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|
| 11 5213    | PROJECTION SCREENS        |
| 11 6623    | GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT       |
| 11 6833    | FIXED INDOOR NETTING      |
| 11 6833.33 | RETRACTABLE BATTING CAGES |

**DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS**

|            |                                |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| 12 2413    | ROLLER WINDOW SHADES           |
| 12 3661.16 | SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS    |
| 12 3661.19 | QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS |
| 12 3663    | SOLID SURFACING WINDOWSILLS    |
| 12 4813    | ENTRANCE FLOOR TILES           |

**DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

|         |                        |
|---------|------------------------|
| 13 3419 | METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS |
|---------|------------------------|

**DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT**

|         |                     |
|---------|---------------------|
| 14 2400 | HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS |
|---------|---------------------|

**VOLUME TWO**

**DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

|        |                 |
|--------|-----------------|
| 21 000 | FIRE PROTECTION |
|--------|-----------------|

**DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING**

|         |            |
|---------|------------|
| 22 0000 | PLUMBING   |
| 22 0700 | INSULATION |

**DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING (HVAC)**

|         |                             |
|---------|-----------------------------|
| 23 0100 | GENERAL PROVISIONS          |
| 23 0501 | TESTING                     |
| 23 0593 | BALANCING                   |
| 23 0800 | SYSTEM COMMISSIONING        |
| 23 0900 | BASIC MATERIALS AND METHODS |
| 23 3000 | AIR DISTRIBUTION            |

**DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 26 0500 | ELECTRICAL GENERAL PROVISIONS                       |
| 26 0501 | MECHANICAL & ELECTRICAL COORDINATION                |
| 26 0502 | ELECTRICAL SUBMITTALS O & M MANUALS AND SPARE PARTS |
| 26 0507 | ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS FOR EQUIPMENT                |
| 26 0510 | ELEVATOR ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS                    |
| 26 0519 | CONDUCTORS AND CABLES (600V AND BELOW)              |
| 26 0526 | GROUNDING   |
| 26 0529 | SUPPORTING DEVICES                                  |
| 26 0532 | CONDUIT RACEWAY                                     |
| 26 0533 | ELECTRICAL BOXES AND FITTINGS                       |
| 26 0548 | ELECTRICAL SEISMIC CONTROL                          |
| 26 0553 | ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION                           |
| 26 0573 | PROTECTIVE DEVICE STUDY                             |
| 26 0923 | OCCUPANCY SENSORS                                   |
| 26 0943 | LIGHTING CONTROL EQUIPMENT                          |
| 26 2200 | TRANSFORMERS  |
| 26 2416 | PANELBOARDS   |
| 26 2713 | SERVICE ENTRANCE                                    |
| 26 2726 | WIRING DEVICES                                      |
| 26 2815 | OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES                      |
| 26 2816 | MOTOR AND CIRCUIT DISCONNECTS                       |
| 26 2819 | SCOREBOARDS & ATHLETIC EQUIPMENT                    |
| 26 2913 | MOTOR STARTERS                                      |
| 26 3213 | EMERGENCY ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS                        |
| 26 4314 | SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPD)                      |
| 26 5100 | INTERIOR AND EXTERIOR BUILDING LIGHTING             |
| 26 9000 | SYSTEM COMMISSIONING                                |

**DIVISION 27– COMMUNICATIONS**

|         |                              |
|---------|------------------------------|
| 27 1500 | TELEPHONE & DATA SYSTEMS CSD |
| 27 4100 | AUDIOVISUAL SYSTEMS          |
| 27 5123 | INTERCOMMUNICATIONS SYSTEM   |

**DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

|         |  |
|---------|--|
| 28 0501 | COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR SECURITY SYSTEMS |
| 28 1600 | INTRUSION DETECTION SYSTEM               |
| 28 2205 | ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM                    |

**DIVISION 29 - 30**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

|         |               |
|---------|---------------|
| 31 1000 | SITE CLEARING |
| 31 2000 | EARTH MOVING  |
| 31 2216 | FINE GRADING  |

**DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

|         |                                     |
|---------|-------------------------------------|
| 32 0101 | PLANT MAINTENANCE                   |
| 32 1216 | HOT-MIX ASPHALT PAVING              |
| 32 1313 | SITE CONCRETE                       |
| 32 1316 | EXTERIOR COLORED CONCRETE PAVING    |
| 32 1373 | CONCRETE PAVING JOINTS              |
| 32 3113 | CHAIN-LINK FENCES AND GATES         |
| 32 8423 | UNDERGROUND IRRIGATION              |
| 32 9001 | COMMON PLANTING REQUIREMENTS        |
| 32 9113 | FINISH GRADING AND SOIL PREPARATION |
| 32 9223 | SODDING                             |
| 32 9300 | PLANTS                              |

**DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES**

|         |                        |
|---------|------------------------|
| 33 4100 | STORM DRAINAGE SYSTEMS |
|---------|------------------------|

**END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 00 0001 | TABLE OF CONTENTS   |
| 00 0101 | PROJECT TITLE PAGE  |
| 00 0102 | PROJECT DIRECTORY   |
| 00 2113 | INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS   |
| 00 3132 | GEOTECHNICAL DATA   |
|         | PROCUREMENT FORMS   |
|         | AIA A201-2017 - General Conditions of the Contract for Construction |
|         | AIA A310 - Bid Bond   |
|         | AIA A312 - Performance Bond   |
|         | AIA G702 - Application and Certificate for Payment                  |
|         | AIA G703 - Continuation Page  |
|         | AIA A201 - General Conditions_2017                                  |
|         | AIA A101 Exhibit A Insurance and Bonds                              |
| 00 4113 | BID FORM – STIPULATED SUM (SINGLE-PRIME CONTRACTOR)                 |

DOCUMENT 00 0101 - PROJECT TITLE PAGE

1.1 PROJECT MANUAL – CONFORMANCE SET

- A. Corner Canyon High School – Fieldhouse & Soccer Fields  
12943 South 700 East  
Draper, Utah 84020
- B. Owner:  
Canyons School District  
9361 South 300 East  
Sandy, Utah 84070
- C. Architect:  
Project No. 24-013  
CORE Architecture  
233 South Pleasant Grove Boulevard, Suite 105  
Pleasant Grove, Utah 84062
- D. Issued: September 12, 2024
- E. Copyright 2024. All rights reserved.

END OF DOCUMENT 00 0101



00 0102 - PROJECT DIRECTORY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Identification of project team members and their contact information.

1.02 OWNER:

- A. Name: Canyons School District.
  - 1. Address: 9361 South 300 East
  - 2. City: Sandy
  - 3. State: Utah
  - 4. Zip Code: 84070

1.03 CONSULTANTS:

- A. Architect: Design Professional of Record. All correspondence from the Contractor regarding construction documents authored by Architect's consultants will be through this party, unless alternate arrangements are mutually agreed upon at preconstruction meeting.
  - 1. Company Name: CORE Architecture
    - a. Address: 233 S. Pleasant Grove Blvd., Suite 105
    - b. City: Pleasant Grove
    - c. State: Utah
    - d. Zip Code: 84062
    - e. Telephone: (801) 769-3000 - Office
  - 2. Primary Contacts:
    - a. Title: Principal
    - b. Name: Curtis Livingston, AIA – cell: (801) 787-7921
    - c. Email: [curtisl@corearch.com](mailto:curtisl@corearch.com)
  
  - Title: Project Manager
    - b. Name: Kyle Mendoza – cell: (801) 367-4839
    - c. Email: [kylem@corearch.com](mailto:kylem@corearch.com)
- B. Civil Engineering Consultant:
  - 1. Company Name: Meridian Engineering, Inc.
    - a. Address: 1628 W. 11010 S., Suite 102.
    - b. City: South Jordan.
    - c. State: Utah.
    - d. Zip Code: 84095.
    - e. Telephone: (801) 569-1315.
- C. Landscape Architect:
  - 1. Company Name: In-Site Design Group
    - a. Address: 17 North 470 West
    - b. City: American Fork
    - c. State: Utah
    - d. Zip Code: 84043
    - e. Telephone: (801) 756-5043

- D. Structural Engineering Consultant:
  - 1. Company Name: Calder Richards
    - a. Address: 1805 South Redwood Road, Suite 102
    - b. City: Salt Lake City
    - c. State: Utah
    - d. Zip Code: 84104
    - e. Telephone: (801) 466-1699
  
- E. Mechanical Engineering Consultant:
  - 1. Company Name: Olsen & Peterson Engineers, Inc.
    - a. Address: 14 East 2700 South
    - b. City: Salt Lake City
    - c. State: Utah
    - d. Zip Code: 84115
    - e. Telephone: (801) 486-4646
  
- F. Plumbing Engineering Consultant:
  - 1. Company Name: Olsen & Peterson Engineers, Inc.
    - a. Address: 14 East 2700 South
    - b. City: Salt Lake City
    - c. State: Utah
    - d. Zip Code: 84115
    - e. Telephone: (801) 486-4646
  
- G. Electrical Engineering Consultant:
  - 1. Company Name: BNA Consulting Engineers
    - a. Address: 635 South State Street
    - b. City: Salt Lake City
    - c. State: Utah
    - d. Zip Code: 84111
    - e. Telephone: (801) 532-2196

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION - NOT USED

END OF SECTION

DOCUMENT 002113 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

**Instructions to Bidders for the following PROJECT:**

Corner Canyon High School – Fieldhouse & Soccer Fields

**THE OWNER:**

Canyons School District  
9361 South 300 East  
Sandy, Utah 84070

**THE ARCHITECT:**

CORE Architecture  
233 South Pleasant Grove Boulevard, Suite 105  
Pleasant Grove, Utah 84092

1.1 DEFINITIONS

- A. Bidding Documents include the Bidding Requirements and the Proposed Contract Documents. The Bidding Requirements consists of the Invitation to Bid, Instructions to Bidders, the Bid Form and other sample bidding and contract forms. The proposed Contract Documents consist of the form of Agreement between the Owner and Contractor, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications and all Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract.

1.2 BIDDER'S REPRESENTATIONS

- A. The Bidder by making a Bid represents that:
  - 1. The Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents or Contract Documents, to the extent that such documentation relates to the work for the bid as submitted.
  - 2. The Bid is made in compliance with the Bidding Documents.
  - 3. The Bidder has visited the site and became familiar with the conditions under which the Work is to be performed.
  - 4. The Bid is based upon materials, equipment and systems required by the Bidding Documents to complete the PROJECT without exception.

1.3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

- A. The drawings and information in this package include Civil Construction Documents, which include the grading, utilities, paving, curb & gutters. Additional documents include site concrete building or equipment pad/pier requiring construction as part of this bid package (reinforcing schedule will be issued with addendum). The Electrical Plans show locations of light pole bases and construction details.
- B. Bidders shall use complete sets of Bidding Documents in preparing Bids; neither the Owner or Architect assumes responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.
- C. The Bidder shall carefully study and compare the Bidding Documents with each other, and shall examine the site and local conditions and at once report to the Architect errors, inconsistencies or ambiguities discovered.
- D. Bidders and Sub-bidders requiring clarification or interpretation of the Bidding Documents shall make a written request which shall reach the Architect at least seven days prior to the date for receipt of Bids.

- E. Interpretations, corrections and changes of the Bidding Documents will be made by Addendum.
- F. Substitutions
  - 1. The materials, products and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance and quality to be met by any proposed substitution.
  - 2. No substitution will be considered prior to the receipt of Bids unless written request for approval has been received by the Architect at least seven days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Refer to 00 2600 "Procurement Substitution Procedures" for additional information.
  - 3. If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval will be set forth in an Addendum. Bidders shall not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.
  - 4. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.
- G. Addenda
  - 1. Addenda will be transmitted to all invited Prime Bidders.
  - 2. Addenda will be issued no later than four days prior to the date for receipt of Bids except an Addendum withdrawing the request for the Bids or one which includes postponement of the date for receipt of Bids.
  - 3. Each Bidder shall ascertain prior to submitting a Bid that the Bidder has received all Addenda issued, and the Bidder shall acknowledge their receipt in the Bid.

#### 1.4 MODIFICATION OR WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS

- A. A bid may not be modified, withdrawn or canceled by the Bidder during the stipulated time period following the time and date designated for the receipt of Bids, and each Bidder so agrees in submitting a Bid.
- B. Prior to the time and date designated for receipt of Bids submitted may be modified or withdrawn by notice to the party receiving Bids at the designated for receipt of Bids. Such notice shall be in writing over the signature of the Bidder.
- C. Withdrawn Bids may be resubmitted up to the date and time designated for the receipt of Bids provided that they are then fully in conformance with these Instructions to Bidders.

#### 1.5 CONSIDERATION OF BIDS

- A. Opening of Bids – At the discretion of the Owner, the properly identified Bids received on time will be publicly opened.
- B. Rejection of Bids – Owner shall have the right to reject any and all Bids. A bid not accompanied by data required by the Bidding Documents, or a Bid which is in any way incomplete or irregular is subject to rejection.
- C. Acceptance of Bid (Award) – It is the intent of the Owner to award a Contract to the lowest qualified Bidder provided the Bid has been submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Bidding Documents and does not exceed the funds available. The Owner shall have the right to waive information and irregularities in a Bid received and to accept the Bid which, in the Owner's judgment, is in the Owner's own best interests.

#### 1.6 POST-BID INFORMATION

- A. Contractor's Qualification Statement – Bidders to whom award of a Contract is under consideration shall submit to the Architect, upon request, a properly executed AIA Document A305, Contractor's Qualification Statement.

- B. Owner's Financial Capacity – The Owner shall, at the request of the Bidder to whom award of a Contract is under consideration furnish to the Bidder reasonable evidence that financial arrangements have been made to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. Unless such reasonable evidence is furnished, the Bidder will not be required to execute the Agreement between the Owner and contractor.

#### 1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. The Bidder shall, as soon as practicable or as stipulated in the Bidding Documents, after notification of selection for the award of a Contract, furnish to the Owner through the Architect in writing:
  - 1. A designation of the Work to be performed with the Bidder's own force;
  - 2. Names of the manufacturers, products, and suppliers of principal items or systems of materials and equipment proposed for the Work; and
  - 3. Names of persons or entities (including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design) proposed for the principal portions of the Work.
- B. The Bidder will be required to establish to the satisfaction of the Architect and Owner the reliability and responsibility of the persons or entities proposed to furnish and perform the Work described in the Bidding Documents.
- C. Prior to the execution of the Contract, the Architect will notify the Bidder in writing if either the Owner or Architect, after due investigation, has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Bidder. If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a proposed person or entity, the Bidder may, at the Bidder's option, (1) withdraw the Bid or (2) submit an acceptable substitution person or entity with an adjustment in the Base bid to cover the difference in cost occasioned by such substitution. The Owner may accept the adjusted bid price or disqualify the Bidder.
- D. Persons and entities proposed by the Bidder and to whom the Owner and Architect have made no reasonable objection must be used on the Work for which they were proposed and shall not be changed except with the written consent of the Owner and Architect.

#### 1.8 PERFORMANCE BOND AND PAYMENT BOND

- A. Bidder shall furnish bonds covering the faithful performance of the Contract and payment of all obligations arising thereunder. Bonds may be secured through the Bidder's usual sources.
- B. If the furnishing of such bonds is stipulated in the Bidding Documents, the cost shall be included in the Bid. If the furnishing of such bonds is required after receipt of bids and before execution of the Contract, the cost of such bonds shall be added to the Bid in determining the Contract Sum.
- C. If the Owner requires that bonds be secured from other than the Bidder's usual sources, changes in cost will be adjusted as provided in the Contract Documents.
- D. The Bidder shall deliver the required bonds to the Owner not later than three days following the date of execution of the Contract. If the Work is to be commenced prior thereto in response to a letter of intent, the Bidder shall, prior to commencement of the Work, submit evidence satisfactory to the Owner that such bonds will be furnished and delivered.
- E. Unless otherwise provided, the bonds shall be written on AIA Document A312, Performance Bond and Payment Bond. Both bonds shall be written in the amount of the Contract Sum.
- F. The bonds shall be dated on or after the date of the Contract.

- G. The Bidder shall require the attorney-in-fact who executed the required bonds on behalf of the surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of the power of attorney.

END OF DOCUMENT 00 2113



**25-00048CP-B**

**CORNER CANYON FIELD HOUSE (CONSTRUCTION)**

Issue Date: 9/13/2024

Questions Deadline: 10/1/2024 08:00 PM (MT)

Response Deadline: 10/8/2024 01:00 PM (MT)

**Contact Information**

Contact: Mr. Chad Pulsipher Senior Buyer

Address: 9361 S. 300 E.

Sandy, UT 84070

Phone: (801) 826-5345

Email: [Chad.Pulsipher@canyonsdistrict.org](mailto:Chad.Pulsipher@canyonsdistrict.org)

## Event Information

Number: 25-00048CP-B  
Title: CORNER CANYON FIELD HOUSE (CONSTRUCTION)  
Type: Request for Bid  
Issue Date: 9/13/2024  
Question Deadline: 10/1/2024 08:00 PM (MT)  
Response Deadline: 10/8/2024 01:00 PM (MT)  
Notes: The purpose of this Request for Bid is to solicit competitive bids from qualified contractors for construction services at Corner Canyon High School for Canyons School District (CSD). It is anticipated that this RFB may result in a contract awarded to a qualified contractor for services as defined further in the solicitation. This RFB is designed to provide interested contractors with sufficient basic information to submit bids meeting minimum requirements, but is not intended to limit a bid's content or exclude any relevant or essential data. All bid preparation costs and any associated activities related to this RFB are the sole responsibility of the contractor.

All solicitation responses must be submitted electronically through Ion Wave.

## Billing Information

Address: 9361 S. 300 E.  
Sandy, UT 84070

## Bid Activities

### MANDATORY CONFERENCE

9/18/2024 1:00:00 PM (MT)

A **MANDATORY** Pre-Bid Conference will be held at: Corner Canyon High School

Date: September 18, 2024

Time: 1:00 p.m.

Address: 12943 S. 700 E. Draper, UT 84020

Contact Information: Chad Pulsipher 801-558-6403

- Failure to attend shall result in the disqualification of any vendor that does not have an authorized representative present for the entire duration of the pre-solicitation conference or site visit. Please arrive early or on time to the pre-bid meeting. The meeting will start promptly at the indicated time. Those that arrive late will not be permitted to sign the attendance sheet and participate with the contract opportunity.

Special Notes:



## Bid Attachments

### CSD Purchasing Terms\_Conditions Prof Serv Revision 5-9-23.pdf

CSD Purchasing Professional Services Terms and Conditions - Revised 5/9/23

Download

### CSD\_Public\_Contract\_Boycott\_Restrictions\_Certification\_5-9-23 (1).pdf

CSD Public Contract Boycott Restrictions Certification - Revised 5/9/23

Download

### Subcontractors-List-Form-Instructions-CSD 11-30-22 PDF FILLABLE.pdf

Subcontractor List -- Fillable

Download

### CSD Location Map 2024.pdf

CSD map showing all district schools, office buildings, etc. Updated February 2024.

Download

## Requested Attachments

### Subcontractors List

*(Attachment required)*

Please upload Subcontractors List

### Bid Bond

*(Attachment required)*

Please upload Bid Bond.

### Performance and Payment Bond

This will not be required at the time of proposal submittal. The high scoring Supplier will be required to submit within fourteen (14) days of award.

### Warranty Information

*(Attachment required)*

Please upload Warranty statement/certificate.

## Bid Attributes

|          |   |
|----------|---|
| <b>1</b> | <b>CSD Standard Terms and Conditions for Professional Services Acknowledgement</b><br>Supplier has read and acknowledges Canyons School District Standard Terms and Conditions for Professional Services will apply to all awards. Any conflicts between CSD Terms and Conditions and other attachments will be resolved in favor of CSD Terms and Conditions.<br><input type="checkbox"/> I have read and agree<br><i>(Required: Check all that apply)</i> |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Proposal Opening</b><br>Proposals will be opened after the closing time listed on the CSD procurement platform.  |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Bid Evaluation</b><br>Bids will be evaluated for content, price, specification requirements, and availability.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Bid Evaluation<br><i>(Required: Check if applicable)</i>  |

#### 4 No Alternate Bids

Each bidder shall submit only one bid. Alternate or multiple bids from a single supplier are prohibited. On any item where multiple bids are submitted, that item may be deemed non-responsive.

No alternate bid acknowledgment  
(Required: Check if applicable)

#### 5 Bid Preparation

All bid preparation costs and any associated activities related to this BID are the sole responsibility of the proposing firm. CSD is not liable for any costs incurred throughout the entire selection process.

Bid Preparation  
(Optional: Check if applicable)

#### 6 Contractor Responsibilities

The contractor shall be responsible for the acts and omissions of all his employees and all Subcontractors, their agents and employees and all other persons performing any of the work under a contract with the contractor.

The contractor at all times shall keep the premises free from accumulation of waste materials or rubbish caused by his operations. At the completion of the work he shall remove all his waste materials and rubbish from and about the project as well as his tools, construction equipment, machinery and surplus materials, and shall clean all glass surfaces and shall leave the work clean and free from any and all debris, unless otherwise specified.

The contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the owner and their agents and employees from and against all claims, damages, losses and expenses including attorney's fees arising out of or resulting from the performance of the work.

Accept  
(Required: Check if applicable)

#### 7 Compliance Agreement

In compliance with the Invitation to Bid, we have examined the Drawings, Specifications, related documents, and the site of the proposed work and being familiar with all the conditions surrounding the construction of the proposed project, including the availability of labor, hereby propose to furnish all labor, materials, and supplies as required for the project in accordance with the Contract Documents as specified and within the time set forth and at the price stated in your submission.

- This price is to cover all expenses incurred in performing the work required under the Contract Documents of which this proposal is a part.
- All materials and equipment incorporated in the work will be new unless otherwise specified, and that all work will be of good quality, free from faults and defects and in conformance with the bid documents.
- All work not conforming to these standards may be considered defective.
- The interested contractor must be properly licensed and certified to conduct business in the State of Utah. The successful contractor, and its employees, representatives, agents, consultants, subcontractors, and sub-consultants, shall comply with the license laws of the State of Utah.
- The interested contractor must comply, at all times during the bidding and contracting period, with all applicable federal, state, county, and city anti-discrimination laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations. Any violations of this provision shall be considered a violation of a material provision of the audit contract and shall be grounds for cancellation, termination or suspension.

Accept  
(Required: Check if applicable)

**8 Contacting CSD Employees**

All contact regarding this solicitation shall be handled through the procurement office. Failure to comply with this requirement may result in a disqualification.

Accept

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

**9 Bid Bond**

If the bid is greater than \$50,000.00, bid security is required in the amount of 5% from an authorized agency or a satisfactory surety company. Bid security shall be given as a guarantee that the bidder will execute the contract if awarded.

A copy of the bid bond must be uploaded as part of the bidder's offering.

Bid Bond

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

**1 Performance Bond**

Contractors providing services for Canyons School District (CSD) projects of \$50,000.00 or more must provide a performance and payment bond prior to the commencement of work. Bonding costs incurred shall be paid by the Contractor with CSD listed as the claimant. Upon receipt of bid acceptance, the bidder agrees to execute the contract within fourteen (14) days and deliver the Performance and Payment Bond to CSD in the amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the general construction contract price. If a contractor fails to deliver the required payment bond, the contractor's bid or offer will be rejected, its bid security may be enforced, and award of the contract shall be made to the responsible bidder with the next lowest responsive bid or highest ranked offer.

Performance Bond

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

**1 Subcontractors List**

The Subcontractors List must be completed and submitted by the Contractor with the solicitation. Failure to provide the Subcontractors List with the solicitation will be considered non-responsive. The comprehensive list will include each Subcontractor's name, qualifications, and work to be performed. The Contractor shall certify that all subcontractors are licensed as required by Utah State law.

CSD reserves the right to reject any subcontractor and may withhold awarding the contract to the proposer if any of the subcontractors are considered by CSD to be unqualified. Subcontractors must be held, by the General Contractor, to all requirements listed herein.

General Contractor's listing themselves to self perform work shall list the employee of the firm who will act as foreman for said work and his qualifications to perform said work and his trades license.

After contract award, subcontractors may not be changed without the prior written approval by CSD.

Subcontractors Agree

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

**1**  
**2** **Change Orders**

Changes to the Scope of work must be approved in writing by the Owner through the submission of document AIA G701. The Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals unless the Contractor has specifically informed the Owner in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work after the owner's approval, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation.

The District reserves the right to hold in reserve, 10% of the payment monies as retention for any work considered by the Canyons School District to be defective or not fully performed. Retention monies will be held in an interest bearing account.

Accept  
(Required: Check if applicable)

**1**  
**3** **Construction Tax Exempt**

Canyons School District will take advantage of the tax-exempt law that became effective January 1, 1996. The vendors must use tax exempt form TC-721G when purchasing construction materials for Canyons School District projects.

Reviewed  
(Required: Check if applicable)

**1**  
**4** **Project Available To Start**

This project can start after: **We will discuss at Pre-Bid meeting**

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(Optional: Maximum 1000 characters allowed)

**1**  
**5** **Substantial Completion**

Substantial Completion Date: **We will discuss at Pre-Bid meeting**

It is agreed by the parties to the contract that if the contractor shall fail to substantially complete their work on or before the published date by the Canyons School District or by the granted extension by the owner, damage will be sustained by the owner and that it is, and will be, impracticable and extremely difficult to fix the actual damage the owner will sustain in this event. It is, therefore, agreed that the contractor will pay the owner liquidated damages in the sum of **\$1,000.00** per calendar day, for each day the contractor shall be in default. The contractor agrees that any sums which; may be due to the owner as liquidated damages, may be deducted from any monies due, or to become due, the contractor under the contract or may be collected from the contractor's surety. Owner reserves the right to wave this fee at any time.

Accept  
(Required: Check if applicable)

**1**  
**6** **Liquidated damages for shop drawings/submittals**

Liquidated damages for shop drawings/submittals is \$100.00 per calendar day for each submittal received beyond 30 days after Notice of Award. Owner reserves the right to wave this fee at any time.

Accept

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

**1**  
**7** **Board Meeting**

CSD Board of Education approval is required if this project is bid over \$80,000.00.

The next Board Meeting after this bid closes will be: **October 15, 2024**

**1**  
**8** **OEM**

Only new OEM equipment accepted.

I have read and agree.

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

**1**  
**9** **Addendum Review**

I have reviewed and accept all addendum information for this solicitation.

Accept

*(Required: Check if applicable)*

## Supplier Information

---

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Phone: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax: \_\_\_\_\_

Email: \_\_\_\_\_

## Supplier Notes

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

By submitting your response, you certify that you are authorized to represent and bind your company.

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Print Name*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Signature*

DOCUMENT 00 3132 - GEOTECHNICAL DATA

1.1 GEOTECHNICAL DATA

- A. This Document with its referenced attachments is part of the Procurement and Contracting Requirements for Project. They provide Owner's information for Bidders' convenience and are intended to supplement rather than serve in lieu of Bidders' own investigations. They are made available for Bidders' convenience and information. This Document and its attachments are not part of the Contract Documents.
- B. Because subsurface conditions indicated by the soil borings are a sampling in relation to the entire construction area, and for other reasons, the Owner, the Architect, the Architect's consultants, and the firm reporting the subsurface conditions do not warranty the conditions below the depths of the borings or that the strata logged from the borings are necessarily typical of the entire site. Any party using the information described in the soil borings and geotechnical report shall accept full responsibility for its use.
- C. A geotechnical investigation report for Project, prepared by Applied Geotechnical Engineering Consultants, Inc., dated July 30, 2024, is available for viewing as appended to this Document.
  - 1. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
  - 2. Any party using information described in the geotechnical report shall make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations that may be required to determine the character of subsurface materials that may be encountered.

END OF DOCUMENT 00 3132



**GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION  
PROPOSED FIELDHOUSE  
CORNER CANYON HIGH SCHOOL  
12943 SOUTH 700 EAST  
DRAPER, UTAH**

**PREPARED FOR:**

**CANYONS SCHOOL DISTRICT  
9100 SOUTH 500 WEST  
SANDY, UT 84070**

**ATTENTION: LUKE BUTTERFIELD**

**PROJECT NO. 1240393**

**JULY 30, 2024**



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY..... Page 1

SCOPE. .... Page 2

SITE CONDITIONS. .... Page 2

FIELD STUDY..... Page 3

DOUBLE RING INFILTROMETER TESTS. .... Page 4

SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS..... Page 4

SUBSURFACE WATER. .... Page 6

PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION. .... Page 6

RECOMMENDATIONS. .... Page 7

    A.    Site Grading. .... Page 7

    B.    Foundations. .... Page 10

    C.    Concrete Slab-on-Grade. .... Page 11

    D.    Lateral Earth Pressure. .... Page 12

    E.    Seismicity, Faulting and Liquefaction. .... Page 13

    F.    Water Soluble Sulfates.. .... Page 14

    G.    Preconstruction Meeting.. .... Page 15

LIMITATIONS..... Page 16

REFERENCES..... Page 17

FIGURES

|                                      |             |
|--------------------------------------|-------------|
| EXPLORATORY BORING AND CPT LOCATIONS | FIGURE 1    |
| EXPLORATORY BORING LOGS              | FIGURES 2-3 |
| EXPLORATORY BORING LEGEND AND NOTES  | FIGURE 4    |
| CONSOLIDATION TEST RESULTS           | FIGURES 5-7 |
| SUMMARY OF LABORATORY TEST RESULTS   | TABLE I     |

APPENDIX

CPT RESULTS

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

1. Approximately 1 to 2 feet of fill was encountered in all but Borings B-7 and B-10, which encountered fill to depths of approximately 13 and 6 feet, respectively. Lean clay was encountered below the fill. The clay generally extends to the maximum depth of the borings, approximately 10½ to 20½ feet. The clay between depths of approximately 12 and 15½ feet in Boring B-10 has significant silt layers.  
  
Cone Penetration Test CPT-1 was conducted near Boring B-4 and encountered predominantly clay to a depth of approximately 33 feet overlying predominantly sand to a depth of approximately 40 feet. Clay, silt and sand layers were encountered from a depth of approximately 40 feet to the maximum depth of the CPT, approximately 50 feet.
2. Subsurface water was measured in the borings at depths of approximately 3.5 to 6.2 feet except in Boring B-7. Boring B-7 is higher in elevation than the other borings and the subsurface water was measured in this boring at a depth of approximately 15.5 feet. The water levels were measured on July 18, 2024.
3. With the proposed construction and the subsurface conditions encountered, the proposed building may be supported on spread footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill extending down to the undisturbed natural soil. Spread footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill may be designed using an allowable net bearing pressure of 1,500 psf. Footings bearing on at least 2 feet of compacted structural fill may be designed for an allowable net bearing pressure of 2,500 psf.
4. Approximately 1 to 13 feet of fill was encountered in the borings. Unsuitable fill, topsoil, debris and other deleterious materials should be removed from below areas of proposed buildings, turf fields, exterior slabs and other improvements sensitive to differential settlement.
5. The upper soil has a high clay content and will be easily disturbed by construction equipment traffic when it is very moist to wet. Placement of approximately 1 to 2 feet of granular borrow consisting predominantly of gravel with less than 15 percent passing the No. 200 sieve may be needed to provide limited access for rubber-tired equipment and to facilitate placement and compaction of structural fill and site grading fill when the subgrade is very moist to wet.
6. Geotechnical information relating to foundations, subgrade preparation and materials is included in the report

## **SCOPE**

This report presents the results of a geotechnical investigation for the proposed fieldhouse and turf soccer field at Corner Canyon High School at 12943 South 700 East in Draper, Utah. The report presents the subsurface conditions encountered, laboratory test results and recommendations for foundations. The study was conducted in general accordance with our proposal dated May 21, 2024.

Field exploration was conducted to obtain information on the subsurface conditions at the site. Samples obtained from the field investigation were tested in the laboratory to determine physical and engineering characteristics of the on-site soil. Information obtained from the field and laboratory investigations was used to define conditions at the site and to develop recommendations for the proposed foundations.

This report has been prepared to summarize the data obtained during the study and to present our conclusions and recommendations based on the proposed construction and the subsurface conditions encountered. Design parameters and a discussion of geotechnical engineering considerations relating to construction are included in the report.

## **SITE CONDITIONS**

The site consists of grass fields south of the Corner Canyon High School football field. The site topography, proposed fieldhouse and turf soccer field locations are shown on Figure 1.

The area of the proposed fieldhouse building is in the northeastern portion of the site. This area is relatively flat with a gentle slope down to the west.

The area of the proposed turf soccer field is in the southeastern portion of the site. The northern portion of this area is relatively flat with a gentle slope down to the west. The southern portion of this area has a fill, approximately 9 feet higher than the adjacent areas as indicated on Figure 1.

The western portion of the site is several feet lower in elevation than the eastern portion and slopes down to the south. This area appears to form a runoff basin.

The site is generally covered with sod.

The surrounding areas include a football field to the north, baseball field to the south and school and parking lot to the west. There is a trail and canal to the east. Residences and undeveloped areas are to the east of the canal.

## **FIELD STUDY**

The field study was conducted on July 3, 8 and 9, 2024. Ten borings were drilled at the approximate locations indicated on Figure 1 using direct push for Borings B-7 and B-10 and 8-inch-diameter hollow-stem auger for the other borings. The borings were logged and soil samples obtained by representatives of AGECE. Logs of the subsurface conditions encountered in the borings are graphically shown on Figures 2 and 3 with legend and notes on Figure 4.

Cone penetration test (CPT) soundings were taken at the approximate location indicated on Figure 1 on July 3, 2024. The CPT results are included in the appendix.

## DOUBLE RING INFILTROMETER TESTS

Double ring infiltrometer tests were conducted near Borings B-8 and B-9 in the lean clay at a depth of approximately 2 feet below the ground surface. The test depth was approximately 1 ½ to 2 feet above the measured subsurface water level.

An infiltration rate of 0.01 centimeters per hour was measured for both tests.

Test pits were excavated with a rubber-tired backhoe to facilitate the testing. The test pits were backfilled without significant compaction. The test pit backfill should be removed and replaced with properly compacted backfill where it will support proposed improvements.

## SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

Approximately 1 to 2 feet of fill was encountered in all but Borings B-7 and B-10, which encountered fill to depths of approximately 13 and 6 feet, respectively. Lean clay was encountered below the fill. The clay generally extends to the maximum depth of the borings, approximately 10 ½ to 20 ½ feet. The clay between depths of approximately 12 and 15 ½ feet in Boring B-10 has significant silt layers.

Cone Penetration Test CPT-1 was conducted near Boring B-4 and encountered predominantly clay to a depth of approximately 33 feet overlying predominantly sand to a depth of approximately 40 feet. Clay, silt and sand layers were encountered from a depth of approximately 40 feet to the maximum depth of the CPT, approximately 50 feet.

A description of the various soils encountered in the borings follows:

Clay Fill - The fill consists of lean clay to sandy lean clay. It is slightly moist to moist, brown to gray and contains roots near the ground surface.

Laboratory tests conducted on a sample of the fill indicate it has a moisture content of 18 percent and a dry density of 103 pounds per cubic foot (pcf).

Gravel Fill - The fill below a depth of approximately 1 foot in Boring B-10 consists of poorly graded gravel. It is moist to wet and brown. A geotextile fabric was encountered at the top of this fill.

Lean Clay - The clay contains small to moderate amounts of sand and occasional silt and silty sand layers. It is soft to stiff, moist to wet and brown to gray with iron oxide staining.

Laboratory tests conducted on samples of the clay indicate it has natural moisture contents ranging from 26 to 34 percent and natural dry densities ranging from 84 to 101 pcf.

A sample of the clay tested in the laboratory was found to have an unconfined compressive strength of 2,490 pounds per square foot (psf).

Consolidation tests conducted on samples of the clay indicate that the soil will compress a small to moderate amount with the addition of light to moderate loads. Results of the consolidation tests are presented on Figures 5, 6 and 7.

Silt and Lean Clay - The silt and clay are interlayered. The interlayered soil is stiff, wet and grayish brown.

Results of the laboratory tests are summarized on Table I and are included on the logs of the borings.

## **SUBSURFACE WATER**

Subsurface water was measured in the borings at depths of approximately 3.5 to 6.2 feet except in Boring B-7. Boring B-7 is higher in elevation than the other borings and the subsurface water was measured in this boring at a depth of approximately 15.5 feet. The water levels were measured on July 18, 2024.

Slotted PVC pipe was installed in the borings to facilitate future measurement of the free-water level. Fluctuations in the water level will occur over time. An evaluation of such fluctuations is beyond the scope of this report.

## **PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION**

We understand that the proposed fieldhouse will be a prefabricated metal building with a slab-on-grade floor. Based on an estimate provided by the structural engineer, column loads are anticipated to not exceed 225 kips and wall loads to not exceed 1 kip per foot.

A turf soccer field is planned south of the fieldhouse. Details of the proposed construction were not provided at the time of this study. We anticipate that the field will be supported on compacted granular fill.

If the proposed construction or building loads are significantly different from those described above, we should be notified to reevaluate the recommendations given.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

Based on the subsurface conditions encountered, laboratory test results and our understanding of the proposed construction, the following recommendations are given:

### A. Site Grading

We anticipate that the main floor elevation of the field house will be within approximately 3 feet of existing grade. Site grading fill for the proposed building should be placed as soon as possible prior to constructing elements of the building that are sensitive to differential settlement. If the grade of the proposed building area is raised more than about 3 feet above existing grade, the fill should be placed well in advance to building construction so that the significant portion of the settlement due to the load of the fill occurs prior to construction.

#### 1. Subgrade Preparation

Approximately 1 to 13 feet of fill was encountered in the borings. Unsuitable fill, topsoil, debris and other deleterious materials should be removed from below areas of proposed buildings, turf fields, exterior slabs and other improvements sensitive to differential settlement.

The upper soil has a high clay content and will be easily disturbed by construction equipment traffic when it is very moist to wet. Placement of approximately 1 to 2 feet of granular borrow consisting predominantly of gravel with less than 15 percent passing the No. 200 sieve may be needed to provide limited access for rubber-tired equipment and to facilitate placement and compaction of structural fill and site grading fill when the subgrade is very moist to wet. Consideration may be given to placing a support fabric between the natural soil and granular borrow.



## 2. Excavation

We anticipate that excavation at the site can be accomplished with typical excavation equipment. Excavation equipment with a flat cutting edge should be used when excavating for building foundations to minimize disturbance of the bearing soil.

Temporary excavations may be sloped at 1 ½ horizontal to 1 vertical or flatter. The temporary excavation slopes indicated assume that the excavation is dewatered. Flatter slopes may be needed if there is water seepage into the excavation.

Excavations that extend below the water level should be dewatered. The water level should be maintained below the base of the excavation during initial fill and concrete placement. Free-draining gravel with less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve should be used for fill or backfill below the original water level. A filter fabric should be placed between the natural soil and free-draining gravel.

## 3. Materials

Listed below are recommendations for imported structural fill.

| Fill to Support                | Recommendations   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Footings                       | Non-expansive granular soil<br>Passing No. 200 Sieve < 35%<br>Liquid Limit < 30%<br>Maximum size 4 inches |
| Floor Slab<br>(Upper 4 inches) | Sand and/or Gravel<br>Passing No. 200 Sieve < 5%<br>Maximum size 2 inches                                 |
| Slab Support                   | Non-expansive granular soil<br>Passing No. 200 Sieve < 50%<br>Liquid Limit < 30%<br>Maximum size 6 inches |

Materials placed as fill to support structures should be non-expansive granular soil. The existing fill and natural soil consist predominantly of clay and are not recommended for use as structural fill within proposed building areas. The on-site soils may be considered for use as site grading fill, utility trench and wall backfill outside of building areas if the topsoil, organics, debris and other deleterious are removed or they may be used in landscape areas.

The on-site soil may require moisture conditioning (wetting or drying) prior to use as fill. Drying of the soil may not be practical during cold or wet periods of the year.

Free-draining gravel with less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve should be used as fill below the original free water level.

#### 4. Compaction

Compaction of materials placed at the site should equal or exceed the minimum densities as indicated below when compared to the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D 1557.

| Fill To Support                  | Compaction |
|----------------------------------|------------|
| Foundations                      | ≥ 95%      |
| Concrete Flatwork and Turf Field | ≥ 90%      |
| Pavement                         |            |
| Base Course                      | ≥ 95%      |
| Fill Placed Below Base Course    | ≥ 90%      |
| Landscaping                      | ≥ 85%      |
| Retaining Wall Backfill          | 85 - 90%   |

To facilitate the compaction process, fill should be compacted at a moisture content within 2 percent of the optimum moisture content.

The fill should be placed and compacted in thin enough lifts to allow for proper compaction. Fill placed for the project should be frequently tested for compaction during construction.

5. Drainage

The ground surface surrounding the proposed building and turf soccer field should be sloped away from the building and field in all directions. Roof downspouts and drains should discharge beyond the limits of backfill.

**B. Foundations**

1. Bearing Material

With the proposed construction and the subsurface conditions encountered, the proposed building may be supported on spread footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill extending down to the undisturbed natural soil.

Structural fill placed below footings should extend down to the undisturbed natural soil and out away from the edge of footings at least a distance equal to the depth of fill beneath footings.

Topsoil, organics, unsuitable fill and other deleterious materials should be removed from below proposed foundation areas.

2. Bearing Pressure

Spread footings bearing on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill may be designed using an allowable net bearing pressure of 1,500 psf. Footings bearing on at least 2 feet of compacted structural fill may be designed for an allowable net bearing pressure of 2,500 psf.

3. Settlement

We estimate that total settlement for foundations designed as indicated above will be less than 1 inch. Differential settlement is estimated to be less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch.

4. Temporary Loading Conditions

The allowable bearing pressure may be increased by one-half for temporary loading conditions such as wind or seismic loads.

5. Frost Depth

Exterior footings and footings beneath unheated areas should be placed at least 30 inches below grade for frost protection.

6. Foundation Base

The base of foundation excavations should be cleared of loose or deleterious material prior to structural fill or concrete placement.

7. Construction Observation

A representative of the geotechnical engineer should observe footing excavations prior to structural fill or concrete placement.

**C. Concrete Slab-on-Grade**

1. Slab Support

Concrete slabs may be supported on the undisturbed natural soil or on compacted structural fill extending down to the undisturbed natural soil.

Topsoil, organics, debris, unsuitable fill and other deleterious materials should be removed from below proposed floor slab areas.

2. Underslab Sand and/or Gravel

A 4-inch layer of free draining sand and/or gravel (less than 5 percent passing the No. 200 sieve) should be placed below the concrete slabs for ease of construction and to promote even curing of the slab concrete.

3. Vapor Barrier

A vapor barrier should be placed under the concrete floor if the floor will receive an impermeable floor covering. The barrier will reduce the amount of water vapor passing from below the slab to the floor covering.

**D. Lateral Earth Pressure**

1. Lateral Resistance for Footings

Lateral resistance for spread footings placed the natural soil or on compacted structural fill is controlled by sliding resistance between the footing and the structural fill or natural soil. A friction value of 0.35 may be used in design for ultimate lateral resistance. The passive resistance of the soil adjacent foundations may be used in design

2. Subgrade Walls and Retaining Structures

The following equivalent fluid weights are given for the design of subgrade walls and retaining structures. The active condition is where the wall moves away from the soil. The passive condition is where the wall moves into the soil and the at-rest condition is where the wall does not move. The values listed below assume a horizontal surface adjacent the wall.

| Soil Type     | Active | At-Rest | Passive |
|---------------|--------|---------|---------|
| Clay & Silt   | 50 pcf | 65 pcf  | 250 pcf |
| Sand & Gravel | 40 pcf | 55 pcf  | 300 pcf |

3. Seismic Conditions

Under seismic conditions, the equivalent fluid weight should be increased by 45 and 30 pcf for active and at-rest conditions, respectively, and decreased by 45 pcf for the passive condition. This assumes a peak horizontal ground acceleration of 0.75g which represents a 2 percent probability of exceedance in a 50-year period.

4. Safety Factors

The values recommended above assume mobilization of the soil to achieve the soil strength under active and passive conditions. Conventional safety factors used for structural analysis for such items as overturning and sliding resistance should be used in design.

**E. Seismicity, Faulting and Liquefaction**

1. Seismicity

Listed below is a summary of the site parameters that may be used with the 2021 International Building Code.

| Description   | Value <sup>1</sup> |
|---|--------------------|
| Site Class  | D <sup>2</sup>     |
| S <sub>s</sub> - MCE <sub>R</sub> ground motion (period = 0.2s) | 1.49g              |
| S <sub>1</sub> - MCE <sub>R</sub> ground motion (period = 1.0s) | 0.55g              |
| F <sub>a</sub> - Site amplification factor at 0.2s              | 1.0                |
| F <sub>v</sub> - Site amplification factor at 1.0s              | 1.75               |
| PGA - MCE <sub>G</sub> peak ground acceleration                 | 0.68g              |
| PGA <sub>M</sub> - Site modified peak ground acceleration       | 0.75g              |

<sup>1</sup>Values obtained from information provided by the Applied Technology Council at <https://hazards.atcouncil.org>

<sup>2</sup>Site Class D was selected based on the subsurface conditions to the depth investigated and our understanding of the geology of the area.

2. Faulting

There are no mapped active faults extending through the project site. The closest mapped fault, which is considered active, is the Wasatch Fault, which has mapped traces extending approximately 1.5 miles east of the site (Utah Geological Survey, 2024).

3. Liquefaction

The site is located in an area mapped as having a "moderate" liquefaction potential (Salt Lake County, 2002). The soil type most susceptible to liquefaction during a large magnitude earthquake is loose, clean sand. The liquefaction potential tends to decrease with an increase in fines content and density.

Based on subsurface conditions encountered, liquefaction is not considered to be a significant hazard at this site. There are some thin layers that may be susceptible to liquefaction. Our analysis indicates that liquefaction-induced settlement is expected to be less than ½ inch and no lateral spread is anticipated.

**F. Water Soluble Sulfates**

One sample of the natural soil was tested in the laboratory for water soluble sulfate content. The test results indicate there is less than 0.1 percent water soluble sulfate in the sample tested. Based on the results of the test and published literature, the soil possesses a negligible sulfate attack potential on concrete. No special cement type is required for concrete placed in contact with the soil.

**G. Preconstruction Meeting**

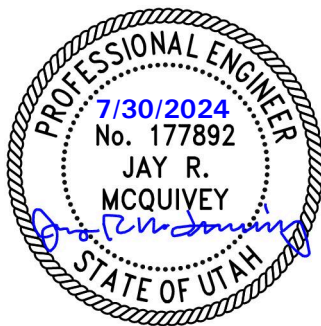
A preconstruction meeting should be held with representatives of the owner, project architect, geotechnical engineer, general contractor, earthwork contractor and other design team members to review construction plans, specifications, methods and schedule.



## LIMITATIONS

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted soil and foundation engineering practices in the area for the use of the client for design purposes. The conclusions and recommendations included within the report are based on the information obtained from the borings drilled and CPT soundings at the approximate locations indicated on Figure 1, the results of laboratory tests and our experience in the area. Variations in the subsurface conditions may not become evident until additional exploration or excavation is conducted. If the subsurface conditions, proposed construction or groundwater level is found to be significantly different from what is described above, we should be notified to reevaluate the recommendations given.

APPLIED GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERING CONSULTANTS, INC.



Jay R. McQuivey, P.E.

Reviewed by Douglas R. Hawkes, P.E., P.G.

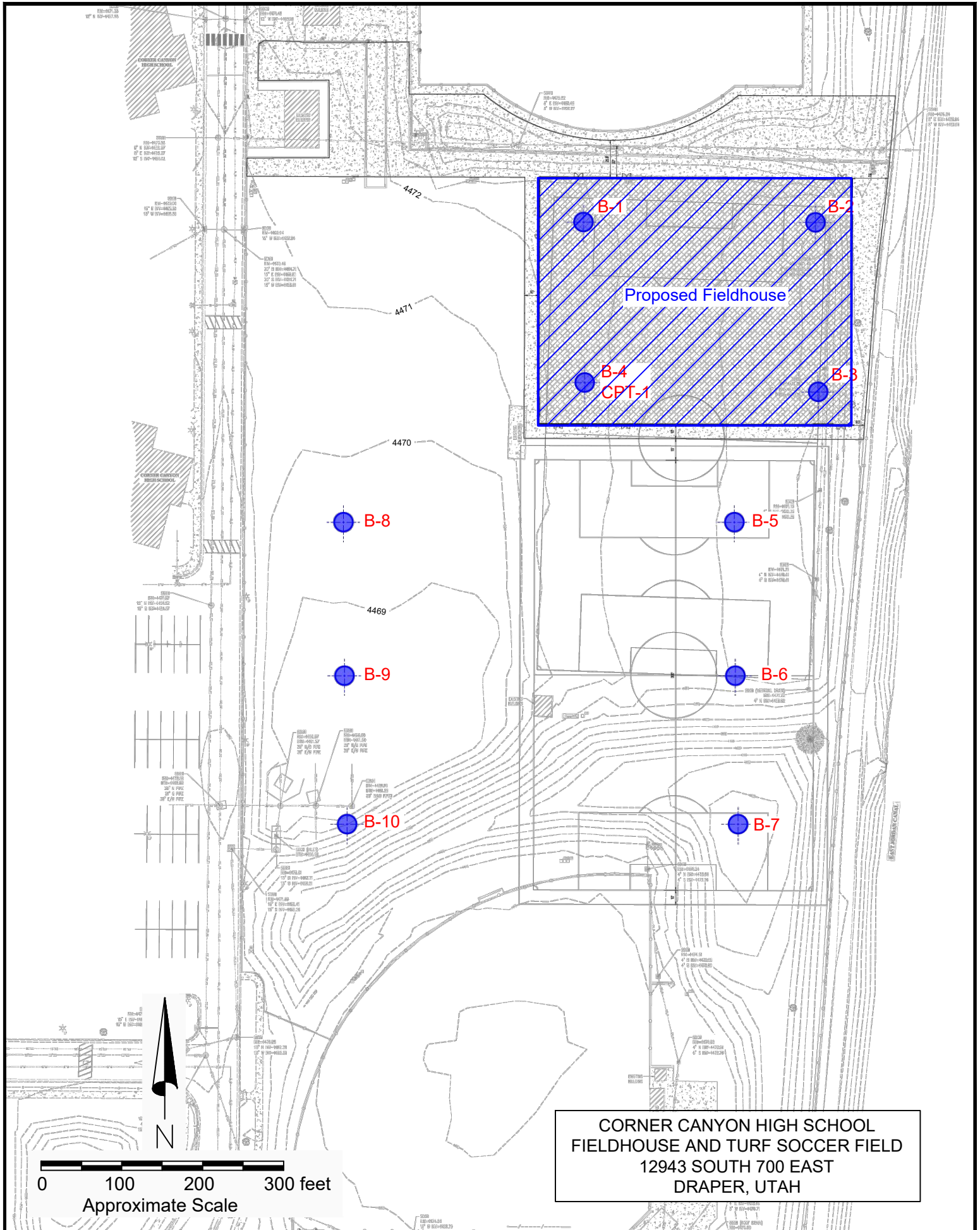
JRM/bw

## REFERENCES

International Code Council, 2020; 2021 International Building Code, Falls Church, Virginia. City, Utah.

Salt Lake County, 2002; Surface Rupture and Liquefaction Potential Special Study Areas Map, Salt Lake County, Utah, adopted March 31, 1989, updated March 2002, Salt Lake County Public Works - Planning Division, 2001 South State Street, Salt Lake City, Utah.

Utah Geological Survey, 2024; Utah Geological Hazard Portal accessed July 11, 2024 at <https://geology.utah.gov/apps/hazards/>.



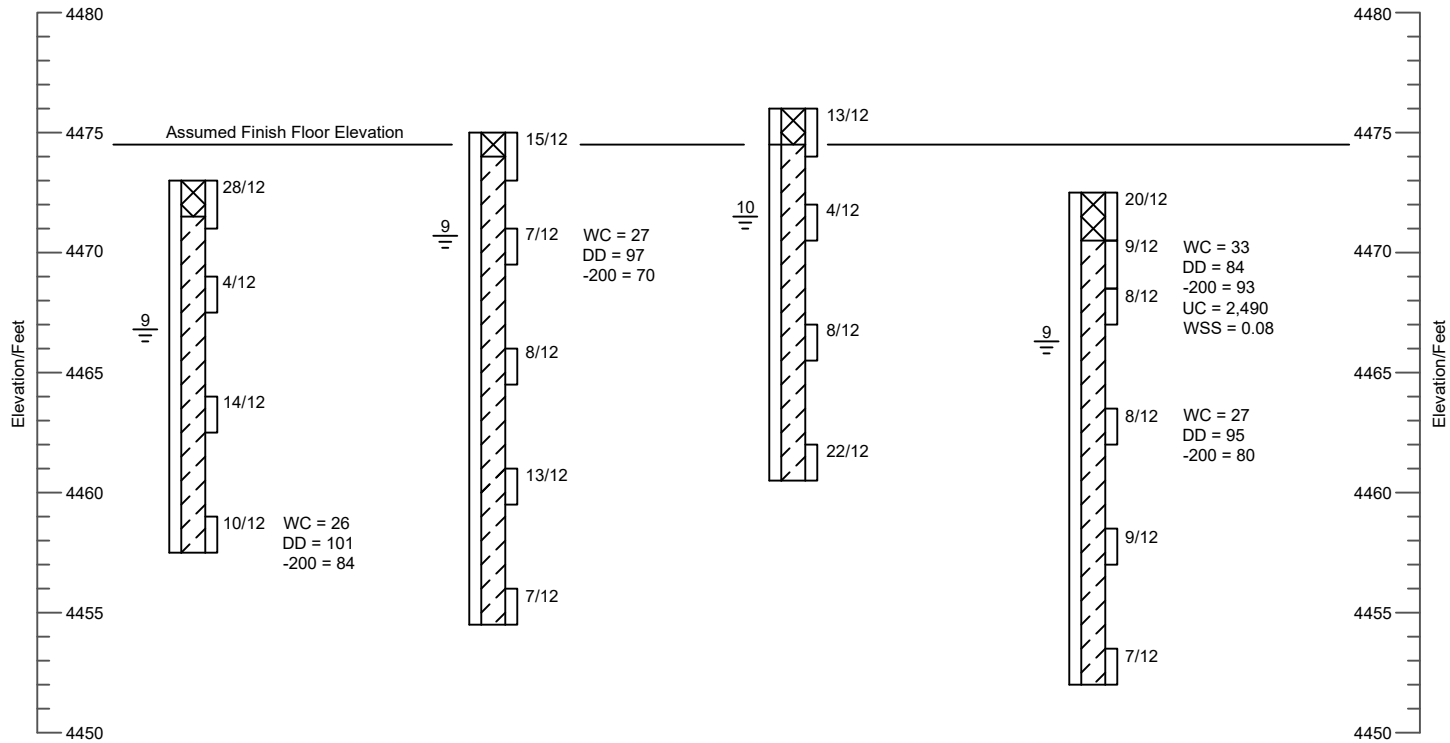
CORNER CANYON HIGH SCHOOL  
 FIELDHOUSE AND TURF SOCCER FIELD  
 12943 SOUTH 700 EAST  
 DRAPER, UTAH

B-1  
Elev. 4473'

B-2  
Elev. 4475'

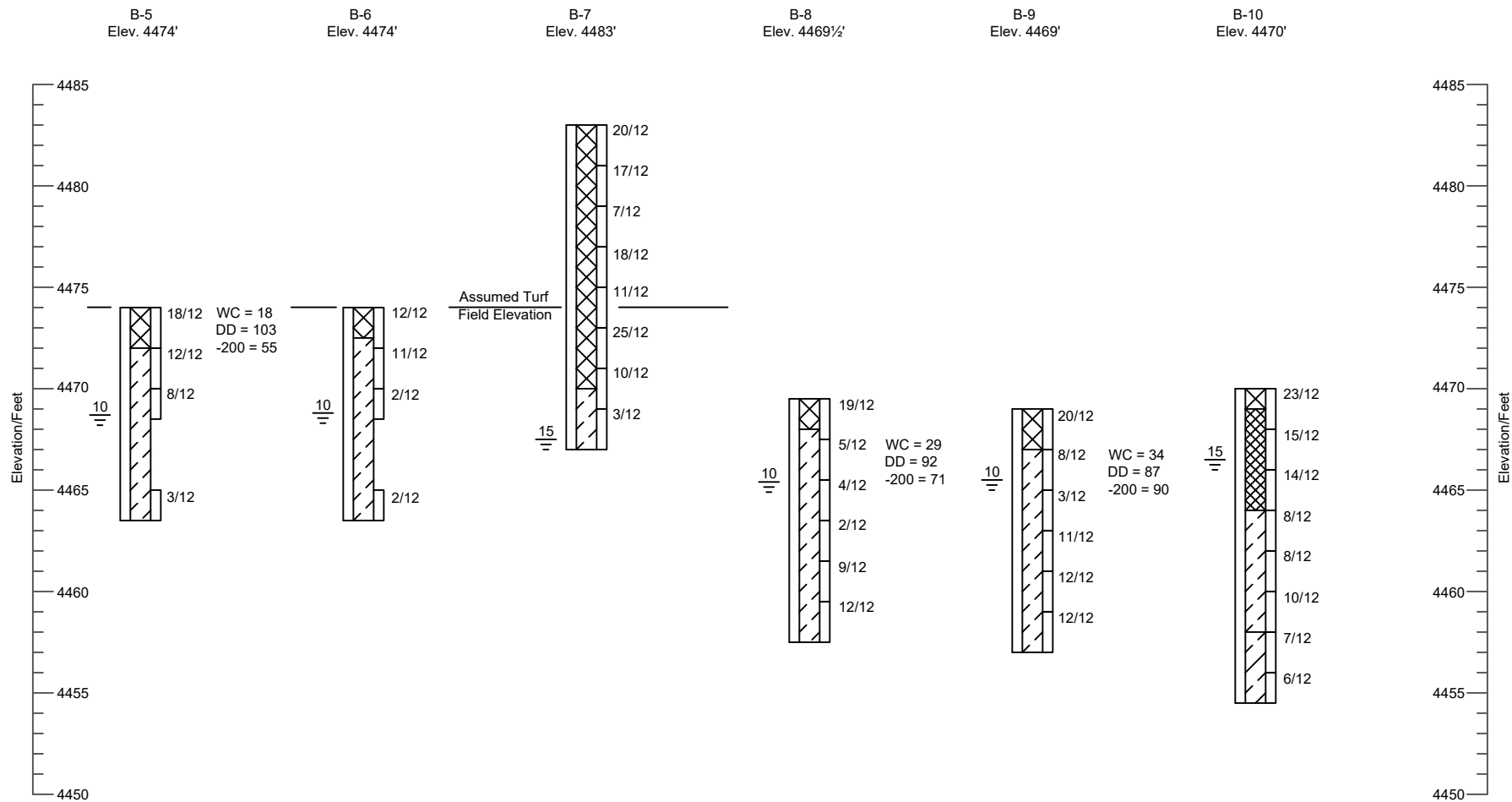
B-3  
Elev. 4476'

B-4  
Elev. 4472½'



Approximate Vertical Scale 1" = 8'

See Figure 4 for Legend and Notes



LEGEND:



Fill; lean clay to sandy lean clay, slightly moist to moist, brown to gray, roots near surface.



Fill; poorly graded gravel, moist to wet, brown, geotextile fabric at top.



Lean Clay (CL); small to moderate amount of sand, occasional silt and silty sand layers, soft to stiff, moist to wet, brown to gray, iron oxide staining.



Silt and Lean Clay (CL/ML); interlayered, stiff, wet, grayish brown.



10/12 California Drive sample taken. The symbol 10/12 indicates that 10 blows from a 140-pound automatic hammer falling 30 inches were required to drive the sampler 12 inches.



Indicates slotted 1½-inch PVC pipe installed in the boring to the depth shown.

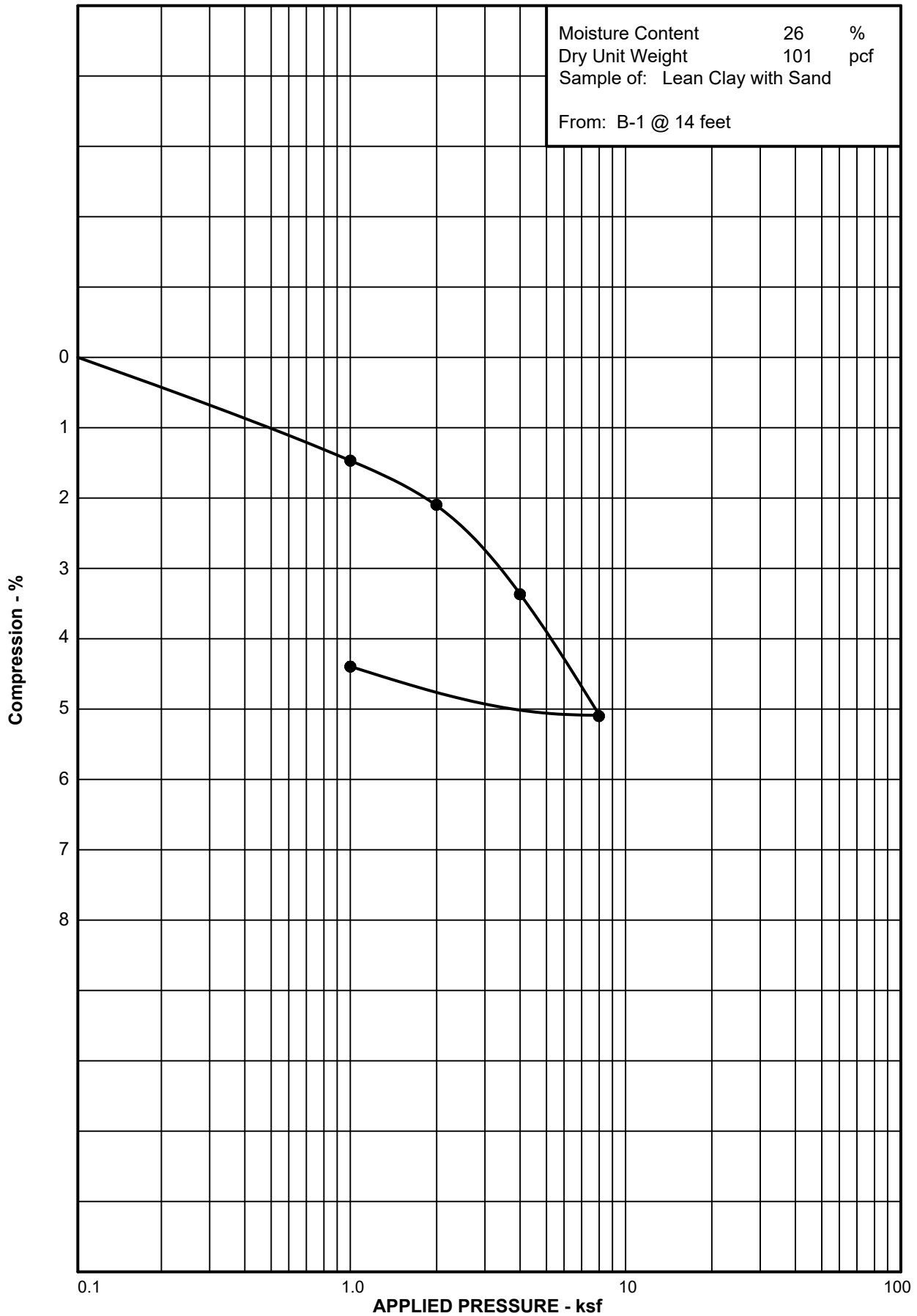


Indicates the depth to free water and number of days after drilling the measurement was taken.

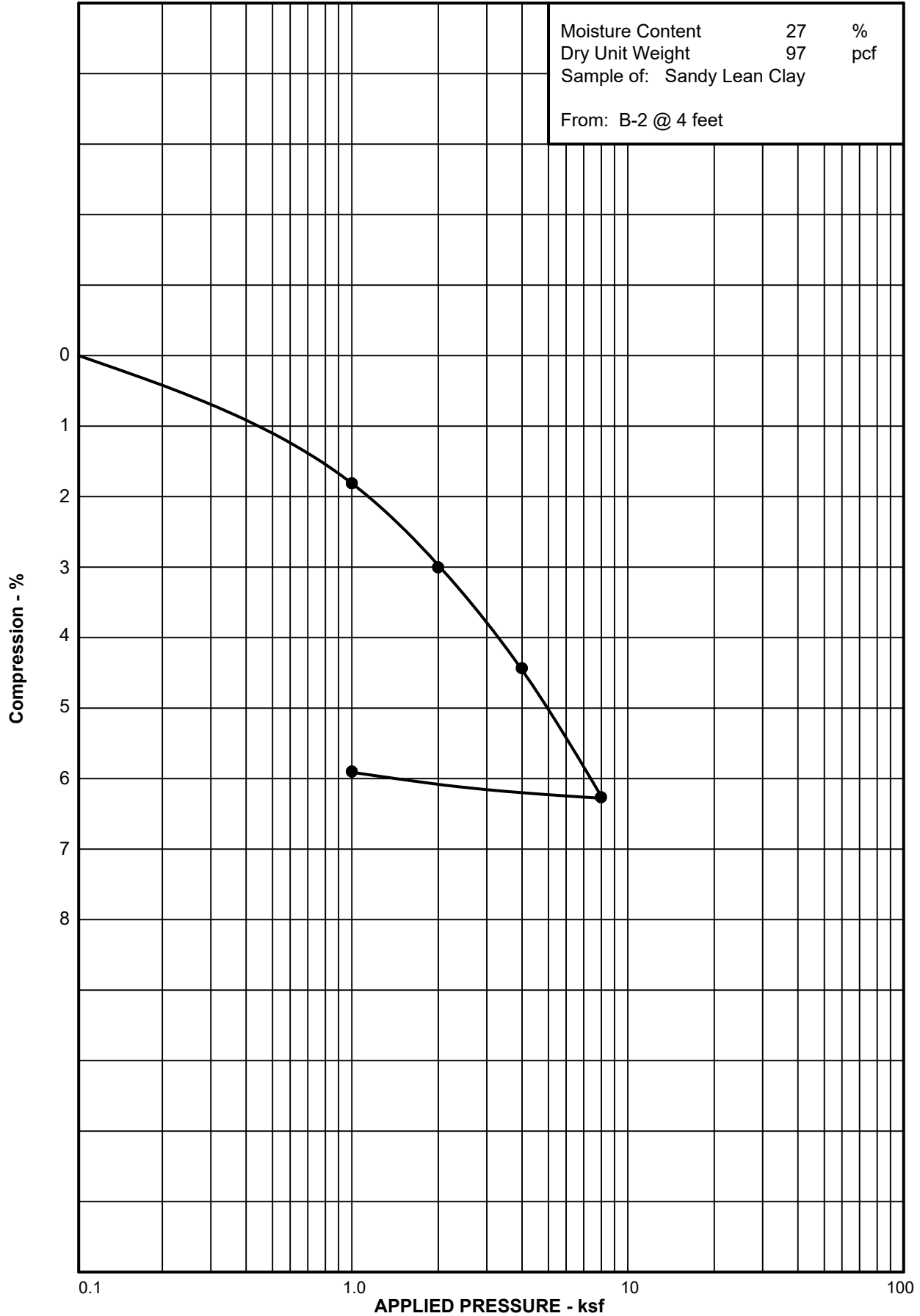
NOTES:

1. Borings B-7 and B-10 were drilled on July 3, 2024 using direct push. The other borings were drilled on July 8 and 9, 2024 with 8-inch-diameter hollow-stem auger.
2. The location of the borings were measured approximately by pacing from features shown on the site plan provided.
3. The elevations of the borings were determined by interpolating between contours shown on Figure 1.
4. The boring locations and elevations should be considered accurate only to the degree implied by the method used.
5. The lines between materials shown on the boring logs represent the approximate boundaries between material types and the transitions may be gradual.
6. The water level readings shown on the logs was made at the time and under the conditions indicated. Fluctuations in the water level will occur with time.
7. WC = Water Content (%);  
DD = Dry Density (pcf);  
-200 = Percent Passing the No. 200 Sieve;  
UC = Unconfined Compressive Strength (psf);  
WSS = Water Soluble Sulfates (%).

# Applied Geotechnical Engineering Consultants, Inc.

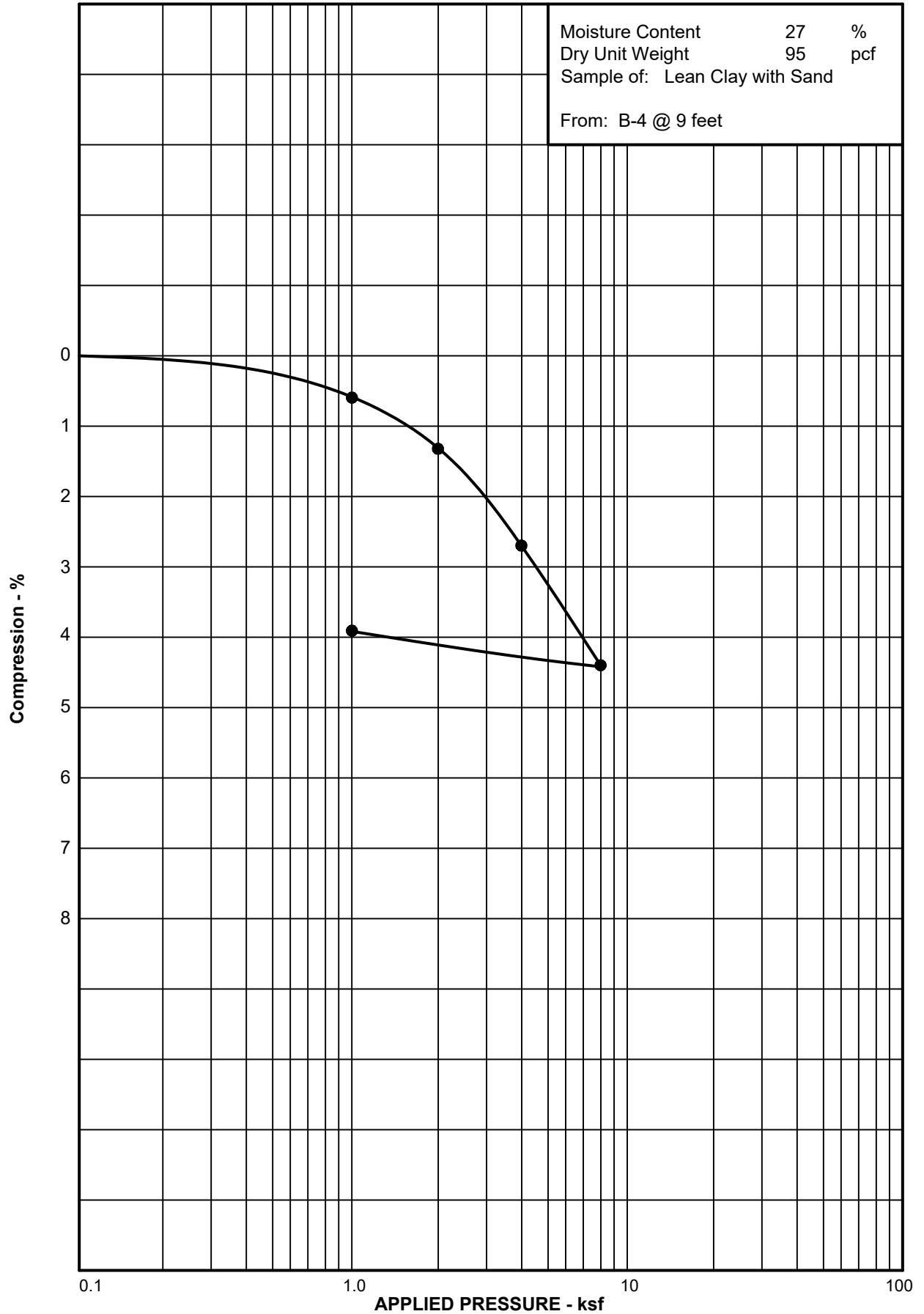


# Applied Geotechnical Engineering Consultants, Inc.



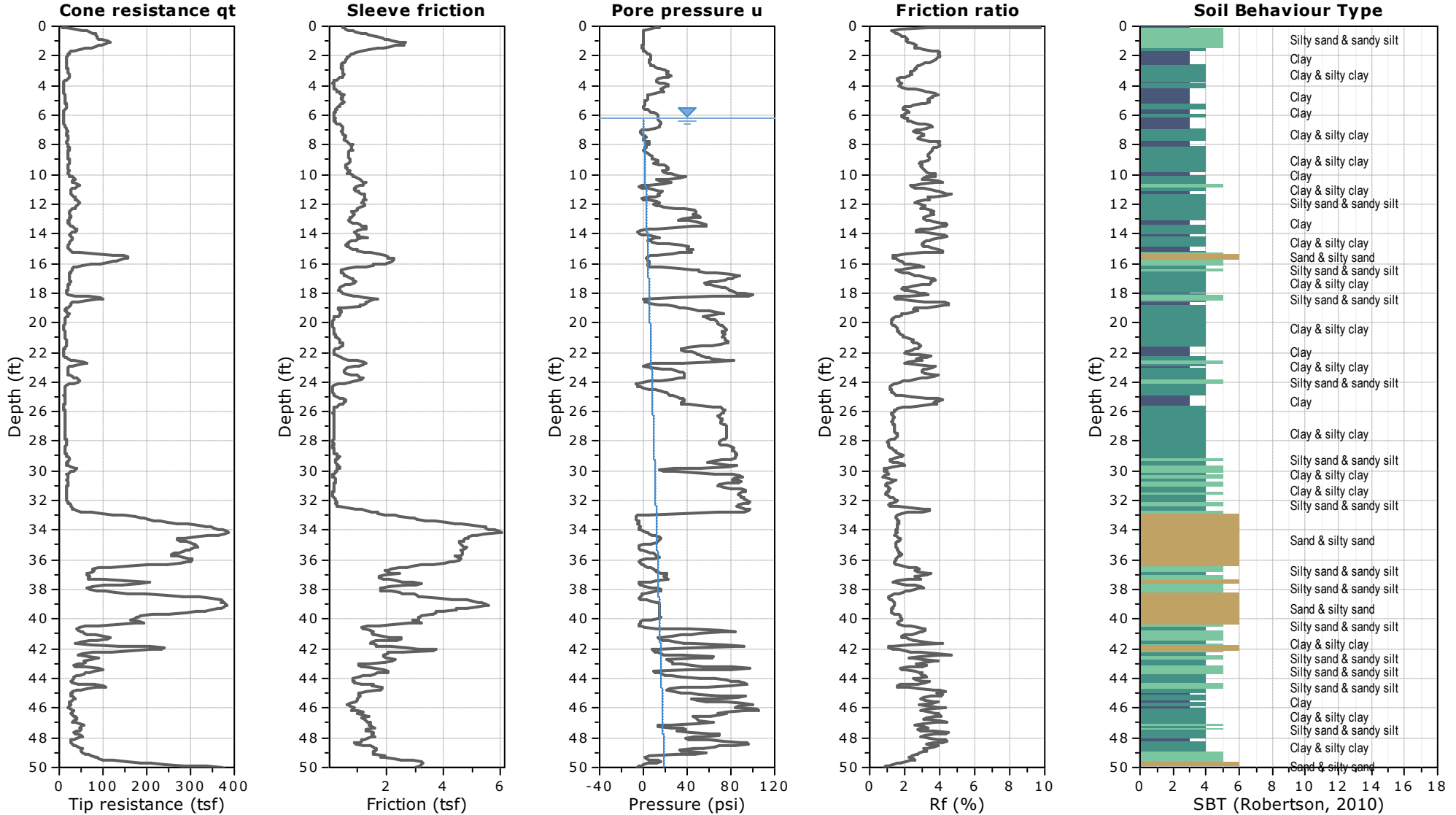


# Applied Geotechnical Engineering Consultants, Inc.





APPENDIX  
CPT RESULTS





# AIA® Document A201™ – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:  
*(Name and location or address)*

Sample

**THE OWNER:**  
*(Name, legal status and address)*

**THE ARCHITECT:**  
*(Name, legal status and address)*

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY
- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
- 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

Init.

## INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

### Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

### Access to Work

**3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5,

10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

### Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

### Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

### Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

### Allowances

**3.8**

### Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,

3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

### Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

## ARCHITECT

**4**

Architect, Definition of

### 4.1.1

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2,  
9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1,  
13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.3,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4, 9.4.2,  
9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1,  
13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16,  
3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5,  
9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

### Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

**5.2**

### Basic Definitions

**1.1**

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5,  
15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

### Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**

### Building Information Models Use and Reliance

**1.8**

Building Permit

3.7.1

### Capitalization

**1.3**

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

Init.

/

## Certificates for Payment

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4

Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
13.4.4

Certificates of Insurance  
9.10.2

## Change Orders

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2

**Change Orders**, Definition of

### 7.2.1

## CHANGES IN THE WORK

2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, 7, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1, 11.5

**Claims**, Definition of

### 15.1.1

Claims, Notice of  
1.6.2, 15.1.3

## CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4  
Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims  
15.4.1

### Claims for Additional Cost

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**

### Claims for Additional Time

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**

### Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for

3.7.4

Claims for Damages  
3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3, 11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Claims Subject to Arbitration  
15.4.1

## Cleaning Up

**3.15**, 6.3

Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to  
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**

**Commencement of the Work**, Definition of  
**8.1.2**

## Communications

3.9.1, **4.2.4**

Completion, Conditions Relating to  
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2

## COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND 9

Completion, Substantial  
3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2  
Compliance with Laws  
2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3, 15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3

Concealed or Unknown Conditions

3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3

Conditions of the Contract

1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written

3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2, 15.4.4.2

## Consolidation or Joinder

### 15.4.4

## CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS

1.1.4, **6**

**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of  
**7.3.1**

### Construction Change Directives

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.3**, 9.3.1.1

Construction Schedules, Contractor's

3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

### Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

**5.4**, 14.2.2.2

### Continuing Contract Performance

#### 15.1.4

**Contract**, Definition of

#### 1.1.2

## CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE

5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, **14**

Contract Administration

3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5

Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating to

3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1

Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of  
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3

**Contract Documents**, Definition of

#### 1.1.1

### Contract Sum

2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4, **9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5**, **15.2.5**

**Contract Sum**, Definition of

#### 9.1

Contract Time

1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5, 7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1, 8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5

**Contract Time**, Definition of

#### 8.1.1

## CONTRACTOR

### 3

Contractor, Definition of

#### 3.1, 6.1.2

**Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Contractor's Employees  
2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

## **Contractor's Liability Insurance**

### **11.1**

Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors  
and Owner's Forces

3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4

Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7,  
9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4

Contractor's Relationship with the Architect

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,  
3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2,  
7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3,  
11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1

Contractor's Representations

3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2

Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the  
Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8

Contractor's Review of Contract Documents

3.2

Contractor's Right to Stop the Work

2.2.2, 9.7

Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.1

Contractor's Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2,  
9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Contractor's Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

Contractor's Supervision and Construction

Procedures

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3,  
7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Coordination and Correlation

1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1

Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications

1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11

Copyrights

1.5, **3.17**

Correction of Work

2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3,  
15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1

**Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**1.2**

**Cost**, Definition of

**7.3.4**

Costs

2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3,  
7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2,  
12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14

**Cutting and Patching**

**3.14**, 6.2.5

Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate  
Contractors

3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damage to the Work

3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4

Damages, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2,  
11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Damages for Delay

6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2

**Date of Commencement of the Work**, Definition of

**8.1.2**

**Date of Substantial Completion**, Definition of

**8.1.3**

**Day**, Definition of

**8.1.4**

Decisions of the Architect

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4,  
7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2,  
14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2

**Decisions to Withhold Certification**

9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3

Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance,  
Rejection and Correction of

2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3,  
9.10.4, 12.2.1

Definitions

1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1,  
6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1

**Delays and Extensions of Time**

**3.2**, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**,  
10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5

**Digital Data Use and Transmission**

**1.7**

Disputes

6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2

**Documents and Samples at the Site**

**3.11**

**Drawings**, Definition of

**1.1.5**

Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of

3.11

Effective Date of Insurance

8.2.2

**Emergencies**

**10.4**, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**

Employees, Contractor's

3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2,  
10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1

Equipment, Labor, or Materials

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,  
4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3,  
9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Execution and Progress of the Work

1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1,  
3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1,  
9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4



Extensions of Time  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2,  
10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**

#### **Failure of Payment**

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

#### **Faulty Work**

(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)

#### **Final Completion and Final Payment**

4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### **Financial Arrangements, Owner's**

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

### **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

#### **1**

#### **Governing Law**

##### **13.1**

Guarantees (See Warranty)

#### **Hazardous Materials and Substances**

10.2.4, **10.3**

#### **Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers**

5.2.1

#### **Indemnification**

3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

#### **Information and Services Required of the Owner**

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,

9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,

14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### **Initial Decision**

##### **15.2**

#### **Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**

1.1.8

#### **Initial Decision Maker, Decisions**

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

#### **Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority**

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

#### **Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

**10.2.8**, 10.4

#### **Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,

9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

#### **Instructions to Bidders**

1.1.1

#### **Instructions to the Contractor**

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

#### **Instruments of Service, Definition of**

##### **1.1.7**

#### **Insurance**

6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5, **11**

#### **Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration**

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### **Insurance, Contractor's Liability**

##### **11.1**

Insurance, Effective Date of

8.2.2, 14.4.2

#### **Insurance, Owner's Liability**

##### **11.2**

#### **Insurance, Property**

**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

#### **Insurance, Stored Materials**

9.3.2

### **INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **11**

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy

9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of

11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

#### **Interest**

##### **13.5**

#### **Interpretation**

1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

#### **Labor and Materials, Equipment**

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,

10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,

9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,

15.4

Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability

3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,

4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,

11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1

Limitations of Time

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,

5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,

9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,

15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5

#### **Materials, Hazardous**

10.2.4, **10.3**

Materials, Labor, Equipment and

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,

10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and

Procedures of Construction

3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

#### **Mediation**

8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1,

15.4.1.1

#### **Minor Changes in the Work**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**

Init.

/

## MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### 13

#### Modifications, Definition of

##### 1.1.1

#### Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7, 10.3.2

#### Mutual Responsibility

### 6.2

#### Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of  
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2

#### Notice

**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4, 8.2.2, 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.4.1

#### Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### Notice of Claims

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5, 15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

#### Notice of Testing and Inspections

13.4.1, 13.4.2

#### Observations, Contractor's

3.2, 3.7.4

#### Occupancy

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

#### Orders, Written

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## OWNER

### 2

#### Owner, Definition of

##### 2.1.1

#### Owner, Evidence of Financial Arrangements

**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

#### Owner, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5, 9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### Owner's Authority

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4, 15.2.7

#### Owner's Insurance

### 11.2

#### Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

#### Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

**2.5**, 14.2.2

#### Owner's Right to Clean Up

### 6.3

#### Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts

### 6.1

#### Owner's Right to Stop the Work

### 2.4

#### Owner's Right to Suspend the Work

14.3

#### Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract

14.2, 14.4

#### Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12, 5.3

#### Partial Occupancy or Use

9.6.6, **9.9**

#### Patching, Cutting and

**3.14**, 6.2.5

#### Patents

3.17

#### Payment, Applications for

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1, 14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### Payment, Certificates for

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

#### Payment, Failure of

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

#### Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

#### Payment Bond, Performance Bond and

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

#### Payments, Progress

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

## PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### 9

#### Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

#### PCB

10.3.1

#### Performance Bond and Payment Bond

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

#### Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

## PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION OF

### 10

#### Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

#### Product Data, Definition of

### 3.12.2

#### Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

#### Progress and Completion

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### Progress Payments

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

Init.

/

**Project, Definition of**  
**1.1.4**  
Project Representatives  
4.2.10  
**Property Insurance**  
10.2.5, **11.2**  
**Proposal Requirements**  
1.1.1  
**PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**  
**10**  
Regulations and Laws  
1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1,  
10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4  
Rejection of Work  
4.2.6, 12.2.1  
Releases and Waivers of Liens  
9.3.1, 9.10.2  
Representations  
3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1  
Representatives  
2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1  
Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10  
Retainage  
9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
**Review of Contract Documents and Field**  
**Conditions by Contractor**  
**3.2**, 3.12.7, 6.1.3  
Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and  
Architect  
3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2  
Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples  
by Contractor  
3.12  
**Rights and Remedies**  
1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1,  
6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2,  
12.2.4, **13.3**, 14, 15.4  
**Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**  
**3.17**  
Rules and Notices for Arbitration  
15.4.1  
**Safety of Persons and Property**  
**10.2**, 10.4  
**Safety Precautions and Programs**  
3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, **10.1**, 10.2, 10.4  
**Samples, Definition of**  
**3.12.3**  
**Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and**  
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7  
**Samples at the Site, Documents and**  
**3.11**  
**Schedule of Values**  
**9.2**, 9.3.1  
Schedules, Construction  
3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

Separate Contracts and Contractors  
1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2  
**Separate Contractors, Definition of**  
**6.1.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Definition of**  
**3.12.1**  
**Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**  
3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7  
**Site, Use of**  
**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1  
Site Inspections  
3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Site Visits, Architect's  
3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4  
Special Inspections and Testing  
4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4  
**Specifications, Definition of**  
**1.1.6**  
**Specifications**  
1.1.1, **1.1.6**, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14  
Statute of Limitations  
15.1.2, 15.4.1.1  
Stopping the Work  
2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1  
Stored Materials  
6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4  
**Subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.1**  
**SUBCONTRACTORS**  
**5**  
Subcontractors, Work by  
1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2,  
9.6.7  
**Subcontractual Relations**  
**5.3**, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1  
Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8,  
9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Submittal Schedule  
3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7  
**Subrogation, Waivers of**  
6.1.1, **11.3**  
**Substances, Hazardous**  
**10.3**  
**Substantial Completion**  
4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, **9.8**, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2,  
15.1.2  
**Substantial Completion, Definition of**  
**9.8.1**  
Substitution of Subcontractors  
5.2.3, 5.2.4  
Substitution of Architect  
2.3.3  
Substitutions of Materials  
3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8  
**Sub-subcontractor, Definition of**  
**5.1.2**

Subsurface Conditions  
3.7.4

**Successors and Assigns**  
**13.2**

**Superintendent**  
3.9, 10.2.6

**Supervision and Construction Procedures**  
1.2.2, **3.3**, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3,  
7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Suppliers  
1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6,  
9.10.5, 14.2.1

Surety  
5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2,  
15.2.7

Surety, Consent of  
9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Surveys  
1.1.7, 2.3.4

**Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**  
**14.3**

Suspension of the Work  
3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3  
Suspension or Termination of the Contract  
5.4.1.1, 14

**Taxes**  
3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

**Termination by the Contractor**  
**14.1**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Cause**  
5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Convenience**  
**14.4**

Termination of the Architect  
2.3.3  
Termination of the Contractor Employment  
14.2.2

**TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE  
CONTRACT**

**14**  
**Tests and Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,  
9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**

**TIME**  
**8**

**Time, Delays and Extensions of**  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7,  
10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

**Time Limits**

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,  
5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.1,  
9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15.1.2,  
15.1.3, 15.4

**Time Limits on Claims**  
3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work  
9.3.2, 9.3.3

**UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**  
**12**

**Uncovering of Work**  
**12.1**

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown  
3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

Unit Prices  
7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents  
1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

**Use of Site**  
**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

**Values, Schedule of**  
**9.2**, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect  
13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor  
9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Claims by the Owner  
9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Consequential Damages  
14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens  
9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

**Waivers of Subrogation**  
6.1.1, **11.3**

**Warranty**  
**3.5**, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2,  
15.1.2

Weather Delays  
8.3, 15.1.6.2

**Work, Definition of**  
**1.1.3**

Written Consent  
1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3,  
13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations  
4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders  
1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

#### § 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

#### § 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a Modification. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor, (3) between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.

#### § 1.1.3 The Work

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project.

#### § 1.1.4 The Project

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner and by Separate Contractors.

#### § 1.1.5 The Drawings

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

#### § 1.1.6 The Specifications

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

#### § 1.1.7 Instruments of Service

Instruments of Service are representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Instruments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials.

#### § 1.1.8 Initial Decision Maker

The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### § 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents

§ 1.2.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

### **§ 1.3 Capitalization**

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### **§ 1.4 Interpretation**

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### **§ 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service**

**§ 1.5.1** The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

**§ 1.5.2** The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce the Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants.

### **§ 1.6 Notice**

**§ 1.6.1** Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement.

**§ 1.6.2** Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.

### **§ 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission**

The parties shall agree upon protocols governing the transmission and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.

### **§ 1.8 Building Information Models Use and Reliance**

Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document

G202™–2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.

## **ARTICLE 2 OWNER**

### **§ 2.1 General**

**§ 2.1.1** The Owner is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Owner shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Owner with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

**§ 2.1.2** The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein.

### **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

**§ 2.2.1** Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

**§ 2.2.2** Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 2.2.3** After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.

**§ 2.2.4** Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.

### **§ 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner**

**§ 2.3.1** Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

**§ 2.3.2** The Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

**§ 2.3.3** If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect.

**§ 2.3.4** The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.

**§ 2.3.5** The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services.

**§ 2.3.6** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the Contract Documents for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

#### **§ 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

If the Contractor fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.

#### **§ 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and the Architect may, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

### **ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR**

#### **§ 3.1 General**

**§ 3.1.1** The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract. The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative.

**§ 3.1.2** The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.1.3** The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect in the Architect's administration of the Contract, or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

#### **§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

**§ 3.2.1** Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents.



**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are not for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; however, the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.2.3** The Contractor is not required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2 or 3.2.3, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work.

### **§ 3.4 Labor and Materials**

**§ 3.4.1** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for labor, materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work.

**§ 3.4.2** Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them.

### § 3.5 Warranty

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require or permit. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance, improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment.

§ 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4.

### § 3.6 Taxes

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect.

### § 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work knowing it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

### § 3.7.4 Concealed or Unknown Conditions

If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than 14 days after first observance of the conditions. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

### § 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, but the Contractor shall not be required to employ persons or entities to whom the Contractor has reasonable objection.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site and all required taxes, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum shall be adjusted accordingly by Change Order. The amount of the Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner with reasonable promptness.

### § 3.9 Superintendent

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor.

§ 3.9.2 The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 3.9.3 The Contractor shall not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

### § 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules

§ 3.10.1 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project.

§ 3.10.2 The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

§ 3.10.3 The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

### § 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site

The Contractor shall make available, at the Project site, the Contract Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner, and

delivered to the Architect for submittal to the Owner upon completion of the Work as a record of the Work as constructed.

### **§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

**§ 3.12.4** Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. Their purpose is to demonstrate how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

**§ 3.12.5** The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

**§ 3.12.6** By submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents to the Owner and Architect that the Contractor has (1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.7** The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

**§ 3.12.8** The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

**§ 3.12.9** The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

**§ 3.12.10** The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

**§ 3.12.10.1** If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely

upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment.

### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

**§ 3.14.1** The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

**§ 3.14.2** The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

**§ 3.15.1** The Contractor shall keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project.

**§ 3.15.2** If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor.

### **§ 3.16 Access to Work**

The Contractor shall provide the Owner and Architect with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located.

### **§ 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights**

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. The Contractor shall defend suits or claims for infringement of copyrights and patent rights and shall hold the Owner and Architect harmless from loss on account thereof, but shall not be responsible for defense or loss when a particular design, process, or product of a particular manufacturer or manufacturers is required by the Contract Documents, or where the copyright violations are contained in Drawings, Specifications, or other documents prepared by the Owner or Architect. However, if an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

### § 3.18 Indemnification

§ 3.18.1 To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), but only to the extent caused by the negligent acts or omissions of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, regardless of whether or not such claim, damage, loss, or expense is caused in part by a party indemnified hereunder. Such obligation shall not be construed to negate, abridge, or reduce other rights or obligations of indemnity that would otherwise exist as to a party or person described in this Section 3.18.

§ 3.18.2 In claims against any person or entity indemnified under this Section 3.18 by an employee of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, anyone directly or indirectly employed by them, or anyone for whose acts they may be liable, the indemnification obligation under Section 3.18.1 shall not be limited by a limitation on amount or type of damages, compensation, or benefits payable by or for the Contractor or a Subcontractor under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts, or other employee benefit acts.

## ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

### § 4.1 General

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement.

§ 4.1.2 Duties, responsibilities, and limitations of authority of the Architect as set forth in the Contract Documents shall not be restricted, modified, or extended without written consent of the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### § 4.2 Administration of the Contract

§ 4.2.1 The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect will visit the site at intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Contract Documents. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect will not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

### § 4.2.4 Communications

The Owner and Contractor shall include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.

§ 4.2.5 Based on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect has authority to reject Work that does not conform to the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will have authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with reasonable promptness while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation or performance of equipment or systems, all of which remain the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect will prepare Change Orders and Construction Change Directives, and may order minor changes in the Work as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect will investigate and make determinations and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner's review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor pursuant to Section 9.10; and issue a final Certificate for Payment pursuant to Section 9.10.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect's responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the Project representatives.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and decide matters concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations and decisions of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and decisions, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

§ 4.2.13 The Architect's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Contract Documents. The Architect's response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term "Subcontractor" does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term "Sub-subcontractor" is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

### § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. If the proposed but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not substitute a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitution.

### § 5.3 Subcontractual Relations

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights, and shall allow to the Subcontractor, unless specifically provided otherwise in the subcontract agreement, the benefit of all rights, remedies, and redress against the Contractor that the Contractor, by the Contract Documents, has against the Owner. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors.

### § 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts

§ 5.4.1 Each subcontract agreement for a portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section 14.2 and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract.



When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

§ 5.4.2 Upon such assignment, if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

§ 5.4.3 Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

## **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

§ 6.1.1 The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation.

§ 6.1.2 When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor Agreement.

§ 6.1.3 The Owner shall provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor, who shall cooperate with them. The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

§ 6.1.4 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### **§ 6.2 Mutual Responsibility**

§ 6.2.1 The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents.

§ 6.2.2 If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify the Architect of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that are not apparent.

§ 6.2.3 The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.

§ 6.2.4 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage that the Contractor wrongfully causes to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

Init.

/

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the Architect will allocate the cost among those responsible.

## ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

### § 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive or order for a minor change in the Work, subject to the limitations stated in this Article 7 and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work.

### § 7.2 Change Orders

§ 7.2.1 A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1 The change in the Work;
- .2 The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; and
- .3 The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

### § 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or
- .4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.

§ 7.3.4 If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:

- .1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;
- .2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;
- .3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;
- .4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and
- .5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

§ 7.3.5 If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.

§ 7.3.8 The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost as confirmed by the Architect. When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.

§ 7.3.9 Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.

#### § 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work

The Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or an extension of the Contract Time. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect the Contract Sum or Contract Time, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or extension of the Contract Time.

### ARTICLE 8 TIME

#### § 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substantial Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

## § 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement, the Contractor confirms that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, commence the Work prior to the effective date of insurance required to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner.

§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial Completion within the Contract Time.

## § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Architect determines, justify delay, then the Contract Time shall be extended for such reasonable time as the Architect may determine.

§ 8.3.2 Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.

§ 8.3.3 This Section 8.3 does not preclude recovery of damages for delay by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### § 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices shall be equitably adjusted.

### § 9.2 Schedule of Values

Where the Contract is based on a stipulated sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment.

### § 9.3 Applications for Payment

§ 9.3.1 At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect an itemized Application for Payment prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work. The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage if provided for in the Contract Documents.

§ 9.3.1.1 As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless such Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**§ 9.3.2** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, payments shall be made on account of materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for materials and equipment suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off the site.

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work.

#### **§ 9.4 Certificates for Payment**

**§ 9.4.1** The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, either (1) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Application for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reasons for withholding certification in part as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Application for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole as provided in Section 9.5.1.

**§ 9.4.2** The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum.

#### **§ 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification**

**§ 9.5.1** The Architect may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;

Init.

- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;
- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay; or
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.5.2 When either party disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, that party may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.

§ 9.5.4 If the Architect withholds certification for payment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the Contractor failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If the Owner makes payments by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

## § 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law.

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision.

§ 9.6.8 Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall defend and indemnify the Owner from all loss, liability, damage or expense, including reasonable attorney's fees and litigation expenses, arising out of any lien claim or other claim for payment by any Subcontractor or supplier of any tier. Upon receipt of notice of a lien claim or other claim for payment, the Owner shall notify the Contractor. If approved by the applicable court, when required, the Contractor may substitute a surety bond for the property against which the lien or other claim for payment has been asserted.

### § 9.7 Failure of Payment

If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or if the Owner does not pay the Contractor within seven days after the date established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents.

### § 9.8 Substantial Completion

§ 9.8.1 Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use.

§ 9.8.2 When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.8.3 Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.4 When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

§ 9.8.5 The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with the Contractor, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy or use, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise agreed upon, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### § 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect will promptly issue a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, and on the basis of the Architect's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled.

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) a certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) if required by the Owner, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees.

§ 9.10.3 If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, except that it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

§ 9.10.4 The making of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Owner except those arising from

- .1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;
- .2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;
- .3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or
- .4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.

§ 9.10.5 Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously made in writing and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract.

### § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

Init.

/



- .1 employees on the Work and other persons who may be affected thereby;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

**§ 10.2.2** The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

**§ 10.2.3** The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards.

**§ 10.2.4** When use or storage of explosives or other hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel.

**§ 10.2.5** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

**§ 10.2.6** The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect.

**§ 10.2.7** The Contractor shall not permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

**§ 10.2.8 Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify the Owner and Architect of the condition.

**§ 10.3.2** Upon receipt of the Contractor's notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will

promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start-up.

**§ 10.3.3** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Owner shall indemnify and hold harmless the Contractor, Subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, and agents and employees of any of them from and against claims, damages, losses, and expenses, including but not limited to attorneys' fees, arising out of or resulting from performance of the Work in the affected area if in fact the material or substance presents the risk of bodily injury or death as described in Section 10.3.1 and has not been rendered harmless, provided that such claim, damage, loss, or expense is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the Work itself), except to the extent that such damage, loss, or expense is due to the fault or negligence of the party seeking indemnity.

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.

**§ 10.3.5** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.

#### **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.

### **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

#### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

**§ 11.1.2** The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

**§ 11.1.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation or

expiration. Upon receipt of notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage.

## § 11.2 Owner's Insurance

§ 11.2.1 The Owner shall purchase and maintain insurance of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Owner shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

§ 11.2.2 **Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto.

§ 11.2.3 **Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## § 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation

§ 11.3.1 The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property.

§ 11.3.2 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance.

#### **§ 11.4 Loss of Use, Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance**

The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.

#### **§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss**

**§ 11.5.1** A loss insured under the property insurance required by the Agreement shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.

**§ 11.5.2** Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

### **ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

#### **§ 12.1 Uncovering of Work**

**§ 12.1.1** If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

**§ 12.1.2** If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

#### **§ 12.2 Correction of Work**

##### **§ 12.2.1 Before Substantial Completion**

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, discovered before Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

##### **§ 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion**

**§ 12.2.2.1** In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1, or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such notice promptly after discovery of the condition. During the one-year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty. If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during

that period after receipt of notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct it in accordance with Section 2.5.

**§ 12.2.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual completion of that portion of the Work.

**§ 12.2.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall not be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work.

### **§ 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work**

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## **ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **§ 13.1 Governing Law**

The Contract shall be governed by the law of the place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.

### **§ 13.2 Successors and Assigns**

**§ 13.2.1** The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract as a whole without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract.

**§ 13.2.2** The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.

### **§ 13.3 Rights and Remedies**

**§ 13.3.1** Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

**§ 13.3.2** No action or failure to act by the Owner, Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing.

## § 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded. The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures. Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense.

§ 13.4.3 If procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## § 13.5 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.

## ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

### § 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of 30 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, for any of the following reasons:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment on a Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents; or
- .4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, the Contractor may, upon seven days' notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination.

§ 14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of 60 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has repeatedly failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon seven additional days' notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

#### § 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

§ 14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or
- .4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- .1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- .2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- .3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, such excess shall be paid to the Contractor. If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

#### § 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.3.1 The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

§ 14.3.2 The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### § 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience

§ 14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

§ 14.4.2 Upon receipt of notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;

- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement.

## **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

### **§ 15.1 Claims**

#### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is a demand or assertion by one of the parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of money, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.

#### **§ 15.1.2 Time Limits on Claims**

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case not more than 10 years after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### **§ 15.1.3 Notice of Claims**

**§ 15.1.3.1** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party and to the Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker. Claims by either party under this Section 15.1.3.1 shall be initiated within 21 days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 days after the claimant first recognizes the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later.

**§ 15.1.3.2** Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

#### **§ 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance**

**§ 15.1.4.1** Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7 and Article 14, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make payments in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 15.1.4.2** The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.

#### **§ 15.1.5 Claims for Additional Cost**

If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Sum, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given before proceeding to execute the portion of the Work that is the subject of the Claim. Prior notice is not required for Claims relating to an emergency endangering life or property arising under Section 10.4.

#### **§ 15.1.6 Claims for Additional Time**

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, notice as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of cost and of probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.



**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.

### **§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waive Claims against each other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract. This mutual waiver includes

- .1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and
- .2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.

This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### **§ 15.2 Initial Decision**

**§ 15.2.1** Claims, excluding those where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initial Decision Maker for initial decision. The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If an initial decision has not been rendered within 30 days after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.

**§ 15.2.2** The Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, (2) reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.

**§ 15.2.3** In evaluating Claims, the Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Initial Decision Maker in rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.

**§ 15.2.4** If the Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.

**§ 15.2.5** The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution.

**§ 15.2.6** Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.

§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.

§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.

### § 15.3 Mediation

§ 15.3.1 Claims, disputes, or other matters in controversy arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived as provided for in Sections 9.10.4, 9.10.5, and 15.1.7, shall be subject to mediation as a condition precedent to binding dispute resolution.

§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Mediation Procedures in effect on the date of the Agreement. A request for mediation shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the mediation. The request may be made concurrently with the filing of binding dispute resolution proceedings but, in such event, mediation shall proceed in advance of binding dispute resolution proceedings, which shall be stayed pending mediation for a period of 60 days from the date of filing, unless stayed for a longer period by agreement of the parties or court order. If an arbitration is stayed pursuant to this Section 15.3.2, the parties may nonetheless proceed to the selection of the arbitrator(s) and agree upon a schedule for later proceedings.

§ 15.3.3 Either party may, within 30 days from the date that mediation has been concluded without resolution of the dispute or 60 days after mediation has been demanded without resolution of the dispute, demand in writing that the other party file for binding dispute resolution. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for binding dispute resolution within 60 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.

§ 15.3.4 The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally. The mediation shall be held in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. Agreements reached in mediation shall be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

### § 15.4 Arbitration

§ 15.4.1 If the parties have selected arbitration as the method for binding dispute resolution in the Agreement, any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation shall be subject to arbitration which, unless the parties mutually agree otherwise, shall be administered by the American Arbitration Association in accordance with its Construction Industry Arbitration Rules in effect on the date of the Agreement. The Arbitration shall be conducted in the place where the Project is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon. A demand for arbitration shall be made in writing, delivered to the other party to the Contract, and filed with the person or entity administering the arbitration. The party filing a notice of demand for arbitration must assert in the demand all Claims then known to that party on which arbitration is permitted to be demanded.

§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.

§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.

**§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder**

§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).

§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.

§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.



# AIA® Document A310™ – 2010

## Bid Bond

**CONTRACTOR:**

*(Name, legal status and address)*

**SURETY:**

*(Name, legal status and principal place of business)*

**OWNER:**

*(Name, legal status and address)*

**BOND AMOUNT: \$****PROJECT:**

*(Name, location or address, and Project number, if any)*

Sample

The Contractor and Surety are bound to the Owner in the amount set forth above, for the payment of which the Contractor and Surety bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, as provided herein. The conditions of this Bond are such that if the Owner accepts the bid of the Contractor within the time specified in the bid documents, or within such time period as may be agreed to by the Owner and Contractor, and the Contractor either (1) enters into a contract with the Owner in accordance with the terms of such bid, and gives such bond or bonds as may be specified in the bidding or Contract Documents, with a surety admitted in the jurisdiction of the Project and otherwise acceptable to the Owner, for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and material furnished in the prosecution thereof; or (2) pays to the Owner the difference, not to exceed the amount of this Bond, between the amount specified in said bid and such larger amount for which the Owner may in good faith contract with another party to perform the work covered by said bid, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect. The Surety hereby waives any notice of an agreement between the Owner and Contractor to extend the time in which the Owner may accept the bid. Waiver of notice by the Surety shall not apply to any extension exceeding sixty (60) days in the aggregate beyond the time for acceptance of bids specified in the bid documents, and the Owner and Contractor shall obtain the Surety's consent for an extension beyond sixty (60) days.

If this Bond is issued in connection with a subcontractor's bid to a Contractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.

When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location of the Project, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

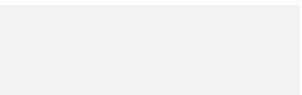
Init.

**AIA Document A310™ – 2010.** Copyright © 1963, 1970 and 2010 by The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA® Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA® Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This document was produced by AIA software at 18:03:40 ET on 05/15/2019 under Order No.2583673677 which expires on 12/27/2019, and is not for resale.

User Notes:

(1934915958)

Signed and sealed this day of ,



(Witness)

(Witness)

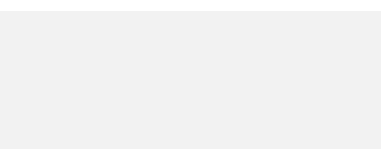


\_\_\_\_\_  
(Contractor as Principal) (Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Title)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Surety) (Seal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Title)



Init.

/



# AIA<sup>®</sup> Document A312<sup>™</sup> – 2010

## Performance Bond

**CONTRACTOR:**

*(Name, legal status and address)*

**SURETY:**

*(Name, legal status and principal place of business)*

**OWNER:**

*(Name, legal status and address)*

**CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT**

Date:

Amount: \$ 0.00

Description:

*(Name and location)*

Sample

**BOND**

Date:

*(Not earlier than Construction Contract Date)*

Amount: \$

Modifications to this Bond:  None  See Section 16

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL**

Company: *(Corporate Seal)*

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name and

Title:

*(Any additional signatures appear on the last page of this Performance Bond.)*

**SURETY**

Company: *(Corporate Seal)*

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name and

Title:

*(FOR INFORMATION ONLY — Name, address and telephone)*

**AGENT or BROKER:****OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE:**

*(Architect, Engineer or other party:)*

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

Any singular reference to Contractor, Surety, Owner or other party shall be considered plural where applicable.

Init.

**AIA Document A312<sup>™</sup> – 2010 Performance Bond.** The American Institute of Architects. **All rights reserved. WARNING: This AIA<sup>®</sup> Document is protected by U.S. Copyright Law and International Treaties. Unauthorized reproduction or distribution of this AIA<sup>®</sup> Document, or any portion of it, may result in severe civil and criminal penalties, and will be prosecuted to the maximum extent possible under the law.** This document was produced by AIA software at 16:45:45 ET on 05/15/2019 under Order No.2583673677 which expires on 12/27/2019, and is not for resale.

User Notes:

(791767595)

§ 1 The Contractor and Surety, jointly and severally, bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns to the Owner for the performance of the Construction Contract, which is incorporated herein by reference.

§ 2 If the Contractor performs the Construction Contract, the Surety and the Contractor shall have no obligation under this Bond, except when applicable to participate in a conference as provided in Section 3.

§ 3 If there is no Owner Default under the Construction Contract, the Surety's obligation under this Bond shall arise after

- .1 the Owner first provides notice to the Contractor and the Surety that the Owner is considering declaring a Contractor Default. Such notice shall indicate whether the Owner is requesting a conference among the Owner, Contractor and Surety to discuss the Contractor's performance. If the Owner does not request a conference, the Surety may, within five (5) business days after receipt of the Owner's notice, request such a conference. If the Surety timely requests a conference, the Owner shall attend. Unless the Owner agrees otherwise, any conference requested under this Section 3.1 shall be held within ten (10) business days of the Surety's receipt of the Owner's notice. If the Owner, the Contractor and the Surety agree, the Contractor shall be allowed a reasonable time to perform the Construction Contract, but such an agreement shall not waive the Owner's right, if any, subsequently to declare a Contractor Default;
- .2 the Owner declares a Contractor Default, terminates the Construction Contract and notifies the Surety; and
- .3 the Owner has agreed to pay the Balance of the Contract Price in accordance with the terms of the Construction Contract to the Surety or to a contractor selected to perform the Construction Contract.

§ 4 Failure on the part of the Owner to comply with the notice requirement in Section 3.1 shall not constitute a failure to comply with a condition precedent to the Surety's obligations, or release the Surety from its obligations, except to the extent the Surety demonstrates actual prejudice.

§ 5 When the Owner has satisfied the conditions of Section 3, the Surety shall promptly and at the Surety's expense take one of the following actions:

§ 5.1 Arrange for the Contractor, with the consent of the Owner, to perform and complete the Construction Contract;

§ 5.2 Undertake to perform and complete the Construction Contract itself, through its agents or independent contractors;

§ 5.3 Obtain bids or negotiated proposals from qualified contractors acceptable to the Owner for a contract for performance and completion of the Construction Contract, arrange for a contract to be prepared for execution by the Owner and a contractor selected with the Owner's concurrence, to be secured with performance and payment bonds executed by a qualified surety equivalent to the bonds issued on the Construction Contract, and pay to the Owner the amount of damages as described in Section 7 in excess of the Balance of the Contract Price incurred by the Owner as a result of the Contractor Default; or

§ 5.4 Waive its right to perform and complete, arrange for completion, or obtain a new contractor and with reasonable promptness under the circumstances:

- .1 After investigation, determine the amount for which it may be liable to the Owner and, as soon as practicable after the amount is determined, make payment to the Owner; or
- .2 Deny liability in whole or in part and notify the Owner, citing the reasons for denial.

§ 6 If the Surety does not proceed as provided in Section 5 with reasonable promptness, the Surety shall be deemed to be in default on this Bond seven days after receipt of an additional written notice from the Owner to the Surety demanding that the Surety perform its obligations under this Bond, and the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner. If the Surety proceeds as provided in Section 5.4, and the Owner refuses the payment or the Surety has denied liability, in whole or in part, without further notice the Owner shall be entitled to enforce any remedy available to the Owner.

§ 7 If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.2 or 5.3, then the responsibilities of the Surety to the Owner shall not be greater than those of the Contractor under the Construction Contract, and the responsibilities of the Owner to the

Surety shall not be greater than those of the Owner under the Construction Contract. Subject to the commitment by the Owner to pay the Balance of the Contract Price, the Surety is obligated, without duplication, for

- .1 the responsibilities of the Contractor for correction of defective work and completion of the Construction Contract;
- .2 additional legal, design professional and delay costs resulting from the Contractor's Default, and resulting from the actions or failure to act of the Surety under Section 5; and
- .3 liquidated damages, or if no liquidated damages are specified in the Construction Contract, actual damages caused by delayed performance or non-performance of the Contractor.

**§ 8** If the Surety elects to act under Section 5.1, 5.3 or 5.4, the Surety's liability is limited to the amount of this Bond.

**§ 9** The Surety shall not be liable to the Owner or others for obligations of the Contractor that are unrelated to the Construction Contract, and the Balance of the Contract Price shall not be reduced or set off on account of any such unrelated obligations. No right of action shall accrue on this Bond to any person or entity other than the Owner or its heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns.

**§ 10** The Surety hereby waives notice of any change, including changes of time, to the Construction Contract or to related subcontracts, purchase orders and other obligations.

**§ 11** Any proceeding, legal or equitable, under this Bond may be instituted in any court of competent jurisdiction in the location in which the work or part of the work is located and shall be instituted within two years after a declaration of Contractor Default or within two years after the Contractor ceased working or within two years after the Surety refuses or fails to perform its obligations under this Bond, whichever occurs first. If the provisions of this Paragraph are void or prohibited by law, the minimum period of limitation available to sureties as a defense in the jurisdiction of the suit shall be applicable.

**§ 12** Notice to the Surety, the Owner or the Contractor shall be mailed or delivered to the address shown on the page on which their signature appears.

**§ 13** When this Bond has been furnished to comply with a statutory or other legal requirement in the location where the construction was to be performed, any provision in this Bond conflicting with said statutory or legal requirement shall be deemed deleted herefrom and provisions conforming to such statutory or other legal requirement shall be deemed incorporated herein. When so furnished, the intent is that this Bond shall be construed as a statutory bond and not as a common law bond.

#### **§ 14 Definitions**

**§ 14.1 Balance of the Contract Price.** The total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Construction Contract after all proper adjustments have been made, including allowance to the Contractor of any amounts received or to be received by the Owner in settlement of insurance or other claims for damages to which the Contractor is entitled, reduced by all valid and proper payments made to or on behalf of the Contractor under the Construction Contract.

**§ 14.2 Construction Contract.** The agreement between the Owner and Contractor identified on the cover page, including all Contract Documents and changes made to the agreement and the Contract Documents.

**§ 14.3 Contractor Default.** Failure of the Contractor, which has not been remedied or waived, to perform or otherwise to comply with a material term of the Construction Contract.

**§ 14.4 Owner Default.** Failure of the Owner, which has not been remedied or waived, to pay the Contractor as required under the Construction Contract or to perform and complete or comply with the other material terms of the Construction Contract.

**§ 14.5 Contract Documents.** All the documents that comprise the agreement between the Owner and Contractor.

**§ 15** If this Bond is issued for an agreement between a Contractor and subcontractor, the term Contractor in this Bond shall be deemed to be Subcontractor and the term Owner shall be deemed to be Contractor.



§ 16 Modifications to this bond are as follows:

*(Space is provided below for additional signatures of added parties, other than those appearing on the cover page.)*

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL**

Company: \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Corporate Seal)*

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**SURETY**

Company: \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Corporate Seal)*

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name and Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: \_\_\_\_\_



Init.

/



**AIA**<sup>®</sup>

# Document G701™ – 2017

## Change Order

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>PROJECT:</b> <i>(Name and address)</i> | <b>CONTRACT INFORMATION:</b><br>Contract For:<br>Date: | <b>CHANGE ORDER INFORMATION:</b><br>Change Order Number:<br>Date: |
| <b>OWNER:</b> <i>(Name and address)</i>   | <b>ARCHITECT:</b> <i>(Name and address)</i>            | <b>CONTRACTOR:</b> <i>(Name and address)</i>                      |

**THE CONTRACT IS CHANGED AS FOLLOWS:**

*(Insert a detailed description of the change and, if applicable, attach or reference specific exhibits. Also include agreed upon adjustments attributable to executed Construction Change Directives.)*

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
| The original Contract Sum was  | \$ _____      |
| The net change by previously authorized Change Orders                    | \$ _____ 0.00 |
| The Contract Sum prior to this Change Order was                          | \$ _____ 0.00 |
| The Contract Sum will be increased by this Change Order in the amount of | \$ _____ 0.00 |
| The new Contract Sum including this Change Order will be                 | \$ _____ 0.00 |
| The Contract Time will be increased by Zero (0) days.                    |               |
| The new date of Substantial Completion will be                           |               |

**NOTE:** This Change Order does not include adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or the Contract Time, that have been authorized by Construction Change Directive until the cost and time have been agreed upon by both the Owner and Contractor, in which case a Change Order is executed to supersede the Construction Change Directive.

**NOT VALID UNTIL SIGNED BY THE ARCHITECT, CONTRACTOR AND OWNER.**

|  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| _____<br><b>ARCHITECT</b> <i>(Firm name)</i> | _____<br><b>CONTRACTOR</b> <i>(Firm name)</i> | _____<br><b>OWNER</b> <i>(Firm name)</i> |
| _____<br><b>SIGNATURE</b>                    | _____<br><b>SIGNATURE</b>                     | _____<br><b>SIGNATURE</b>                |
| _____<br><b>PRINTED NAME AND TITLE</b>       | _____<br><b>PRINTED NAME AND TITLE</b>        | _____<br><b>PRINTED NAME AND TITLE</b>   |
| _____<br><b>DATE</b>                         | _____<br><b>DATE</b>                          | _____<br><b>DATE</b>                     |

## Application and Certificate for Payment

|                         |                          |   |                                      |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| <b>TO OWNER:</b>        | <b>PROJECT:</b> sample 1 | <b>APPLICATION NO:</b> 001                | <b>Distribution to:</b>              |
| <b>FROM CONTRACTOR:</b> | <b>VIA ARCHITECT:</b>    | <b>PERIOD TO:</b>                         | OWNER: <input type="checkbox"/>      |
|                         |                          | <b>CONTRACT FOR:</b> General Construction | ARCHITECT: <input type="checkbox"/>  |
|                         |                          | <b>CONTRACT DATE:</b>                     | CONTRACTOR: <input type="checkbox"/> |
|                         |                          | <b>PROJECT NOS:</b> / /                   | FIELD: <input type="checkbox"/>      |
|                         |                          |   | OTHER: <input type="checkbox"/>      |

### CONTRACTOR'S APPLICATION FOR PAYMENT

Application is made for payment, as shown below, in connection with the Contract. Continuation Sheet, AIA Document G703, is attached.

|  |    |      |
|--|----|------|
| 1. ORIGINAL CONTRACT SUM .....                                     | \$ | 0.00 |
| 2. Net change by Change Orders .....                               | \$ | 0.00 |
| 3. CONTRACT SUM TO DATE (Line 1 ± 2) .....                         | \$ | 0.00 |
| 4. TOTAL COMPLETED & STORED TO DATE (Column G on G703) .....       | \$ | 0.00 |
| <b>5. RETAINAGE:</b>   |    |      |
| a. 0 % of Completed Work<br>(Column D + E on G703)                 | \$ | 0.00 |
| b. 0 % of Stored Material<br>(Column F on G703)                    | \$ | 0.00 |
| Total Retainage (Lines 5a + 5b or Total in Column I of G703) ..... | \$ | 0.00 |
| 6. TOTAL EARNED LESS RETAINAGE .....                               | \$ | 0.00 |
| (Line 4 Less Line 5 Total)   |    |      |
| 7. LESS PREVIOUS CERTIFICATES FOR PAYMENT .....                    | \$ | 0.00 |
| (Line 6 from prior Certificate)                                    |    |      |
| 8. CURRENT PAYMENT DUE .....                                       | \$ | 0.00 |
| 9. BALANCE TO FINISH, INCLUDING RETAINAGE .....                    | \$ | 0.00 |
| (Line 3 less Line 6)   |    |      |

| CHANGE ORDER SUMMARY                               | ADDITIONS      | DEDUCTIONS     |
|--|----------------|----------------|
| Total changes approved in previous months by Owner | \$ 0.00        | \$ 0.00        |
| Total approved this Month                          | \$ 0.00        | \$ 0.00        |
| <b>TOTALS</b>                                      | <b>\$ 0.00</b> | <b>\$ 0.00</b> |
| NET CHANGES by Change Order                        | \$             | 0.00           |

The undersigned Contractor certifies that to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information and belief the Work covered by this Application for Payment has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents, that all amounts have been paid by the Contractor for Work for which previous Certificates for Payment were issued and payments received from the Owner, and that current payment shown herein is now due.

#### CONTRACTOR:

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

State of: \_\_\_\_\_

County of: \_\_\_\_\_

Subscribed and sworn to before  
me this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_

Notary Public:

My Commission expires: \_\_\_\_\_

### ARCHITECT'S CERTIFICATE FOR PAYMENT

In accordance with the Contract Documents, based on on-site observations and the data comprising this application, the Architect certifies to the Owner that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief the Work has progressed as indicated, the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, and the Contractor is entitled to payment of the AMOUNT CERTIFIED.

AMOUNT CERTIFIED ..... \$ 0.00

*(Attach explanation if amount certified differs from the amount applied. Initial all figures on this Application and on the Continuation Sheet that are changed to conform with the amount certified.)*

#### ARCHITECT:

By: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

This Certificate is not negotiable. The AMOUNT CERTIFIED is payable only to the Contractor named herein. Issuance, payment and acceptance of payment are without prejudice to any rights of the Owner or Contractor under this Contract

### Continuation Sheet

AIA Document G702, APPLICATION AND CERTIFICATION FOR PAYMENT, containing Contractor's signed certification is attached.

In tabulations below, amounts are stated to the nearest dollar.

Use Column I on Contracts where variable retainage for line items may apply.

**APPLICATION NO:** 001

**APPLICATION DATE:**

**PERIOD TO:**

**ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NO:**

| A        | B                   | C               | D                                 | E           | F  | G  |           | H                         | I                            |
|----------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|--|--|-----------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| ITEM NO. | DESCRIPTION OF WORK | SCHEDULED VALUE | WORK COMPLETED                    |             | MATERIALS PRESENTLY STORED (NOT IN D OR E) | TOTAL COMPLETED AND STORED TO DATE (D+E+F) | % (G ÷ C) | BALANCE TO FINISH (C - G) | RETAINAGE (IF VARIABLE RATE) |
|          |                     |                 | FROM PREVIOUS APPLICATION (D + E) | THIS PERIOD |  |  |           |                           |                              |
|          |                     |                 |                                   |             |  |  |           |                           |                              |
|          | <b>GRAND TOTAL</b>  | \$ 0.00         | \$ 0.00                           | \$ 0.00     | \$ 0.00                                    | \$ 0.00                                    | 0.00 %    | \$ 0.00                   | \$ 0.00                      |



# AIA<sup>®</sup> Document A101<sup>™</sup> – 2017

## **Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor** where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum

**AGREEMENT** made as of the    day of    in the year  
*(In words, indicate day, month and year.)*

**BETWEEN** the Owner:  
*(Name, legal status, address and other information)*

and the Contractor:  
*(Name, legal status, address and other information)*

for the following Project:  
*(Name, location and detailed description)*

Sample

The Architect:  
*(Name, legal status, address and other information)*

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101<sup>™</sup>-2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201<sup>™</sup>-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

Init.

/

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 | THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS                          |
| 2 | THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT                       |
| 3 | DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION |
| 4 | CONTRACT SUM                                    |
| 5 | PAYMENTS  |
| 6 | DISPUTE RESOLUTION                              |
| 7 | TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION                       |
| 8 | MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS                        |
| 9 | ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS               |

### EXHIBIT A INSURANCE AND BONDS

#### ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions), Drawings, Specifications, Addenda issued prior to execution of this Agreement, other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement, all of which form the Contract, and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than a Modification, appears in Article 9.

#### ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

The Contractor shall fully execute the Work described in the Contract Documents, except as specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

#### ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:  
(Check one of the following boxes.)

- The date of this Agreement.
- A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.
- Established as follows:  
(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)

If a date of commencement of the Work is not selected, then the date of commencement shall be the date of this Agreement.

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

#### § 3.3 Substantial Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Work:

(Check one of the following boxes and complete the necessary information.)

Init.

/

[ ] Not later than ( ) calendar days from the date of commencement of the Work.

[ ] By the following date:

§ 3.3.2 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, if portions of the Work are to be completed prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, the Contractor shall achieve Substantial Completion of such portions by the following dates:

**Portion of Work**

**Substantial Completion Date**

§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

**ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM**

§ 4.1 The Owner shall pay the Contractor the Contract Sum in current funds for the Contractor's performance of the Contract. The Contract Sum shall be (\$ ), subject to additions and deductions as provided in the Contract Documents.

**§ 4.2 Alternates**

§ 4.2.1 Alternates, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

**Item**

**Price**

§ 4.2.2 Subject to the conditions noted below, the following alternates may be accepted by the Owner following execution of this Agreement. Upon acceptance, the Owner shall issue a Modification to this Agreement. *(Insert below each alternate and the conditions that must be met for the Owner to accept the alternate.)*

**Item**

**Price**

**Conditions for Acceptance**

§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum: *(Identify each allowance.)*

**Item**

**Price**

§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any:

*(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)*

**Item**

**Units and Limitations**

**Price per Unit (\$0.00)**

§ 4.5 Liquidated damages, if any:

*(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any.)*

§ 4.6 Other:

*(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)*

## ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS

### § 5.1 Progress Payments

§ 5.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 5.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month ending on the last day of the month, or as follows:

§ 5.1.3 Provided that an Application for Payment is received by the Architect not later than the day of a month, the Owner shall make payment of the amount certified to the Contractor not later than the day of the month. If an Application for Payment is received by the Architect after the application date fixed above, payment of the amount certified shall be made by the Owner not later than ( ) days after the Architect receives the Application for Payment.

*(Federal, state or local laws may require payment within a certain period of time.)*

§ 5.1.4 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect may require. This schedule of values shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

§ 5.1.5 Applications for Payment shall show the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

§ 5.1.6 In accordance with AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

§ 5.1.6.1 The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

- .1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work;
- .2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing; and
- .3 That portion of Construction Change Directives that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified.

§ 5.1.6.2 The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

- .1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;
- .2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017;
- .3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;
- .4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017; and
- .5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

### § 5.1.7 Retainage

§ 5.1.7.1 For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner may withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

*(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)*



**§ 5.1.7.1.1** The following items are not subject to retainage:  
(Insert any items not subject to the withholding of retainage, such as general conditions, insurance, etc.)

**§ 5.1.7.2** Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:  
(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)

**§ 5.1.7.3** Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Substantial Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7. The Application for Payment submitted at Substantial Completion shall not include retainage as follows:  
(Insert any other conditions for release of retainage upon Substantial Completion.)

**§ 5.1.8** If final completion of the Work is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor, the Owner shall pay the Contractor any additional amounts in accordance with Article 9 of AIA Document A201–2017.

**§ 5.1.9** Except with the Owner’s prior approval, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

## **§ 5.2 Final Payment**

**§ 5.2.1** Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor when

- .1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor’s responsibility to correct Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201–2017, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment; and
- .2 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect.

**§ 5.2.2** The Owner’s final payment to the Contractor shall be made no later than 30 days after the issuance of the Architect’s final Certificate for Payment, or as follows:

## **§ 5.3 Interest**

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest from the date payment is due at the rate stated below, or in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.  
(Insert rate of interest agreed upon, if any.)

%

## **ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION**

### **§ 6.1 Initial Decision Maker**

The Architect will serve as the Initial Decision Maker pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, unless the parties appoint below another individual, not a party to this Agreement, to serve as the Initial Decision Maker.  
(If the parties mutually agree, insert the name, address and other contact information of the Initial Decision Maker, if other than the Architect.)

## § 6.2 Binding Dispute Resolution

For any Claim subject to, but not resolved by, mediation pursuant to Article 15 of AIA Document A201–2017, the method of binding dispute resolution shall be as follows:

*(Check the appropriate box.)*

- Arbitration pursuant to Section 15.4 of AIA Document A201–2017
- Litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction
- Other *(Specify)*

If the Owner and Contractor do not select a method of binding dispute resolution, or do not subsequently agree in writing to a binding dispute resolution method other than litigation, Claims will be resolved by litigation in a court of competent jurisdiction.

## ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.

§ 7.1.1 If the Contract is terminated for the Owner’s convenience in accordance with Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017, then the Owner shall pay the Contractor a termination fee as follows:

*(Insert the amount of, or method for determining, the fee, if any, payable to the Contractor following a termination for the Owner’s convenience.)*

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201–2017.

## ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201–2017 or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

§ 8.2 The Owner’s representative:

*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

§ 8.3 The Contractor’s representative:

*(Name, address, email address, and other information)*

§ 8.4 Neither the Owner's nor the Contractor's representative shall be changed without ten days' prior notice to the other party.

**§ 8.5 Insurance and Bonds**

§ 8.5.1 The Owner and the Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.5.2 The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document A101™–2017 Exhibit A, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.6 Notice in electronic format, pursuant to Article 1 of AIA Document A201–2017, may be given in accordance with AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, if completed, or as otherwise set forth below:

*(If other than in accordance with AIA Document E203–2013, insert requirements for delivering notice in electronic format such as name, title, and email address of the recipient and whether and how the system will be required to generate a read receipt for the transmission.)*

§ 8.7 Other provisions:

**ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

- .1 AIA Document A101™–2017, Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor
- .2 AIA Document A101™–2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds
- .3 AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
- .4 AIA Document E203™–2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, dated as indicated below:  
*(Insert the date of the E203-2013 incorporated into this Agreement.)*

.5 Drawings

| Number | Title | Date |
|--------|-------|------|
|--------|-------|------|

.6 Specifications

| Section | Title | Date | Pages |
|---------|-------|------|-------|
|---------|-------|------|-------|

.7 Addenda, if any:

| Number | Date | Pages |
|--------|------|-------|
|--------|------|-------|

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or proposal requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

.8 Other Exhibits:

*(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)*

Init.

/

[ ] AIA Document E204™-2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:  
*(Insert the date of the E204-2017 incorporated into this Agreement.)*

[ ] The Sustainability Plan:

| Title | Date | Pages |
|-------|------|-------|
|-------|------|-------|

[ ] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract:

| Document | Title | Date | Pages |
|----------|-------|------|-------|
|----------|-------|------|-------|

.9 Other documents, if any, listed below:  
*(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Contract Documents. AIA Document A201™-2017 provides that the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, the Contractor's bid or proposal, portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements, and other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, are not part of the Contract Documents unless enumerated in this Agreement. Any such documents should be listed here only if intended to be part of the Contract Documents.)*

This Agreement entered into as of the day and year first written above.

\_\_\_\_\_  
**OWNER** *(Signature)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Printed name and title)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
**CONTRACTOR** *(Signature)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Printed name and title)*



# AIA® Document A101® – 2017 Exhibit A

## Insurance and Bonds

This Insurance and Bonds Exhibit is part of the Agreement, between the Owner and the Contractor, dated the \_\_\_ day of \_\_\_ in the year \_\_\_  
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

for the following **PROJECT**:  
(Name and location or address)

**THE OWNER:**  
(Name, legal status and address)

**THE CONTRACTOR:**  
(Name, legal status and address)

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- A.1 GENERAL
- A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE
- A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS
- A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

#### ARTICLE A.1 GENERAL

The Owner and Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance, and provide bonds, as set forth in this Exhibit. As used in this Exhibit, the term General Conditions refers to AIA Document A201™–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

#### ARTICLE A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE

##### § A.2.1 General

Prior to commencement of the Work, the Owner shall secure the insurance, and provide evidence of the coverage, required under this Article A.2 and, upon the Contractor's request, provide a copy of the property insurance policy or policies required by Section A.2.3. The copy of the policy or policies provided shall contain all applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions, and endorsements.

##### § A.2.2 Liability Insurance

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual general liability insurance.

##### § A.2.3 Required Property Insurance

§ A.2.3.1 The Owner shall provide insurance on the site as provided through State Risk Management." add the following: The deductible shall be \$5,000.00 per claim. Contractor

#### ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed. A vertical line in the left margin of this document indicates where the author has added necessary information and where the author has added to or deleted from the original AIA text.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Document A201®–2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. Article 11 of A201®–2017 contains additional insurance provisions.

Init.

shall pay the deductible.

Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Document, the property insurance provided by the Owner will cover materials and portions of the work stored on the project site, but not yet installed in the building or structure. The Contractor shall be responsible to provide property insurance for all risks of physical loss including theft or portions of the work stored off the project site or in transit, regardless of Owners title as outlined in Paragraph 9.3.2. In the event Contractor fails to maintain the required insurance for materials stored off-site and in transit, he shall bear financial responsibility for the full replacement cost of any loss.

**§ A.2.3.1.1 Causes of Loss.** N/A

**§ A.2.3.1.2 Specific Required Coverages.** N/A

**§ A.2.3.1.3** Unless the parties agree otherwise, upon Substantial Completion, the Owner shall continue the insurance required by Section A.2.3.1 or, if necessary, replace the insurance policy required under Section A.2.3.1 with property insurance written for the total value of the Project that shall remain in effect until expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions.

**§ A.2.3.1.4 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions.** N/A

**§ A.2.3.1.5** The insurance required by Section A.2.3 is not intended to cover machinery, tools or equipment owned or rented by the Contractor that are utilized in the performance of the Work but not incorporated into the permanent improvements. The Contractor shall, at the Contractor's own expense, provide insurance coverage for owned or rented machinery, tools or equipment, which shall be subject to the provisions of Section 11.3.

**§ A.2.3.2 Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion.** The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.2.3.1 have consented in writing to the continuance of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

**§ A.2.3.3 Insurance for Existing Structures**

If the Work involves remodeling an existing structure or constructing an addition to an existing structure, the Owner shall purchase and maintain, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, "all-risks" property insurance, on a replacement cost basis, protecting the existing structure against direct physical loss or damage from the causes of loss identified in Section A.2.3.1, notwithstanding the undertaking of the Work. The Owner shall be responsible for all co-insurance penalties.

**§ A.2.4 Optional Extended Property Insurance.** N/A

**§ A.2.5 Other Optional Insurance.** N/A

## **ARTICLE A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS**

**§ A.3.1 General**

**§ A.3.1.1 Certificates of Insurance.** The Contractor shall provide certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner evidencing compliance with the requirements in this Article A.3 at the following times: (1) prior to commencement of the Work; (2) upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance; and (3) upon the Owner's written request. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of commercial liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the periods required by Section A.3.2.1 and Section A.3.3.1. The certificates will show the Owner as an additional insured on the Contractor's Commercial General Liability and excess or umbrella liability policy or policies.

**§ A.3.1.2 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions.** The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any deductible or self-insured retentions applicable to any insurance required to be provided by the Contractor.

**§ A.3.1.3 Additional Insured Obligations.** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall cause the commercial general liability coverage to include (1) the Owner, the Architect, and the Architect's consultants as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions for which loss occurs during completed operations. The additional insured coverage shall be primary and non-contributory to any of the Owner's general liability insurance policies and shall apply to both ongoing and completed operations. To the extent commercially available, the additional insured coverage shall be no less than that provided by Insurance Services Office, Inc. (ISO) forms CG 20 10 07 04, CG 20 37 07 04, and, with respect to the Architect and the Architect's consultants, CG 20 32 07 04.

### **§ A.3.2 Contractor's Required Insurance Coverage**

**§ A.3.2.1** The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below:

*(If the Contractor is required to maintain insurance for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)*

Products and Completed Operations insurance shall be maintained for a minimum period of at least One (1) year after the expiration of the period for correction of the Work.

### **§ A.3.2.2 Commercial General Liability**

**§ A.3.2.2.1** Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project written on an occurrence form with policy limits of not less than One Million Dollars and Zero Cents (\$ 1,000,000.00 ) each occurrence, Two Million Dollars and Zero Cents (\$ 2,000,000.00 ) general aggregate, and Two Million Dollars and Zero Cents (\$2,000,000.00 ) aggregate for products-completed operations hazard, providing coverage for claims including

- .1 damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, including occupational sickness or disease, and death of any person;
- .2 personal injury and advertising injury;
- .3 damages because of physical damage to or destruction of tangible property, including the loss of use of such property;
- .4 bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations; and
- .5 the Contractor's indemnity obligations under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions.

**§ A.3.2.2.2** The Contractor's Commercial General Liability policy under this Section A.3.2.2 shall not contain an exclusion or restriction of coverage for the following:

- .1 Claims by one insured against another insured, if the exclusion or restriction is based solely on the fact that the claimant is an insured, and there would otherwise be coverage for the claim.
- .2 Claims for property damage to the Contractor's Work arising out of the products-completed operations hazard where the damaged Work or the Work out of which the damage arises was performed by a Subcontractor.
- .3 Claims for bodily injury other than to employees of the insured.
- .4 Claims for indemnity under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions arising out of injury to employees of the insured.
- .5 Claims or loss excluded under a prior work endorsement or other similar exclusionary language.
- .6 Claims or loss due to physical damage under a prior injury endorsement or similar exclusionary language.
- .7 Claims related to roofing, if the Work involves roofing.
- .8 Claims related to exterior insulation finish systems (EIFS), synthetic stucco or similar exterior coatings or surfaces, if the Work involves such coatings or surfaces.
- .9 Claims related to earth subsidence or movement, where the Work involves such hazards.
- .10 Claims related to explosion, collapse and underground hazards, where the Work involves such hazards.

§ A.3.2.2.3 The policy shall be endorsed to have the General Aggregate apply to this Project only.

§ A.3.2.3 Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, and non-owned vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than One Million Dollars and Zero Cents (\$ 1,000,000.00) per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage.

§ A.3.2.4 Umbrella or Excess Liability Coverage: Five Million Dollars and Zero Cents (\$5,000,000.00).

§ A.3.2.5 Workers' Compensation at statutory limits.

§ A.3.2.6 If this insurance is written on a Comprehensive General Liability policy form, the certificate shall be ACORD form 25-S completed and supplemented in accordance with AIA Document G715-1991, Instruction Sheet and Supplemental Attachment for ACORD Certificate of Insurance 25-S.

Specifically set forth evidence of all coverage required by Paragraphs A.3.2.2. Furnish to the Owner copies of any endorsements that are subsequently issued amending coverage or limits.

### § A.3.3 Contractor's Other Insurance Coverage

§ A.3.3.1 Insurance selected and described in this Section A.3.3 shall be purchased from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below:

*(If the Contractor is required to maintain any of the types of insurance selected below for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)*

### § A.3.4 Performance Bond and Payment Bond

The Contractor shall provide surety bonds, from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located, as follows:

*(Specify type and penal sum of bonds.)*

| Type             | Penal Sum (\$0.00)            |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| Payment Bond     | Equal to 100% of Contract Sum |
| Performance Bond | Equal to 100% of Contract Sum |

Payment and Performance Bonds shall be AIA Document A312™, Payment Bond and Performance Bond, or contain provisions identical to AIA Document A312™, current as of the date of this Agreement.

## ARTICLE A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Special terms and conditions that modify this Insurance and Bonds Exhibit, if any, are as follows:

Coverage on a claims-made basis is not acceptable.



DOCUMENT 00 4113 - BID FORM - STIPULATED SUM (SINGLE-PRIME CONTRACT)

1.1 BID INFORMATION

- A. Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Project Name: CORNER CANYON HIGH SCHOOL FIELDHOUSE & SOCCER FIELDS
- C. Project Location: 12943 South 700 East, Draper, Utah 84020
- D. Owner: Canyons School District
- E. Architect: CORE Architecture
- F. Architect Project Number: 24-013

1.2 CERTIFICATIONS AND BASE BID

- A. Single-Prime (All Trades) Contract: The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, and all subsequent Addenda, as prepared by CORE Architecture and Architect's consultants, having visited the site, and being familiar with all conditions and requirements of the Work, hereby agrees to furnish all material, labor, equipment and services, including all scheduled allowances, necessary to complete the construction of the above-named project, according to the requirements of the Procurement and Contracting Documents, for the stipulated sum.

1.3 TIME OF COMPLETION: To be determined.

1.4 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ADDENDA

- A. The undersigned Bidder acknowledges receipt of and use of the following Addenda in the preparation of this Bid:
  - 1. Addendum No. 1, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2. Addendum No. 2, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3. Addendum No. 3, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4. Addendum No. 4, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

TOTAL BASE BID

\$ \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_)  
(In case of conflict, written amount shall govern)

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE

- A. The undersigned further states that it is a duly licensed contractor, for the type of work proposed, in Salt Lake County, Utah, and that all fees, permits, etc., pursuant to submitting this proposal have been paid in full.

1.6 SUBMISSION OF BID

- A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, <Insert year>.
- B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of bidding firm or corporation).

- C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).
- F. Witnessed By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- G. Attest: \_\_\_\_\_ (Handwritten signature).
- H. By: \_\_\_\_\_ (Type or print name).
- I. Title: \_\_\_\_\_ (Corporate Secretary or Assistant Secretary).
- J. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.
- K. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.
- L. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.
- M. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.
- N. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_ (Affix Corporate Seal Here).

| Schedule of Values |  |                       |                         |       |
|--------------------|--|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------|
| Division           | Title                                      | Value                 | Proposed Sub-Contractor | Notes |
| 01                 | General Requirements                       |                       |                         |       |
| 02                 | Demolition                                 |                       |                         |       |
| 03                 | Concrete                                   |                       |                         |       |
| 04                 | Masonry                                    |                       |                         |       |
| 05                 | Metals                                     |                       |                         |       |
| 06                 | Wood/Plastics/Composites                   |                       |                         |       |
| 07                 | Thermal and Moisture Protection            |                       |                         |       |
| 08                 | Openings                                   |                       |                         |       |
| 09                 | Finishes                                   |                       |                         |       |
| 10                 | Specialties                                |                       |                         |       |
| 11                 | Equipment                                  |                       |                         |       |
| 12                 | Furnishings                                |                       |                         |       |
| 13                 | Special Construction                       |                       |                         |       |
| 14                 | Conveying Equipment                        |                       |                         |       |
| 21                 | Fire Suppression                           |                       |                         |       |
| 22                 | Plumbing                                   |                       |                         |       |
| 23                 | Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning |                       |                         |       |
| 25                 | Integrated Automation                      |                       |                         |       |
| 26                 | Electrical                                 |                       |                         |       |
| 27                 | Communications                             |                       |                         |       |
| 28                 | Electronic Safety and Security             |                       |                         |       |
| 31                 | Earthwork                                  |                       |                         |       |
| 32                 | Exterior Improvements                      |                       |                         |       |
| 33                 | Utilities                                  |                       |                         |       |
|                    | Division Subtotal                          |                       |                         |       |
|                    | Permitting Fees                            | Reimbursable expense. |                         |       |
|                    | Overhead and Profit                        |                       |                         |       |
|                    | Total Proposed Cost                        |                       |                         |       |

END OF DOCUMENT 004113

**DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 01 0010 | DEFERRED SUBMITTALS   |
| 01 1000 | SUMMARY   |
| 01 2300 | ALTERNATES  |
| 01 2500 | SUBSTITUTION REQUEST  |
|         | CSI Form 1.5C - Substitution Request During the Bidding Stage |
|         | CDI Form 13.1A – Substitution request After the Bidding Stage |
| 01 2600 | CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES                              |
| 01 2900 | PAYMENT PROCEDURES  |
| 01 3100 | PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION                           |
| 01 3200 | CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION                           |
| 01 3233 | PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION                                    |
| 01 3300 | SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES  |
| 01 4000 | QUALITY REQUIREMENTS  |
| 01 4200 | REFERENCES  |
| 01 5000 | TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS                             |
| 01 6000 | PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS  |
| 01 7300 | EXECUTION   |
| 01 7329 | CUTTING AND PATCHING  |
| 01 7419 | CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL                    |
| 01 7700 | CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES   |
| 01 7823 | OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA                                |
| 01 7839 | PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS                                      |
| 01 7900 | DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING                                    |

SECTION 01 0010 – DEFERRED SUBMITTALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for deferred submittals and delegated design services.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Deferred Submittal: Those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the permit application and that are to be submitted within a specified period.
- B. Delegated Design: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the Deferred Submittal into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each Deferred Submittal, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated.
- B. Documents for Deferred Submittal items shall be submitted to the registered design professional in charge who shall review them, approve them, and then forward them to the building official.
- C. Execute Deferred Submittals under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- D. The deferred submittal items shall not be installed until the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and approved by the building official.
- E. Schedule: A Schedule of Deferred Submittals and Delegated Design is included at the end of this Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF DEFERRED SUBMITTALS/DELEGATED DESIGN

- A. Deferred Submittal No. 1: Automatic Fire Sprinkler System.
- B. Deferred Submittal No. 2: Fire Alarm.
- C. Deferred Submittal No. 3: Metal Building System

END OF SECTION 01 0010

## SECTION 01 1000 - SUMMARY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Project information.
- 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
- 3. Owner-furnished/Contractor-installed (OFCl) products.
- 4. Owner-furnished/Owner-installed (OFOl) products.
- 5. Contractor's use of site and premises.
- 6. Work restrictions.
- 7. Specification and Drawing conventions.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.
- 2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for coordination of Owner-installed products.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Work Package: A group of specifications, drawings, and schedules prepared by the design team to describe a portion of the Project Work for pricing, permitting, and construction.

#### 1.4 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Corners Canyon High School – Fieldhouse & Soccer Fields.
  - 1. Project Location: 12943 South 700 East, Draper, Utah 84020.
- B. Owner: Canyons School District, 9361 South 300 East, sandy, Utah 84070.
- C. Architect: CORE Architecture, 233 South Pleasant Grove Blvd., Pleasant Grove, UT 84062.
- D. Web-Based Project Software: Project software will be used for purposes of managing communication and documents during the construction stage.
  - 1. See Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination." for requirements for using web-based Project software.

#### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE – MANPOWER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contractors shall provide adequate personnel and extend workdays and work weeks to comply with the schedule requirements of this project.

1.6 OWNER-FURNISHED/CONTRACTOR-INSTALLED (OFCI) PRODUCTS

- A. Owner's Responsibilities: Owner will furnish products indicated and perform the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Provide to Contractor Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples.
  - 2. Provide for delivery of Owner-furnished products to Project site.
  - 3. Upon delivery, inspect, with Contractor present, delivered items.
    - a. If Owner-furnished products are damaged, defective, or missing, arrange for replacement.
  - 4. Obtain manufacturer's inspections, service, and warranties.
  - 5. Inform Contractor of earliest available delivery date for Owner-furnished products.
- B. Contractor's Responsibilities: The Work includes the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Designate delivery dates of Owner-furnished products in Contractor's construction schedule, utilizing Owner-furnished earliest available delivery dates.
  - 2. Review Owner-reviewed Product Data, Shop Drawings, and Samples, noting discrepancies and other issues in providing for Owner-furnished products in the Work.
  - 3. Receive, unload, handle, store, protect, and install Owner-furnished products.
  - 4. Make building services connections for Owner-furnished products.
  - 5. Protect Owner-furnished products from damage during storage, handling, and installation and prior to Substantial Completion.
  - 6. Repair or replace Owner-furnished products damaged following receipt.
- C. Owner-Furnished/Contractor-Installed (OFCI) Products:
  - 1. As indicated in the Drawings and other specification sections.

1.7 OWNER-FURNISHED/OWNER-INSTALLED (OFOI) PRODUCTS

- A. The Owner will furnish and install products indicated.
- B. Owner-Furnished/Owner-Installed (OFOI) Products:
  - 1. Artificial Turf – indoor and outdoor.
  - 2. As indicated in the Drawings.

1.8 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF SITE AND PREMISES

- A. Unrestricted Use of Site: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

1.9 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets, work on public streets, rights of way, and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work to between 7:00 a.m. to 7:00 p.m., Monday through Friday, unless otherwise indicated. Work hours may be modified to meet Project requirements if approved by Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Smoking and Controlled Substance Restrictions: Use of tobacco products, alcoholic beverages, vaping, and other controlled substances on Project site is not permitted.

#### 1.10 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2. Text Color: Text used in the Specifications, including units of measure, manufacturer and product names, and other text may appear in multiple colors or underlined as part of a hyperlink; no emphasis is implied by text with these characteristics.
  - 3. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 00 Contracting Requirements: General provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, apply to all Sections of the Specifications.
- C. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- D. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations scheduled on Drawings and published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard.
  - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 1000



## SECTION 01 2300 - ALTERNATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the Bidding Requirements that may be added to or deducted from the Base Bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.

- 1. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate Alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the Alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each Alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of Alternate.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each Alternate. Indicate if Alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to Alternates.
- C. Execute accepted Alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- D. Schedule: A Schedule of Alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each Alternate.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 1 – Second Level improvements
  - 1. Walls and wall finishes.
  - 2. Doors and Frames.
  - 3. Ceilings.

4. Floor Finishes.
5. Cabinets and Counters.
6. Display Cases.
7. Projection Screens
8. Restroom Finishes and accessories.
9. Stairs and Railings.
10. Hydraulic Elevator.
11. Mechanical work.
12. Plumbing work.
13. Electrical work.

END OF SECTION 01 2300

## SECTION 01 2500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 6000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit documentation identifying product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.

- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

#### 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

#### 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

- 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.

- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 2500

## SECTION 01 2600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.
  - 2. Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for forms for contract modifications provided as part of web-based Project management software.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710.

#### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 7 days after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 2600

## SECTION 01 2900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 2600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

#### 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Owner's name.
    - c. Owner's Project number.
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Architect's Project number.
    - f. Contractor's name and address.
    - g. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  - 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form, with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
    - a. Related Specification Section or division.



- b. Description of the Work.
  - c. Name of subcontractor.
  - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
  - e. Name of supplier.
  - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
  - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent. Round dollar amounts to whole dollars, with total equal to Contract Sum.
    - 1) Labor.
    - 2) Materials.
    - 3) Equipment.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
  5. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
    - b. Include evidence of insurance or bonded warehousing.
  6. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
  7. Overhead Costs, Proportional Distribution: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
  8. Temporary Facilities: Show cost of temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place as separate line items.
  9. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order and Construction Change Directive.

#### 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments, as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Owner/Contractor Agreement. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
  1. Other Application for Payment forms proposed by the Contractor may be acceptable to Architect and Owner. Submit forms for approval with initial submittal of schedule of values.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.

1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).

4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  5. Schedule of unit prices.
  6. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  7. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  8. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  9. Copies of building permits.
  10. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  11. Initial progress report.
  12. Report of preconstruction conference.
  13. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  14. Performance and payment bonds.
  15. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
    - a. Complete administrative actions, submittals, and Work preceding this application, as described in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Certification of completion of final punch list items.
  3. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  4. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  5. AIA Document G706.
  6. AIA Document G706A.
  7. AIA Document G707.
  8. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  9. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  10. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.
  11. Proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations are paid.
  12. Waivers and releases.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 2900

## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. RFIs.
  - 4. Digital project management procedures.
  - 5. Web-based Project management software package.
  - 6. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 5 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses, cellular telephone

numbers, and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in Project meeting room, in temporary field office, in web-based Project software directory, and in prominent location in built facility. Keep list current at all times.

#### 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results, where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
  1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.

- b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
  - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms, showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switchboard, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
  8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.

9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that, in general, the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.

C. Coordination Drawing Process: Prepare coordination drawings in the following manner:

1. Schedule submittal and review of Fire Sprinkler, Plumbing, HVAC, and Electrical Shop Drawings to make required changes prior to preparation of coordination drawings.
2. Commence routing of coordination drawing files with HVAC Installer, who will provide drawing plan files denoting approved ductwork. HVAC Installer will locate ductwork and piping on a single layer, using orange color. Forward drawings to Plumbing Installer.
3. Plumbing Installer will locate plumbing and equipment on a single layer, using blue color.
4. Fire Sprinkler Installer will locate piping and equipment, using red color. Fire Sprinkler Installer shall forward drawing files to Electrical Installer.
5. Electrical Installer will indicate service and feeder conduit runs and equipment in green color. Electrical Installer shall forward drawing files to Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer.
6. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer will indicate cable trays and cabling runs and equipment in purple color. Communications and Electronic Safety and Security Installer shall forward completed drawing files to Contractor.
7. Contractor shall perform the final coordination review. As each coordination drawing is completed, Contractor will meet with Architect to review and resolve conflicts on the coordination drawings.

D. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:

1. File Preparation Format: DWG, Version 2018, AutoCAD, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.
3. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate coordination drawing files into BIM established for Project.
  - a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.
4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
  - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
  - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in Revit 2024.
  - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in this Project Manual.

1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Owner name.
  3. Owner's Project number.
  4. Name of Architect.
  5. Architect's Project number.
  6. Date.
  7. Name of Contractor.
  8. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  9. RFI subject.
  10. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  13. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  14. Contractor's signature.
  15. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."



- a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 5 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number, including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
  8. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  9. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
- 1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES
- A. Use of Architect's Digital Data Files: Digital data files of Architect's BIM model will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use during construction.
1. Digital data files may be used by Contractor in preparing coordination drawings, Shop Drawings, and Project Record Drawings.
  2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Contract Drawings.
  3. Digital Drawing Software Program: Contract Drawings are available in Revit 2024.
  4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in Project Manual.
    - a. Subcontractors and other parties granted access by Contractor to Architect's digital data files shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in this Project Manual.
  1. BIM models provided by the Architect's Consultants will require execution of separate data licensing agreements, provided by each Consultant from which the model has been requested.
- B. Project Management Software: Use Bluebeam Studio to host and manage Project communication and documentation. Coordinate with Architect on the setup, procedures and management of the system. Or provide web-based project management software as indicated below.
- C. Web-Based Project Management Software Package: Provide, administer, and use web-based Project management software package for purposes of hosting and managing Project communication and documentation until Final Completion
1. Web-based Project management software includes, at a minimum, the following features:

- a. Compilation of Project data, including Contractor, subcontractors, Architect, Architect's consultants, Owner, and other entities involved in Project. Include names of individuals and contact information.
  - b. Access control for each entity for each workflow process, to determine entity's digital rights to create, modify, view, and print documents.
  - c. Document workflow planning, allowing customization of workflow between project entities.
  - d. Creation, logging, tracking, and notification for Project communications required in other Specification Sections, including, but not limited to, RFIs, submittals, Minor Changes in the Work, Construction Change Directives, and Change Orders.
  - e. Track status of each Project communication in real time, and log time and date when responses are provided.
  - f. Procedures for handling PDFs or similar file formats, allowing markups by each entity. Provide security features to lock markups against changes once submitted.
  - g. Processing and tracking of payment applications.
  - h. Processing and tracking of contract modifications.
  - i. Creating and distributing meeting minutes.
  - j. Document management for Drawings, Specifications, and coordination drawings, including revision control.
  - k. Management of construction progress photographs.
  - l. Mobile device compatibility, including smartphones and tablets.
2. Provide up to seven Project management software user licenses for use of Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants. Provide four hours of software training at Architect's office for web-based Project software users.
  3. At completion of Project, provide digital archive in format that is readable by common desktop software applications in format acceptable to Architect. Provide data in locked format to prevent further changes.
  4. Provide one of the following Project management software packages under their current published licensing agreements:
    - a. Autodesk; Constructware.
    - b. Corecon Technologies, Inc.
    - c. Meridian Systems; Prolog.
    - d. Newforma, Inc.
    - e. Procore Technologies, Inc.
- D. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file, incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  3. Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.
- 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS
- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.

3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
    - b. Tentative construction schedule.
    - c. Phasing.
    - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
    - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - f. Lines of communications.
    - g. Use of web-based Project software.
    - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - i. Procedures for RFIs.
    - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    - m. Submittal procedures.
    - n. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - o. Use of the premises.
    - p. Work restrictions.
    - q. Working hours.
    - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - t. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    - u. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - v. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - w. Parking availability.
    - x. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - y. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - z. First aid.
    - aa. Security.
    - bb. Progress cleaning.
  3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other Sections and when required for coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

- a. Contract Documents.
  - b. Options.
  - c. Related RFIs.
  - d. Related Change Orders.
  - e. Purchases.
  - f. Deliveries.
  - g. Submittals.
  - h. Review of mockups.
  - i. Possible conflicts.
  - j. Compatibility requirements.
  - k. Time schedules.
  - l. Weather limitations.
  - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
  - n. Warranty requirements.
  - o. Compatibility of materials.
  - p. Acceptability of substrates.
  - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
  - r. Space and access limitations.
  - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
  - u. Installation procedures.
  - v. Coordination with other work.
  - w. Required performance results.
  - x. Protection of adjacent work.
  - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 60 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
    - d. Submittal of written warranties.
    - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - f. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - g. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - h. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.

- i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
        - j. Submittal procedures.
        - k. Coordination of separate contracts.
        - l. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
        - m. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
        - n. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
      - 4) Status of submittals.
      - 5) Deliveries.
      - 6) Off-site fabrication.
      - 7) Access.
      - 8) Site use.
      - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 10) Progress cleaning.
      - 11) Quality and work standards.
      - 12) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 13) Field observations.
      - 14) Status of RFIs.
      - 15) Status of Proposal Requests.
      - 16) Pending changes.
      - 17) Status of Change Orders.
      - 18) Pending claims and disputes.
      - 19) Documentation of information for payment requests.
  4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.

- a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
    - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting, where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
      - 4) Status of submittals.
      - 5) Deliveries.
      - 6) Off-site fabrication.
      - 7) Access.
      - 8) Site use.
      - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 10) Work hours.
      - 11) Hazards and risks.
      - 12) Progress cleaning.
      - 13) Quality and work standards.
      - 14) Status of RFIs.
      - 15) Proposal Requests.
      - 16) Change Orders.
      - 17) Pending changes.
  3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 3100

## SECTION 01 3200 – CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 2. Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 3. Daily construction reports.
  - 4. Material location reports.
  - 5. Site condition reports.
  - 6. Unusual event reports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for schedule of tests and inspections.
  - 2. Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for schedule of values and requirements for use of cost-loaded schedule for Applications for Payment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for completing an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum.
- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine the critical path of Project and when activities can be performed.
- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.



1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for completing an activity as scheduled.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:

1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
2. PDF file.

B. Startup construction schedule.

1. Submittal of cost-loaded startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.

D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.

1. Submit a working digital copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals.

E. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.

1. Activity Report: List of activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for each activity, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then by early start date, or actual start date if known.
3. Total Float Report: List of activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.

F. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.

G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

H. Material Location Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

I. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

J. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

- K. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's Construction Schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
  - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
  - 3. Discuss constraints, including phasing work stages, area separations, interim milestones and partial Owner occupancy.
  - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
  - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
  - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
  - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
  - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
  - 9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures.
  - 10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
  - 11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities, and schedule them in proper sequence.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work or the Notice to Proceed to date of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.

2. Temporary Facilities: Indicate start and completion dates for the following as applicable:
    - a. Securing of approvals and permits required for performance of the Work.
    - b. Temporary facilities.
    - c. Construction of mock-ups, prototypes and samples.
    - d. Owner interfaces and furnishing of items.
    - e. Interfaces with Separate Contracts.
    - f. Regulatory agency approvals.
    - g. Punch list.
  3. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for long lead-time items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  4. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  5. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days, or as required by Electrical Consultant, whichever is longer, for startup and testing.
  6. Commissioning Time: Include no fewer than 15 days, or as required by Division 23 sections, whichever is longer, for commissioning.
  7. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  8. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and Final Completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include earliest possible delivery date.
  2. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Seasonal variations.
    - b. Environmental control.
  3. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Subcontract awards.
    - b. Submittals.
    - c. Purchases.
    - d. Mockups.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Sample testing.
    - g. Deliveries.
    - h. Installation.
    - i. Tests and inspections.
    - j. Adjusting.
    - k. Curing.
    - l. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion.

- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  - 1. Unresolved issues.
  - 2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
  - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
  
- G. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
  - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Final Completion percentage for each activity.
  
- H. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
  
- I. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

#### 1.8 CPM SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
  
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
  
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
  - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule, so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
    - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates.

2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
  3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
  4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
    - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    - c. Purchase of materials.
    - d. Delivery.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Utility interruptions.
    - g. Installation.
    - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    - i. Testing and inspection.
    - j. Punch list and Final Completion.
    - k. Activities occurring following Final Completion.
  2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
  3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
  4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
    - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall Project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
  2. Description of activity.
  3. Main events of activity.
  4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
  5. Early and late start dates.
  6. Early and late finish dates.
  7. Activity duration in workdays.
  8. Total float or slack time.
  9. Average size of workforce.

10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Identification of activities that have changed.
  2. Changes in early and late start dates.
  3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
  4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
  5. Changes in the critical path.
  6. Changes in total float or slack time.
  7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
  4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
    - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
    - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
- 1.9 REPORTS
- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  4. Equipment at Project site.
  5. Material deliveries.
  6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  7. Testing and inspection.
  8. Accidents.
  9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  10. Unusual events.
  11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  13. Emergency procedures.
  14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  15. Change Orders received and implemented.
  16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
  17. Services connected and disconnected.
  18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  19. Partial completions and occupancies.
  20. Substantial Completions authorized.

- B. **Material Location Reports:** At weekly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. **Site Condition Reports:** Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. **Unusual Event Reports:** When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 3200

## SECTION 01 3233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Concealed Work photographs.
  - 3. Periodic construction photographs.
  - 4. Final Completion construction photographs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.
  - 2. Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
  - 3. Division 31 "Site Clearing" for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Submit photos by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
  - 2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag or in web-based Project management software site:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date photograph was taken.
    - f. Description of location, vantage point, and direction.
    - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

#### 1.4 FORMATS AND MEDIA

- A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels, and with vibration-reduction technology. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.



- B. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
- C. Metadata: Record accurate date and time and GPS location data from camera.
- D. File Names: Name media files with Project area and sequential numbering suffix.

#### 1.5 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.
- B. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.
  - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
  - 1. Flag excavation areas and construction limits before taking construction photographs.
  - 2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  - 3. Take 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property, to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  - 4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- D. Concealed Work Photographs: Before proceeding with installing work that will conceal other work, take photographs sufficient in number, with annotated descriptions, to record nature and location of concealed Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Underground utilities.
  - 2. Underslab services.
  - 3. Piping.
  - 4. Electrical conduit.
  - 5. Waterproofing and weather-resistant barriers.
- E. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs weekly. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- F. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 50 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.
- G. Additional Photographs: Architect may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum.
  - 1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
  - 2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
  - 3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Special events planned at Project site.
- b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
- c. Photographs shall be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
- d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
- e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
- f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 3233

## SECTION 01 3300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Submittal schedule requirements.
- 2. Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
- 2. Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
- 3. Section 01 3200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
- 4. Section 01 3233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting preconstruction photographs, periodic construction photographs, and Final Completion construction photographs.
- 5. Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
- 6. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
- 7. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
- 8. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
- 9. Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required

for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Initial Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal Schedule: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - a. Submit revised submittal schedule as required to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
  - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
  - b. Specification Section number and title.
  - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
  - d. Name of subcontractor.
  - e. Description of the Work covered.
  - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
  - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
  - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
  - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
  - j. Activity or event number.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:

1. Project name.
2. Date.
3. Name of Architect.
4. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
5. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
6. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
7. Category and type of submittal.
8. Submittal purpose and description.
9. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
10. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
11. Indication of full or partial submittal.
12. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
13. Other necessary identification.
14. Remarks.
15. Signature of transmitter.

B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include

relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.

- D. Electronic Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.

- 1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.

- a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.

- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.

- 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  - 3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  - 4. Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections, so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

- a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

- 1. Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  - 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
  - 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 21 days for initial review of each submittal.

- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.

- 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block, and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## 1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  - 5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrently with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data unless submittal based on Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
  - 1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  - 2. BIM Incorporation: Develop and incorporate Shop Drawing files into BIM established for Project.

- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of type, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components, such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics and identification information for record.
  4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units, showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
      - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
      - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
1. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  2. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  3. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  4. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  5. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead, certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  6. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of AWS B2.1/B2.1M on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- H. Test and Research Reports:
1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for substrate preparation and primers required.
  2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.



5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

#### 1.8 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file and two paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.
- C. BIM Incorporation: Incorporate delegated-design drawing and data files into BIM established for Project.
  1. Prepare delegated-design drawings in the following format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.

#### 1.9 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.
  1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

1.10 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear the Contractor's approval stamp, and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return.
  - 1. PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action, as follows:
    - a. Final Unrestricted Release: Where the submittal is marked "No Exception Taken," the Work covered by the submittal may proceed, provided it complies with the Contract Documents. Final acceptance will depend on that compliance.
    - b. Final-but-Restricted Release: Where the submittal is marked "Make Corrections Noted," the Work covered by the submittal may proceed, provided it complies both with Architect's notations and corrections on the submittal and the Contract Documents. Final acceptance will depend on that compliance.
    - c. Resubmit: Where the submittal is marked "Exception Taken - Resubmit" do not proceed with the Work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity for the product submitted. Revise or prepare a new submittal according to Architect's notations and corrections.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- E. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- F. Architect will return without review submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- G. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 3300

## SECTION 01 4000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced," unless otherwise further described, means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, subcontractor, or sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a Work result does not require that certain construction activities specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed either as freestanding temporary built elements or as part of permanent construction. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

1. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as as-indicated in-place portions of permanent construction, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies, with cutaways enabling inspection of concealed portions of the Work.
    - a. Include each system, assembly, component, and part of the exterior wall [**and roof**] to be constructed for the Project. Colors of components shall be those selected by the Architect for use in the Project.
  2. Product Mockups: Mockups that may include multiple products, materials, or systems specified in a single Section.
  3. In-Place Mockups: Mockups constructed on-site in their actual final location as part of permanent construction.
- E. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria. Unless otherwise indicated, copies of reports of tests or inspections performed for other than the Project do not meet this definition.
- F. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- G. Source Quality-Control Tests and Inspections: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. The term "testing laboratory" shall have the same meaning as the term "testing agency."
- I. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work, to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- J. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work, to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.
- 1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES
- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Statement: Submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements:** If compliance with two or more standards or requirements is specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, inform the Architect regarding the conflict and obtain clarification prior to proceeding with the Work. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for clarification before proceeding.
- B. **Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels:** The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

## 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. **Mockup Shop Drawings:** For integrated exterior mockups.
  - 1. Include plans, sections, elevations, and details, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

## 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. **Contractor's Quality-Control Plan:** For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. **Qualification Data:** For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. **Contractor's Statement of Responsibility:** When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2. Primary wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. **Testing Agency Qualifications:** For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. **Schedule of Tests and Inspections:** Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities and to coordinate Owner's quality-assurance and quality-control activities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
  - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections, including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
  - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring the Work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports, including log of approved and rejected results. Include Work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming Work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.

3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  8. Complete test or inspection data.
  9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample-taking and testing and inspection.
  11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  4. Statement of whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- 1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

- D. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that is similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. **Specialists:** Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged in the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. **Testing and Inspecting Agency Qualifications:** An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented in accordance with ASTM E329, and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. **Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. **Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications:** An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect, demonstrate, repair, and perform service on installations of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. **Preconstruction Testing:** Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following Contractor's responsibilities, including the following:
  - 1. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
  - 2. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 3. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
  - 4. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups, using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
  - 5. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility, using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
  - 6. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  - 7. **Testing Agency Responsibilities:** Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.



- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups of size indicated.
  2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  4. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
  5. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  6. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting corresponding Work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  7. Promptly correct unsatisfactory conditions noted by Architect's preliminary review, to the satisfaction of the Architect, before completion of final mockup.
  8. Approval of mockups by the Architect does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  9. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  10. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup as indicated on Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials. Comply with requirements in "Mockups" Paragraph.
1. Coordinate construction of the mockup to allow observation of air barrier installation, flashings, air barrier integration with fenestration systems, and other portions of the building air/moisture barrier and drainage assemblies, prior to installation of veneer, cladding elements, and other components that will obscure the work.

#### 1.11 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.

- a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections, and state in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Contractor's Associated Requirements and Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.

6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update and submit with each Application for Payment.
1. Schedule Contents: Include tests, inspections, and quality-control services, including Contractor- and Owner-retained services, commissioning activities, and other Project-required services paid for by other entities.
  2. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

#### 1.12 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency or special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures, and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
  4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
  5. Interpreting tests and inspections, and stating in each report whether tested and inspected Work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
  6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected Work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's and authorities' having jurisdiction reference during normal working hours.
  - 1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample-taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 4000

## SECTION 01 4200 - REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

#### 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For standards referenced by applicable building codes, comply with dates of standards as listed in building codes.

- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. DIN - Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; [www.din.de](http://www.din.de).
  - 2. IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
  - 3. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
  - 4. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).
- C. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
  - 2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
  - 3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
  - 4. DOD - Department of Defense; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  - 5. DOE - Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
  - 6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
  - 7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
  - 8. FG - Federal Government Publications; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
  - 9. GSA - General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  - 10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
  - 11. LBL - Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; [www.eetd.lbl.gov](http://www.eetd.lbl.gov).
  - 12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
  - 13. SD - Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
  - 14. TRB - Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
  - 15. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
  - 16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
  - 17. USDOJ - Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
  - 18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
  - 19. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).
- D. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and

regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CFR - Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; [www.govinfo.gov](http://www.govinfo.gov).
2. DOD - Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
5. FS - Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
  - b. Available from General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org](http://www.wbdg.org).
6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).
8. USATBCB - U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 4200

## SECTION 01 5000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. Installation, removal, and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold. Describe delivery, handling,



storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.

1. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and requirements for replacing water-damaged Work.
2. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
3. Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete bases for supporting posts.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less in accordance with ASTM E84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- C. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-Off Mats: Provide mats, minimum 36 by 60 inches.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  1. Furniture required for Project-site documents, including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.

2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- square tack and marker boards.
  3. Drinking water and private toilet.
  4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  2. Heating, Cooling, and Dehumidifying Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
- B. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.

- C. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, safety shower and eyewash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- D. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
- E. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
  - 1. Install electric power service underground unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- G. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one land-based telephone line(s) for each field office.
  - 1. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
    - e. Architect's office.
    - f. Engineers' offices.
    - g. Owner's office.
    - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
- H. Electronic Communication Service: Provide secure WiFi wireless connection to internet with provisions for access by Architect and Owner.

### 3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide construction for temporary field offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible in accordance with ASTM E136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - 2. Utilize designated area within existing building for temporary field offices.
  - 3. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain

temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.

1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas in accordance with Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
  3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
  4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course in accordance with Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving."
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain, including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- D. Storage and Staging: Use designated areas of Project site for storage and staging needs.
- E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- F. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  3. Maintain and touch up signs, so they are legible at all times.
- G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION
- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
  - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
  - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls, and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign, stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Moisture and Mold Protection: Protect stored materials and installed Work in accordance with Moisture and Mold Protection Plan.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
  1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
  1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
  1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within **[48] <Insert time period>** hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 5000

## SECTION 01 6000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for Contractor requirements related to Owner-furnished products.
  - 2. Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 3. Section 01 4200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
  - 4. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Salvaged items or items reused from other projects are not considered new products. Items that are manufactured or fabricated to include recycled content materials are considered new products, unless indicated otherwise.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product by named manufacturer that is demonstrated and approved through the comparable product submittal process described in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. Published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design product establish salient characteristics of products.
  - 1. Evaluation of Comparable Products: In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification. Manufacturer's published attributes and characteristics of basis-of-design



product also establish salient characteristics of products for purposes of evaluating comparable products.

- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications; submit a comparable product request or substitution request, if applicable.
- D. Comparable Product Request Submittal: An action submittal requesting consideration of a comparable product, including the following information:
  - 1. Identification of basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced, including Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 2. Data indicating compliance with the requirements specified in Part 2 "Comparable Products" Article.
- E. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: An action submittal complying with requirements in Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Substitution: Refer to Section 01 2500 "Substitution Procedures" for definition and limitations on substitutions.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
  - 1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  - 2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service- or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.
    - e. Ratings.
  - 3. See individual identification Sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional equipment identification requirements.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of approved comparable products and approved substitutions.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products, using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and that products are undamaged and properly protected.

- C. Storage:

1. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment.
2. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
3. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
4. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation and with adequate protection from wind.
5. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
6. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
7. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
8. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written standard warranty form furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner and issued in the name of the Owner or endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.

- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  - 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included in the Project Manual, prepare a written document, using indicated form properly executed.
  - 3. See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
  - 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  - 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  - 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  - 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
    - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Unless otherwise indicated, evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
  - 1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following."
  - 2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
    - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following."
  - 3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with

- requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered.
- a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following."
4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed or an unnamed product that complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    - b. Provision of an unnamed product is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
  5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered.
    - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following."
  6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed or a product by an unnamed manufacturer that complies with requirements.
    - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following."
    - b. Provision of products of an unnamed manufacturer is not considered a substitution, if the product complies with requirements.
  7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications may additionally indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
    - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require the phrase "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
    1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
  - D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or a similar phrase, select a product that complies with

requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

- E. Sustainable Product Selection: Where Specifications require product to meet sustainable product characteristics, select products complying with indicated requirements. Comply with requirements in Division 01 sustainability requirements Section and individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Select products for which sustainable design documentation submittals are available from manufacturer.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with the following requirements:
  - 1. Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those of the named basis-of-design product. Significant product qualities include attributes, such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  - 5. Samples, if requested.
- B. Architect's Action on Comparable Products Submittal: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation, as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
  - 1. Form of Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
  - 2. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- C. Submittal Requirements, Two-Step Process: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 6000

## SECTION 01 7300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Construction layout.
  - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3. Installation of the Work.
  - 4. Cutting and patching.
  - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 6. Progress cleaning.
  - 7. Starting and adjusting.
  - 8. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 1000 "Summary" for coordination of Owner-furnished products, and limits on use of Project site.
  - 2. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of subsequent work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of subsequent work.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Layout Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Prior to establishing layout of new perimeter and structural column grid(s), review building location requirements. Review benchmark, control point, and layout and dimension requirements. Inform Architect of scheduled meeting. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with Project layout to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Professional surveyor responsible for performing Project surveying and layout.
    - c. Professional surveyor responsible for performing site survey serving as basis for Project design.

2. Review meanings and intent of dimensions, notes, terms, graphic symbols, and other layout information indicated on the Drawings.
3. Review requirements for including layouts on Shop Drawings and other submittals.
4. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.
- C. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor, certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: Refer to Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements."
- C. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
  1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, or when encountering the need for cutting and patching of elements whose structural function is not known, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
  2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
  4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of specified products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
  - 1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with sustainable design requirements.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials. Use materials that are not considered hazardous.
- C. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, gas service piping, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:



1. Description of the Work, including Specification Section number and paragraph, and Drawing sheet number and detail, where applicable.
  2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents, submit a request for information to Architect in accordance with requirements in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks and existing conditions. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. Engage a land surveyor experienced in laying out the Work, using the following accepted surveying practices:
1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
  3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical

work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.

- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
  - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
  - 1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
  - 2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  - 1. Make vertical work plumb, and make horizontal work level.

2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure satisfactory results as judged by Architect. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations, so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy of type expected for Project.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on-site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for Work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions with manufacturer.
1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed Work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect, as judged by Architect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
1. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.
- 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING
- A. General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of Work to be cut.
- C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- D. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- E. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other Work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable, as judged by Architect. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will eliminate evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch, corner to corner of wall and edge to edge of ceiling. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.

4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- F. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where Work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements."

### 3.9 PROTECTION AND REPAIR OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair Work previously completed and subsequently damaged during construction period. Repair to like-new condition.
- C. Protection of Existing Items: Provide protection and ensure that existing items to remain undisturbed by construction are maintained in condition that existed at commencement of the Work.
- D. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 01 7300

## SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Disposing of nonhazardous construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 31 "Site Grading" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 7 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices for products that may be recycled, if any.
- B. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with transportation and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Waste Management Conference(s): Conduct conference(s) at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan.
  - 2. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to disposal facilities.
  - 3. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

#### 1.8 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan according to requirements in this Section. Plan shall consist of waste identification and analysis. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of site-clearing and construction waste generated by the Work.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

##### 3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
  - 1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Training: If recycling is to be utilized for corrugated packaging or other recyclable waste, train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work occurring at Project site.
- C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be recycled.

##### 3.2 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Contractor.
- B. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- C. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.



1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor as often as required to prevent overfilling bins.

### 3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged or recycled, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

END OF SECTION 01 7419

## SECTION 01 7700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:

- 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
- 2. Final completion procedures.
- 3. Warranties.
- 4. Final cleaning.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 01 2900 "Payment Procedures" for requirements for Applications for Payment for Substantial Completion and Final Completion.
- 2. Section 01 3233 "Photographic Documentation" for submitting Final Completion construction photographic documentation.
- 3. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
- 4. Section 01 7839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
- 5. Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. List of Incomplete Items: Contractor-prepared list of items to be completed or corrected, prepared for the Architect's use prior to Architect's inspection, to determine if the Work is substantially complete.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest-control inspection.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items required by other Sections.

1.7 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's "punch list"), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.

- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction, permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
  - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner's signature for receipt of submittals.
5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.

- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 7900 "Demonstration and Training."
6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.

9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

## 1.8 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment in accordance with Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.
5. Submit Final Completion photographic documentation.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

## 1.9 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first, listed by room or space number.
2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceilings, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
  - a. Project name.
  - b. Date.
  - c. Name of Architect.

- d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Page number.
4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
- a. MS Excel Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.
  - b. PDF Electronic File: Architect will return annotated file.
  - c. Web-Based Project Software Upload: Utilize software feature for creating and updating list of incomplete items (punch list).

#### 1.10 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form: In addition to the electronic file, provide one set of warranties complying with the following:
  1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited-access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Clean flooring, removing debris, dirt, and staining; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations.
    - i. Vacuum and mop concrete.
    - j. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - k. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - l. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - n. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
    - o. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
    - p. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
    - q. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
    - r. Clean strainers.
    - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste-disposal requirements in Section 01 7419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations required by Section 01 7300 "Execution" before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 01 7700

## SECTION 01 7823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
  - 2. Submit two paper copies. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.



- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
  - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

#### 1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
  - 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  - 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  - 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
  - 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
  - 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.

- b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

#### 1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
  7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
  1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

#### 1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
  1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.

2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

## 1.8 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  1. Fire.
  2. Flood.
  3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
  1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:

1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
3. Operating standards.
4. Operating procedures.
5. Operating logs.
6. Wiring diagrams.
7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

C. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

1.10 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
    - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
  - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

#### 1.11 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Product name and model number.
  - 2. Manufacturer's name.
  - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4. Material and chemical composition.
  - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
  - 1. Inspection procedures.
  - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 7823

## SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for Project Record Documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 01 7300 "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Section 01 7700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Section 01 7823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of Record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set(s) of file prints.
      - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned Record Prints and three set(s) of file prints.
      - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and Contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories and one paper copy of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.



- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories and one paper copy of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into Project Record Documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

#### 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation, where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record prints with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:

1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Format: Identify and date each Record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
  3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  4. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

#### 1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation, where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and Contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  4. For each principal product, indicate whether Record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as Record Product Data.
  5. Note related Change Orders, Record Product Data, and Record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

#### 1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for Project Record Document purposes. Post changes and revisions to Project Record Documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, Record Specifications, and Record Drawings where applicable.

C. Format: Submit Record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file.

1. Include Record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of Record Product Data.

#### 1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file.

1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store Record Documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Maintain Record Documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 7839

**DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**

|         |                                  |
|---------|----------------------------------|
| 03 1000 | CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES |
| 03 2000 | CONCRETE REINFORCING             |
| 03 3000 | CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE           |

## SECTION 03 1000 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Form-facing material for cast-in-place concrete.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 32 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete".

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Form-Facing Material: Temporary structure or mold for the support of concrete while the concrete is setting and gaining sufficient strength to be self-supporting.
- B. Formwork: The total system of support of freshly placed concrete, including the mold or sheathing that contacts the concrete, as well as supporting members, hardware, and necessary bracing.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review the following:
    - a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
    - b. Construction, movement, contraction, and isolation joints
    - c. Forms and form-removal limitations.
    - d. Shoring and reshoring procedures.
    - e. Anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Prepared by, and signed and sealed by, a qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of forms.
  - 1. For exposed vertical concrete walls, indicate dimensions and form tie locations.
  - 2. Indicate dimension and locations of construction and movement joints required to construct the structure in accordance with ACI 301.
    - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.
  - 3. Indicate location of waterstops.
  - 4. Indicate form liner layout and form line termination details.
  - 5. Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping of forms, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.
  - 6. Indicate layout of insulating concrete forms, dimensions, course heights, form types, and details.
- B. Samples:
  - 1. For waterstops.
  - 2. For Form Liners: 12-inch by 12-inch sample, indicating texture.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspection agency.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing and Inspection Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
- B. Mockups: Formed surfaces to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, and standard of workmanship.
  - 1. Build panel approximately 100 sq. ft. in the location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Form Liners: Store form liners under cover to protect from sunlight.
- B. Insulating Concrete Forms: Store forms off ground and under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.
- C. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Concrete Formwork: Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, shores, and reshores in accordance with ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.
  - 1. Design wood panel forms in accordance with APA's "Concrete Forming Design/Construction Guide."
  - 2. Design formwork to limit deflection of form-facing material to 1/240 of center-to-center spacing of supports.
    - a. For architectural concrete specified in Section 03 3300 "Architectural Concrete," limit deflection of form-facing material, studs, and walers to 0.0025 times their respective clear spans (L/400).
- B. Design, engineer, erect, shore, brace, and maintain insulating concrete forms in accordance with ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads, so that resulting concrete conforms to the required shapes, lines, and dimensions.
  - 1. Design cross ties to transfer the effects of the following loads to the cast-in-place concrete core:
    - a. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
      - 1) Horizontal Deflection Limit: Not more than 1/240 of the wall height.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. As-Cast Surface Form-Facing Material:
  - 1. Provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces.

2. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
3. Acceptable Materials: As required to comply with Surface Finish designations specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete, and as follows:
  - a. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
  - b. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
    - 1) APA HDO (high-density overlay).
    - 2) APA MDO (medium-density overlay); mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
    - 3) APA Structural 1 Plyform, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
    - 4) APA Plyform Class I, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that produce surfaces without spiral or vertical seams not exceeding specified formwork surface class.
  1. Provide forms with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

### 2.3 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.022-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- B. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, not less than 0.034 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.
- D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
  1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
  2. Form release agent for form liners shall be acceptable to form liner manufacturer.
- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
  1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
  2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch in diameter in concrete surface.
  3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF FORMWORK

- A. Comply with ACI 301.

- B. Construct formwork, so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 and to comply with the Surface Finish designations specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete" for as-cast finishes.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities as follows:
  - 1. Surface Finish-1.0: ACI 117 Class D, 1 inch.
  - 2. Surface Finish-2.0: ACI 117 Class B, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Surface Finish-3.0: ACI 117 Class A, 1/8 inch.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  - 1. Minimize joints.
  - 2. Exposed Concrete: Symmetrically align joints in forms.
- E. Construct removable forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces.
  - 2. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
  - 3. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and other accessories, for easy removal.
- F. Do not use rust-stained, steel, form-facing material.
- G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces.
  - 1. Provide and secure units to support screed strips
  - 2. Use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible.
  - 1. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
  - 2. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- J. At construction joints, overlap forms onto previously placed concrete not less than 12 inches.
- K. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work.
  - 1. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
  - 2. Obtain written approval of Architect prior to forming openings not indicated on Drawings.
- L. Construction and Movement Joints:
  - 1. Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
  - 2. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 3. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  - 4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans.
    - a. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  - 5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  - 6. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.



- M. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection.
  - 1. Locate ports and openings in bottom of vertical forms, in inconspicuous location, to allow flushing water to drain.
  - 2. Close temporary ports and openings with tight-fitting panels, flush with inside face of form, and neatly fitted, so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.
- N. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- O. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- P. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  - 1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.
  - 3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
  - 4. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures, as indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Clean embedded items immediately prior to concrete placement.

### 3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.
  - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
  - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work.
  - 1. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are unacceptable for exposed surfaces.
  - 2. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints.
  - 1. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets.
  - 2. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

- B. Inspections:
1. Inspect formwork for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.
  2. Inspect insulating concrete forms for shape, location, and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.

END OF SECTION 03 1000

## SECTION 03 2000 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel reinforcement bars.
  - 2. Welded-wire reinforcement.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for reinforcing used in concrete.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review the following:
    - a. Special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control.
    - b. Construction contraction and isolation joints.
    - c. Steel-reinforcement installation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Each type of steel reinforcement.
  - 2. Bar supports.
  - 3. Mechanical splice couplers.
  - 4. Structural thermal break insulated connection system.
- B. Shop Drawings: Comply with ACI SP-066:
  - 1. Include placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement.
  - 2. Include bar sizes, lengths, materials, grades, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, location of splices, lengths of lap splices, details of mechanical splice couplers, details of welding splices, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
  - 3. For structural thermal break insulated connection system, indicate general configuration, insulation dimensions, tension bars, compression pads, shear bars, and dimensions.
- C. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to build the structure.
  - 1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of Architect.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
  - 1. Reinforcement To Be Welded: Welding procedure specification in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.
- B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
  - 1. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: CRSI's "Epoxy Coating Plant Certification."
  - 2. Dual-Coated Reinforcement: CRSI's "Epoxy Coating Plant Certification."
- C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:
  - 1. Steel Reinforcement:

- a. For reinforcement to be welded, mill test analysis for chemical composition and carbon equivalent of the steel in accordance with ASTM A706/A706M.
  2. Mechanical splice couplers.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage and to avoid damaging coatings on steel reinforcement.
  1. Store reinforcement to avoid contact with earth.
  2. Do not allow epoxy-coated reinforcement to be stored outdoors for more than 60 days without being stored under an opaque covering.
  3. Do not allow dual-coated reinforcement to be stored outdoors for more than 60 days without being stored under an opaque covering.
  4. Do not allow stainless steel reinforcement to come into contact with uncoated reinforcement.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Low-Alloy Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A706/A706M, deformed.
- C. Galvanized Reinforcing Bars:
  1. Steel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed bars.
  2. Zinc Coating: ASTM A767/A767M, Class I zinc coated after fabrication and bending.
- D. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Bars:
  1. Steel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed bars.
  2. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A775/A775M or ASTM A934/A934M with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch bar length.
- E. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A184/A184M, fabricated from ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
- F. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- G. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, flat sheet.
- H. Galvanized-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A1064M, plain, fabricated from galvanized-steel wire into flat sheets.
- I. Epoxy-Coated Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A884/A884M, Class A coated, Type 1, plain steel.

## 2.2 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place.
  - 1. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete in accordance with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
    - a. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire, all-plastic bar supports, or CRSI Class 2 stainless steel bar supports.
    - b. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use CRSI Class 1A epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
- C. Mechanical Splice Couplers: ACI 318 Type 1, same material of reinforcing bar being spliced; compression-only type tension-compression type dowel-bar type mechanical-lap type.
- D. Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, annealed steel, not less than 0.0508 inch in diameter.
  - 1. Finish: Plain ASTM A884/A884M, Class A, Type 1, epoxy coated, with less than 2 percent damaged coating in each 12-inch wire length.
- E. Stainless Steel Tie Wire: ASTM A1022/A1022M, not less than 0.0508 inch in diameter.

## 2.3 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protection of In-Place Conditions:
  - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder.
  - 2. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement.
  - 1. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover.
  - 2. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- C. Preserve clearance between bars of not less than 1 inch, not less than one bar diameter, or not less than 1-1/3 times size of large aggregate, whichever is greater.
- D. Provide concrete coverage in accordance with ACI 318.
- E. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

- F. Splices: Lap splices as indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Bars indicated to be continuous, and all vertical bars to be lapped not less than 36 bar diameters at splices, or 24 inches, whichever is greater.
  - 2. Stagger splices in accordance with ACI 318.
  - 3. Mechanical Splice Couplers: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 4. Weld reinforcing bars in accordance with AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated on Drawings.
- G. Install structural thermal break insulated connection system in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- H. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths.
  - 1. Support welded-wire reinforcement in accordance with CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice."
    - a. For reinforcement less than W4.0 or D4.0, continuous support spacing to not exceed 12 inches.
  - 2. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one wire spacing plus 2 inches for plain wire and 8 inches for deformed wire.
  - 3. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
  - 4. Lace overlaps with wire.

### 3.3 JOINTS

- A. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
  - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
  - 2. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
- B. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length, to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with ACI 117.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
  - 1. Steel-reinforcement placement.
  - 2. Steel-reinforcement mechanical splice couplers.
  - 3. Steel-reinforcement welding.
- D. Manufacturer's Inspections: Engage manufacturer of structural thermal break insulated connection system to inspect completed installations prior to placement of concrete, and to provide written report that installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 03 2000

## SECTION 03 3000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cast-in-place concrete, including concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 31 1000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories".
  - 2. Section 32 2000 "Concrete Reinforcing".

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.
- B. Water/Cement Ratio (w/cm): The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
    - a. Contractor's superintendent.
    - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    - d. Concrete Subcontractor.
    - e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.
  - 2. Review the following:
    - a. Construction joints, control joints, isolation joints, and joint-filler strips.
    - b. Concrete finishes and finishing.
    - c. Forms and form-removal limitations.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following.
  - 1. Portland cement.
  - 2. Fly ash.
  - 3. Aggregates.
  - 4. Admixtures:
    - a. Include limitations of use, including restrictions on cementitious materials, supplementary cementitious materials, air entrainment, aggregates, temperature at time of concrete placement, relative humidity at time of concrete placement, curing conditions, and use of other admixtures.
  - 5. Vapor retarders.

6. Floor and slab treatments.
7. Liquid floor treatments.
8. Curing materials.
9. Joint fillers.
10. Repair materials.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture, include the following:

1. Mixture identification.
2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength.
3. Durability exposure class.
4. Maximum w/cm.
5. Slump limit.
6. Air content.
7. Nominal maximum aggregate size.
8. Steel-fiber reinforcement content.
9. Synthetic micro-fiber content.
10. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site if permitted.
11. Include manufacturer's certification that permeability-reducing admixture is compatible with mix design.
12. Include certification that dosage rate for permeability-reducing admixture matches dosage rate used in performance compliance test.
13. Intended placement method.
14. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.
  - a. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

D. Concrete Schedule: For each location of each Class of concrete indicated in "Concrete Mixtures" Article, including the following:

1. Concrete Class designation.
2. Location within Project.
3. Exposure Class designation.
4. Formed Surface Finish designation and final finish.
5. Final finish for floors.
6. Curing process.
7. Floor treatment if any.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For the following:

1. Installer: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.
2. Ready-mixed concrete manufacturer.
3. Testing agency: Include copies of applicable ACI certificates.

B. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Curing compounds.
4. Floor and slab treatments.
5. Bonding agents.
6. Adhesives.
7. Vapor retarders.
8. Semirigid joint filler.



9. Joint-filler strips.

C. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Portland cement.
2. Fly ash.
3. Aggregates.
4. Admixtures:
  - a. Permeability-Reducing Admixture: Include independent test reports, indicating compliance with specified requirements, including dosage rate used in test.

D. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements report, indicating compliance with specified tolerances.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs Project personnel qualified as an ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is a certified ACI Flatwork Concrete Finisher/Technician or an ACI Concrete Flatwork Technician with experience installing and finishing concrete, incorporating permeability-reducing admixtures.

1. Post-Installed Concrete Anchors Installers: ACI-certified Adhesive Anchor Installer.

B. Laboratory Testing Agency Qualifications: A testing agency qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated and employing an ACI-certified Concrete Quality Control Technical Manager.

1. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.

C. Field Quality Control Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified in accordance with ASTM C1077 and ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as an ACI Concrete Field-Testing Technician, Grade 1, in accordance with ACI CPP 610.1 or an equivalent certification program.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with ASTM C94/C94M and ACI 301.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 and as follows.

1. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
2. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
3. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
4. Do not place concrete in contact with surfaces less than 35 deg F, other than reinforcing steel.

5. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1, and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature at time of discharge to not exceed 95 deg F.
  2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

- A. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

### 2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations:
1. Obtain all concrete mixtures from a single ready-mixed concrete manufacturer for entire Project.
  2. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant.
  3. Obtain aggregate from single source.
  4. Obtain each type of admixture from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Cementitious Materials:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I/II, gray.
  2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
1. Alkali-Silica Reaction: Comply with one of the following:
    - a. Expansion Result of Aggregate: Not more than 0.04 percent at one-year when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293.
    - b. Expansion Results of Aggregate and Cementitious Materials in Combination: Not more than 0.10 percent at an age of 16 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C1567.
    - c. Alkali Content in Concrete: Not more than 4 lb./cu. yd. for moderately reactive aggregate or 3 lb./cu. yd. for highly reactive aggregate, when tested in accordance with ASTM C1293 and categorized in accordance with ASTM C1778, based on alkali content being calculated in accordance with ACI 301.
  2. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 3/4 inch nominal.
  3. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
- E. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride in steel-reinforced concrete.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
  2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
  3. Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
  4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
  5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and -Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
  6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.

- F. Water and Water Used to Make Ice: ASTM C94/C94M, potable.

## 2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder, Class A: ASTM E1745, Class A; not less than 15 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. Raven Industries, Inc.
    - b. Stego Industries, LLC.
    - c. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

## 2.4 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
    - b. ChemMasters, Inc.
    - c. Curecrete Distribution Inc.
    - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    - e. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - f. PROSOCO, Inc.
    - g. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

## 2.5 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. BASF Corporation.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - d. Nox-Crete Products Group.
    - e. Sika Corporation.
    - f. W.R. Meadows, Inc.

- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

- C. Water: Potable or complying with ASTM C1602/C1602M.

## 2.6 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 in accordance with ASTM D2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

## 2.7 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Cement Binder: ASTM C150/C150M portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement, as defined in ASTM C219.
  2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
  3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand, as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M.

## 2.8 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, in accordance with ACI 301.
1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs, based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
1. Fly Ash or Other Pozzolans: 25 percent by mass.
- C. Admixtures: Use admixtures in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, and concrete with w/com below 0.5.

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Class: Normal-weight concrete used for footings, grade beams, and tie beams.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: **as indicated on drawings.**
  2. Maximum w/cm: **as indicated on drawings.**
  3. Slump Limit: **as indicated on drawings.**
  4. Air Content: **as indicated on drawings**
- B. Class: Normal-weight concrete used for foundation walls.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: **as indicated on drawings.**
  2. Maximum w/cm: **as indicated on drawings.**
  3. Slump Limit: **as indicated on drawings.**
  4. Air Content: **as indicated on drawings**
- C. Class: Normal-weight concrete used for interior slabs-on-ground.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: **as indicated on drawings.**
  2. Maximum w/cm: **as indicated on drawings.**
  3. Slump Limit: **as indicated on drawings.**
  4. Air Content: **as indicated on drawings**
- D. Class: Normal-weight concrete used for interior suspended slabs.
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: **as indicated on drawings.**
  2. Maximum w/cm: **as indicated on drawings.**
  3. Slump Limit: **as indicated on drawings.**

4. Air Content: **as indicated on drawings**
5. Air Content:
  - a. Do not use an air-entraining admixture or allow total air content to exceed 3 percent for concrete used in trowel-finished floors.

## 2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete in accordance with ASTM C94/C94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verification of Conditions:
  1. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of concrete forms, accessories, and reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
  2. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide reasonable auxiliary services to accommodate field testing and inspections, acceptable to testing agency, including the following:
  1. Daily access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Secure space for storage, initial curing, and field curing of test samples, including source of water and continuous electrical power at Project site during site curing period for test samples.
  4. Security and protection for test samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining Work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete.
  1. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  2. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of ANSI/AISC 303.
  3. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Install vapor retarder with longest dimension parallel with direction of concrete pour.
  2. Face laps away from exposed direction of concrete pour.
  3. Lap vapor retarder over footings and grade beams not less than **6 inches**, sealing vapor retarder to concrete.
  4. Lap joints **6 inches** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
  5. Terminate vapor retarder at the top of floor slabs, grade beams, and pile caps, sealing entire perimeter to floor slabs, grade beams, foundation walls, or pile caps.

6. Seal penetrations in accordance with vapor retarder manufacturer's instructions.
7. Protect vapor retarder during placement of reinforcement and concrete.
  - a. Repair damaged areas by patching with vapor retarder material, overlapping damages area by **6 inches** on all sides, and sealing to vapor retarder.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints true to line, with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Coordinate with floor slab pattern and concrete placement sequence.
  1. Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated on Drawings or as approved by Architect.
  2. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement.
    - a. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
  3. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  4. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders at third points of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
  5. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
  6. Space vertical joints in walls, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, locate vertical joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
  7. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  8. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Control Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: Form weakened-plane control joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct control joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
  1. Sawed Joints: Form control joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Ground: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
  1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface, where joint sealants, specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
  3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints:
  1. Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated on Drawings.
  2. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel bar length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, embedded items, and vapor retarder is complete and that required inspections are completed.

1. Immediately prior to concrete placement, inspect vapor retarder for damage and deficient installation, and repair defective areas.
  2. Provide continuous inspection of vapor retarder during concrete placement and make necessary repairs to damaged areas as Work progresses.
- B. Notify Architect and testing and inspection agencies 24 hours prior to commencement of concrete placement.
- C. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect in writing, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, but not to exceed the amount indicated on the concrete delivery ticket.
- E. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness.
1. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated.
  2. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
  3. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
  4. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment in accordance with ACI 301.
    - a. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms.
    - b. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer.
    - c. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity.
    - d. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete, and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- F. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
1. Do not place concrete floors and slabs in a checkerboard sequence.
  2. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
  3. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
  4. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
  5. Level concrete, cut high areas, and fill low areas.
  6. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
  7. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface.
  8. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

### 3.7 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. As-Cast Surface Finishes:
1. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-1.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material.
    - a. Patch voids larger than 1-1/2 inches wide or 1/2 inch deep.
    - b. Remove projections larger than 1 inch.
    - c. Tie holes do not require patching.
    - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class D.
    - e. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
  2. ACI 301 Surface Finish SF-2.0: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams.

- a. Patch voids larger than 3/4 inch wide or 1/2 inch deep.
  - b. Remove projections larger than 1/4 inch.
  - c. Patch tie holes.
  - d. Surface Tolerance: ACI 117 Class B.
  - e. Locations: Apply to concrete surfaces refer to drawings.
- B. Hand-Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to as cast surface finishes where indicated on Drawings:
1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish:
    - a. Perform no later than one day after form removal.
    - b. Moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture.
    - c. If sufficient cement paste cannot be drawn from the concrete by the rubbing process, use a grout made from the same cementitious materials used in the in-place concrete.

### 3.8 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish:
1. When bleedwater sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operation of specific float apparatus, consolidate concrete surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats.
  2. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture and complies with ACI 117 tolerances for conventional concrete.
  3. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- C. Trowel Finish:
1. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel.
  2. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance.
  3. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
  4. Do not add water to concrete surface.
  5. Do not apply hard-troweled finish to concrete, which has a total air content greater than 3 percent.
  6. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
  7. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, in accordance with ASTM E1155, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
    - a. Slabs on Ground:
      - 1) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch.
      - 2) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 25; and of levelness, FL 20; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 17; and of levelness, FL 15.
      - 3) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 35; and of levelness, FL 25; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 24; and of levelness, FL 17.
      - 4) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 45; and of levelness, FL 35; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 30; and of levelness, FL 24.
      - 5) Specified Overall Value (SOV): FF 50 and FL 25 with minimum local value (MLV): FF 40 and FL 17.
      - 6) Specified Overall Value (SOV): FF 25 and FL 20 with minimum local value (MLV): FF 17 and FL 15.



- b. Suspended Slabs:
    - 1) Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft.- long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch.
    - 2) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 25; and of levelness, FL 20; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 17; and of levelness, FL 15.
    - 3) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 35; and of levelness, FL 20; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 24; and of levelness, FL 15.
    - 4) Specified overall values of flatness, FF 45; and of levelness, FL 35; with minimum local values of flatness, FF 30; and of levelness, FL 24.
  
  - D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
    - 1. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
    - 2. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel-finished floor surfaces.
  
  - E. Salt & Pepper Finish (Art Rooms)
    - 1. See 03 35 43 "Polished Concrete Finishes" for finish.
  
  - F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and locations indicated on Drawings.
    - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route.
    - 2. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
- 3.9 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS
- A. Filling In:
    - 1. Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after Work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction.
    - 3. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
  
  - B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
  
  - C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:
    - 1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
    - 2. Construct concrete bases 4 inches high unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, and extend base not less than 6 inches in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated on Drawings, or unless required for seismic anchor support.
    - 3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
    - 4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
    - 5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
    - 6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices.
      - a. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
      - b. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases.
      - c. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items.
  - 1. Cast-in inserts and accessories, as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

### 3.10 CONCRETE CURING

- A. Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures.
  - 1. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 306.1 for cold weather protection during curing.
  - 2. Comply with ACI 301 and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.
  - 3. Maintain moisture loss no more than 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations.
- B. Curing Formed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:
  - 1. Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces.
  - 2. Cure concrete containing color pigments in accordance with color pigment manufacturer's instructions.
  - 3. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms.
  - 4. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period, as follows:
    - a. Continuous Fogging: Maintain standing water on concrete surface until final setting of concrete.
    - b. Continuous Sprinkling: Maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - c. Absorptive Cover: Pre-dampen absorptive material before application; apply additional water to absorptive material to maintain concrete surface continuously wet.
    - d. Water-Retention Sheeting Materials: Cover exposed concrete surfaces with sheeting material, taping, or lapping seams.
    - e. Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
      - 1) Recoat areas subject to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
      - 2) Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- C. Curing Unformed Surfaces: Comply with ACI 308.1 as follows:
  - 1. Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete.
  - 2. Interior Concrete Floors:
    - a. Floors to Receive Floor Coverings Specified in Other Sections: Contractor has option of the following:
      - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
        - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12-inches.
        - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
      - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
        - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
        - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
      - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
        - a) Water.
        - b) Continuous water-fog spray.

- b. Floors to Receive Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatments: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches.
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive.
    - a) Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.
    - b) Cure for not less than seven days.
  - 3) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- c. Floors to Receive Polished Finish: Contractor has option of the following:
  - 1) Absorptive Cover: As soon as concrete has sufficient set to permit application without marring concrete surface, install prewetted absorptive cover over entire area of floor.
    - a) Lap edges and ends of absorptive cover not less than 12 inches.
    - b) Maintain absorptive cover water saturated, and in place, for duration of curing period, but not less than seven days.
  - 2) Ponding or Continuous Sprinkling of Water: Maintain concrete surfaces continuously wet for not less than seven days, utilizing one, or a combination of, the following:
    - a) Water.
    - b) Continuous water-fog spray.
- d. Floors to Receive Curing Compound:
  - 1) Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
  - 3) Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.
  - 4) Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
- e. Floors to Receive Curing and Sealing Compound:
  - 1) Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2) Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application.
  - 3) Repeat process 24 hours later, and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating, and repair damage during curing period.

### 3.11 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to ACI 117.

### 3.12 APPLICATION OF LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
  - 2. Do not apply to concrete that is less than three days' old.
  - 3. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing.
  - 4. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry.
  - 5. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.13 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s).
  - 2. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joints clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least **2 inches** deep in formed joints.
- D. Overfill joint, and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

### 3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete:
  - 1. Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect.
  - 2. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
  - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension to solid concrete.
    - a. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch.
    - b. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface.
    - c. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent.
    - d. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
    - e. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement, so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color.
    - a. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching.
    - b. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that will affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces:
1. Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish, and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface.
    - a. Correct low and high areas.
    - b. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
  2. Repair finished surfaces containing surface defects, including spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing, and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
  3. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
  4. Correct localized low areas during, or immediately after, completing surface-finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar.
    - a. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
  5. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment.
    - a. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
    - b. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
  6. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with repair topping.
    - a. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations.
    - b. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
  7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar.
    - a. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete, and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles.
    - b. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent.
    - c. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried.
    - d. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete.
    - e. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.
- 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform field tests and inspections and prepare testing and inspection reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
1. Testing agency shall be responsible for providing curing container for composite samples on Site and verifying that field-cured composite samples are cured in accordance with ASTM C31/C31M.
  2. Testing agency shall immediately report to Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer any failure of Work to comply with Contract Documents.
  3. Testing agency shall report results of tests and inspections, in writing, to Owner, Architect, Contractor, and concrete manufacturer within 48 hours of inspections and tests.

- a. Test reports shall include reporting requirements of ASTM C31/C31M, ASTM C39/C39M, and ACI 301, including the following as applicable to each test and inspection:
  - 1) Project name.
  - 2) Name of testing agency.
  - 3) Names and certification numbers of field and laboratory technicians performing inspections and testing.
  - 4) Name of concrete manufacturer.
  - 5) Date and time of inspection, sampling, and field testing.
  - 6) Date and time of concrete placement.
  - 7) Location in Work of concrete represented by samples.
  - 8) Date and time sample was obtained.
  - 9) Truck and batch ticket numbers.
  - 10) Design compressive strength at 28 days.
  - 11) Concrete mixture designation, proportions, and materials.
  - 12) Field test results.
  - 13) Information on storage and curing of samples before testing, including curing method and maximum and minimum temperatures during initial curing period.
  - 14) Type of fracture and compressive break strengths at seven days and 28 days.
  
- C. Batch Tickets: For each load delivered, submit three copies of batch delivery ticket to testing agency, indicating quantity, mix identification, admixtures, design strength, aggregate size, design air content, design slump at time of batching, and amount of water that can be added at Project site.
  
- D. Inspections:
  1. Headed bolts and studs.
  2. Verification of use of required design mixture.
  3. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
  4. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
  5. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
  6. Batch Plant Inspections: On a random basis, as determined by Architect.
  
- E. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained in accordance with ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed in accordance with the following requirements:
  1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
    - a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  3. Slump Flow: ASTM C1611/C1611M:
    - a. One test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
    - b. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  4. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; .
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M:
    - a. One test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.

6. Unit Weight: ASTM C567/C567M fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete.
    - a. One test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
  7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M:
    - a. Cast and laboratory cure four 6-inch by 12-inch or 4-inch by 8-inch cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
  8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
    - a. Test one laboratory-cured specimen at seven days and one set of two specimens at 28 days. Retain 1 specimen in reserve for later testing if required.
    - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
  9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
  10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi if specified compressive strength is 5000 psi, or no compressive strength test value is less than 10 percent of specified compressive strength if specified compressive strength is greater than 5000 psi.
  11. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
  12. Additional Tests:
    - a. Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
    - b. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
      - 1) Acceptance criteria for concrete strength shall be in accordance with ACI 301 section 1.6.6.3.
  13. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  14. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155 within 24 hours of completion of floor finishing and promptly report test results to Architect.

### 3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Protect concrete surfaces as follows:
1. Protect from petroleum stains.
  2. Diaper hydraulic equipment used over concrete surfaces.
  3. Prohibit vehicles from interior concrete slabs.
  4. Prohibit use of pipe-cutting machinery over concrete surfaces.
  5. Prohibit placement of steel items on concrete surfaces.
  6. Prohibit use of acids or acidic detergents over concrete surfaces.
  7. Protect liquid floor treatment from damage and wear during the remainder of construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by liquid floor treatments installer.
  8. Protect concrete surfaces scheduled to receive surface hardener or polished concrete finish using Floor Slab Protective Covering.

END OF SECTION 03 3000



**DIVISION 04 – MASONRY**

|         |                  |
|---------|------------------|
| 04 0110 | MASONRY CLEANING |
| 04 2000 | UNIT MASONRY     |
| 04 2613 | MASONRY VENEER   |

## SECTION 04 0110 - MASONRY CLEANING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes cleaning the following:
  1. Unit masonry surfaces.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. High-Pressure Spray: 800 to 1200 psi; 4 to 6 gpm.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  1. Review methods and procedures related to cleaning masonry including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Verify masonry-cleaning equipment and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Materials, material application, and sequencing.
    - c. Cleaning program.
    - d. Coordination with building occupants.

#### 1.5 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Work Sequence: Perform masonry-cleaning work in the following sequence:
  1. Inspect for open mortar joints. Where repairs are required, delay further cleaning work until after repairs are completed, cured, and dried to prevent the intrusion of water and other cleaning materials into the wall.
  2. Clean masonry surfaces.
  3. Where water repellents are to be used on or near masonry, delay application of these chemicals until after cleaning.
- B. As scaffolding is removed, patch anchor holes used to attach scaffolding. Patch holes in masonry units according to masonry repair Sections. Patch holes in mortar joints according to masonry repointing Sections.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include material descriptions and application instructions.
  2. Include test data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For paint-remover manufacturer and chemical-cleaner manufacturer.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Chemical-Cleaner Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm regularly engaged in producing masonry cleaners that have been used for similar applications with successful results, and with factory-authorized service representatives who are available for consultation and Project-site inspection and on-site assistance.
- B. Cleaning Program: Prepare a written cleaning program that describes cleaning process in detail, including materials, methods, and equipment to be used; protection of surrounding materials; and control of runoff during operations. Include provisions for supervising worker performance and preventing damage.
  - 1. If materials and methods other than those indicated are proposed for any phase of cleaning work, add a written description of such materials and methods, including evidence of successful use on comparable projects and demonstrations to show their effectiveness for this Project.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit masonry-cleaning work to be performed according to product manufacturers' written instructions and specified requirements.
- B. Clean masonry surfaces only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and is predicted to remain so for at least seven days after completion of cleaning.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CLEANING MATERIALS

- A. Water: Potable.
- B. Hot Water: Water heated to a temperature of 140 to 160 deg F.
- C. Detergent Solution, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), 1/2 cup of laundry detergent, and 20 quarts of hot water for every 5 gal. of solution required.
- D. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Remover, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), 5 quarts of 5 percent sodium hypochlorite (bleach), and 15 quarts of hot water for every 5 gal. of solution required.
- E. Mild-Acid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mild-acid cleaner containing no muriatic (hydrochloric), hydrofluoric, or sulfuric acid; or ammonium bifluoride or chlorine bleaches.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Building Restoration Products, Inc.
    - b. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.; a Hohmann & Barnard company.

### 2.2 CHEMICAL CLEANING SOLUTIONS

- A. Dilute chemical cleaners with water to produce solutions not exceeding concentration recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Comply with each manufacturer's written instructions for protecting building and other surfaces against damage from exposure to its products. Prevent paint removers and chemical cleaning solutions from coming into contact with people, motor vehicles, landscaping, buildings, and other surfaces that could be harmed by such contact.
  - 1. Cover adjacent surfaces with materials that are proven to resist paint removers and chemical cleaners used unless products being used will not damage adjacent surfaces. Use protective materials that are waterproof and UV resistant. Apply masking agents according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid strippable masking agent to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking to prevent adhesive staining.
  - 2. Do not apply chemical solutions during winds of enough force to spread them to unprotected surfaces.
  - 3. Neutralize alkaline and acid wastes before disposal.
  - 4. Dispose of runoff from operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, and water penetration into building interiors.
- B. Remove downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to immediate work area and store during masonry cleaning. Reinstall when masonry cleaning is complete.
  - 1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

### 3.2 CLEANING MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Cleaning Appearance Standard: Cleaned surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from **20 feet** away by Architect.
- B. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from top to bottom of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other. Ensure that dirty residues and rinse water do not wash over dry, cleaned surfaces.
- C. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.
  - 1. Brushes: Do not use wire brushes or brushes that are not resistant to chemical cleaner being used.
  - 2. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment that provides controlled application at volume and pressure indicated, measured at nozzle. Adjust pressure and volume to ensure that cleaning methods do not damage surfaces, including joints.
    - a. Equip units with pressure gages.
    - b. For chemical-cleaner spray application, use low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with nozzle having a cone-shaped spray.
    - c. For water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray that disperses water at an angle of 25 to 50 degrees.
    - d. For high-pressure water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray that disperses water at an angle of at least 40 degrees.
    - e. For heated water-spray application, use equipment capable of maintaining temperature between **140 and 160 deg F** at flow rates indicated.
    - f. For steam application, use steam generator capable of delivering live steam at nozzle.
- D. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner that results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, and interstices, and that produces an even effect without

streaking or damaging masonry surfaces. Keep wall wet below area being cleaned to prevent streaking from runoff.

- E. Perform additional general cleaning, paint and stain removal, and spot cleaning of small areas that are noticeably different when viewed according to the "Cleaning Appearance Standard" Paragraph, so that cleaned surfaces blend smoothly into surrounding areas.
- F. Water Application Methods:
  - 1. Water-Soak Application: Soak masonry surfaces by applying water continuously and uniformly to limited area for time indicated. Apply water at low pressures and low volumes in multiple fine sprays using perforated hoses or multiple spray nozzles. Erect a protective enclosure constructed of polyethylene sheeting to cover area being sprayed.
  - 2. Water-Spray Applications: Unless otherwise indicated, hold spray nozzle at least **6 inches** from masonry surface and apply water in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
- G. Steam Cleaning: Apply steam to masonry surfaces at the very low pressures indicated for each type of masonry. Hold nozzle at least **6 inches** from masonry surface and apply steam in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
- H. Chemical-Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces according to chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions; use brush or spray application. Do not spray apply at pressures exceeding **50 psi**. Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- I. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upward from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting. Periodically during each rinse, test pH of rinse water running off of cleaned area to determine that chemical cleaner is completely removed.
  - 1. Apply neutralizing agent and repeat rinse if necessary to produce tested pH of between 6.7 and 7.5.
- J. After cleaning is complete, remove protection no longer required. Remove tape and adhesive marks.

### 3.3 PRELIMINARY CLEANING

- A. Preliminary Cleaning: Before beginning general cleaning, remove extraneous substances that are resistant to planned cleaning methods. Extraneous substances include paint, calking, asphalt, and tar.
  - 1. Carefully remove heavy accumulations of rigid materials from masonry surface with sharp chisel. Do not scratch or chip masonry surface.
  - 2. Remove paint and calking with alkaline paint remover.
    - a. Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
    - b. Repeat application up to two times if needed.
  - 3. Remove asphalt and tar with solvent-type paste paint remover.
    - a. Comply with requirements in "Paint Removal" Article.
    - b. Apply paint remover only to asphalt and tar by brush without prewetting.
    - c. Allow paint remover to remain on surface for 10 to 30 minutes.
    - d. Repeat application if needed.

### 3.4 CLEANING MASONRY

- A. Cold-Water Wash: Use cold water applied by high-pressure spray.

- B. Mild-Acid Chemical Cleaning:
  - 1. Wet surface with cold water applied by low-pressure spray.
  - 2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush or low-pressure spray.
  - 3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
  - 4. Rinse with cold water applied by high-pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
  - 5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

3.5 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent nonmasonry surfaces of spillage and debris. Use detergent and soft brushes or cloths.
- B. Remove debris from gutters and downspouts. Rinse off roof and flush gutters and downspouts.
- C. Remove masking materials, leaving no residues that could trap dirt.

END OF SECTION 04 0110

## SECTION 04 2000 - UNIT MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units.
  - 2. Mortar and grout.
  - 3. Steel reinforcing bars.
  - 4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
  - 5. Ties and anchors.
  - 6. Embedded flashing.
  - 7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
  - 8. Masonry-cell fill.
- B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:
  - 1. Steel shelf angles for supporting unit masonry.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 1000 "Concrete Forms and Accessories" for installing dovetail slots for masonry anchors.
  - 2. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame.
  - 3. Section 07 1900 "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies.
  - 4. Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation" for cavity wall insulation.
  - 5. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  - 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
  - 2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315.
  - 3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
  - 1. Decorative CMUs, in the form of small-scale units.
  - 2. Colored mortar.
  
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
  - 1. Exposed Decorative CMUs.
  - 2. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
  - 3. Accessories embedded in masonry.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
  - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
  
- B. Material Certificates: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
    - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
  - 2. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
  - 3. Mortar admixtures.
  - 4. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 5. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 6. Reinforcing bars.
  - 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
  
- C. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined in accordance with TMS 602.
  
- D. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.
  
- B. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
  - 1. Build sample panels for typical exterior wall typical interior wall typical exterior and interior walls in sizes approximately 48 inches 60 inches long by 48 inches high.
  
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.



1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
2. Build mockups for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 60 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
  - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in exterior wall mockup.
  - b. Include lower corner of window opening at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches wide by 16 inches high.
  - c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at tie of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.
  2. Where one wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe, and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
  1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.

4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
  1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design: Amcor for Concrete Masonry Units.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

### 2.2 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
  1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### 2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units and where indicated.
  1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E514/E514M as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) ACM Chemistries.
- 2) Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
- 3) GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
- 4) Master Builders Solutions.
- 5) Moxie International.

C. CMUs: ASTM C90.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2000 psi.
2. Density Classification: Normal Weight.
3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
4. Exposed Faces:
  - a. Honed and Split-Faced surfaces to be facing corridor.
  - b. All interior vertical corners to have 1" radius bullnose.
  - c. No field bullnose. All bullnose to be factory finishes.
  - d. All block above ceiling line, not exposed to view, to be standard color.
5. Exposed Finish: see drawings for location of textured (honed or split-faced) block.

2.4 MASONRY LINTELS

A. General: Provide one of the following:

- B. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

1. Alkali content shall not be more than 0.1 percent when tested according to ASTM C114.

B. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

C. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Lafarge North America Inc.

D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.

E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.

- G. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
- H. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ACM Chemistries.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    - c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    - d. Master Builders Solutions.
- I. Water: Potable.

## 2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 .
- B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - c. Wire-Bond.
- C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A951/A951M.
  - 1. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
  - 2. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 3. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 4. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch diameter.
  - 5. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- D. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - b. Wire-Bond.
- E. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Veneers Anchored with Seismic Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Single 0.187-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized carbon stainless steel continuous wire.

## 2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors shall extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.

- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 coating.
  - 2. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
  - 3. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches wide by 1/4 inch thick by 24 inches long, with ends turned up 2 inches or with cross pins unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A153/A153M.

## 2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
  - 1. Copper: ASTM B370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. weight or 0.0216 inch thick or ASTM B370, Temper H01, high-yield copper sheet, 12-oz./sq. ft. weight or 0.0162 inch thick.
  - 2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  - 3. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from copper, with ribs at 3-inch intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Cheney Flashing Company.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 3) Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
  - 4. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge where indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
  - 5. Fabricate metal drip edges for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam sheds water.
  - 6. Solder metal items at corners.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.040 inch.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
      - 2) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
      - 3) GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
      - 4) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
      - 5) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 6) Polyguard Products, Inc.
      - 7) W. R. Meadows, Inc.
    - b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
- C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  - 2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.

3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge.
4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use flexible flashing.

D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:

1. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, chemically curing silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.

E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 or and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

## 2.10 MASONRY-CELL FILL

- A. Loose-Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).

## 2.11 MASONRY CLEANERS

- A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

## 2.12 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. Use portland cement-lime masonry cement mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
  1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
  2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
- C. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
  1. Mix to match Architect's sample.

2. Application: Use colored-aggregate mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
  - a. Decorative CMUs.
  
- D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.
  1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, Table 1 of paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2500 psi.
  3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C143/C143M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
  2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
  4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that impair mortar bond.
  
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
  
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
  
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
  
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.
  
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
  
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
  
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
  
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested according to ASTM C67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
  2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2-inch total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
  2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
  3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
  4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
  5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
  6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
- C. Joints:
1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2- inch.
  2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
  3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
  4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.
  5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.



- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.
- G. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay CMUs as follows:
  - 1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  - 2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  - 3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  - 4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
  - 5. Fully bed units and fill cells with mortar at anchors and ties as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 MASONRY-CELL FILL

- A. Pour loose-fill insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of fill at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of fill to one story high, but not more than 20 feet.
- B. Install molded-polystyrene insulation units into masonry unit cells before laying units.

### 3.7 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
  - 1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
  - 2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

### 3.8 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

- B. Locate joints as indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, provide joints at maximum spacing of 40 feet on-center between joints, or 2.5 times the wall height, whichever is less. Unless otherwise indicated, locate joints a maximum of 20 feet or 1.25 times the wall height, whichever is less, from building corners, and a minimum of the scheduled masonry column width of 2 feet, whichever is greater, away from masonry openings. Coordinate locations with Architect.
- C. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
  - 1. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.

### 3.9 LINTELS

- A. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.10 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
  - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Special inspections according to Level 2 in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.
  - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
  - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
  - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.

- E. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C67 for compressive strength.
- F. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C140 for compressive strength.
- G. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780.
- H. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- I. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C1019.
- J. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.

### 3.12 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
  - 6. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.
  - 7. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.
  - 9. Clean limestone units to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

### 3.13 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

END OF SECTION 04 2000

## SECTION 04 2613 - MASONRY VENEER

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Mortar materials.
3. Ties and anchors.
4. Embedded flashing.
5. Accessories.
6. Mortar mixes.

##### B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

1. Steel lintels in masonry veneer.
2. Steel shelf angles for supporting masonry veneer.

##### C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 4339 "Mockups" for integrated exterior mockup requirements.
2. Section 01 9119.43 "Exterior Enclosure Commissioning."
3. Section 03 1000 "Concrete Forming and Accessories" for installing dovetail slots or channel slots for masonry-veneer anchors.
4. Section 04 4200 "Exterior Stone Cladding" for stone trim secured with stone anchors.
5. Section 04 4313.13 "Anchored Stone Masonry Veneer" for thin stone trim set as anchored veneer.
6. Section 04 4313.16 "Adhered Stone Masonry Veneer" for thin stone trim set as adhered veneer.
7. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame.
8. Section 07 1900 "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies.
9. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site .

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

1. Masonry Units: Indicate sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
2. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:

1. Decorative CMUs.
2. Concrete face brick.
3. Weep/cavity vents.
4. Cavity drainage material.
5. Accessories embedded in masonry.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.

B. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installers: All masonry flashing installers must complete the International Masonry Institute Flashing Upgrade training course.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of veneer, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down face of veneer, and hold cover securely in place.

- B. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with masonry.
  - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
  
- C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.
  - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
  
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.
  - 1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, use the equivalent thickness method for masonry units in accordance with ACI 216.1 .

### 2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  
- B. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C90, normal weight .
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. York Building Products.
  - 2. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions **3/8 inch** less than nominal dimensions.
  - 3. Pattern and Texture: Standard pattern, ground-face finish .
  - 4. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  
- C. Concrete Face Brick: ASTM C1634, normal weight .
  - 1. Size (Actual Dimensions): **3-5/8 inches** wide by **3-5/8 inches** high by **15-5/8 inches** long.
  - 2. Texture: Split-face Ground-face finish .
  - 3. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
  - 1. Alkali content will not be more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
    - b. Holcim (US) Inc.
    - c. Quikrete; The QUIKRETE Companies, LLC.
    - d. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Lafarge North America Inc.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Davis Colors.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
    - c. Lanxess Corporation.
    - d. Solomon Colors Inc.
- G. Preblended Dry Mortar Mix: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime masonry cement or mortar cement, sand, mortar pigments, water repellents, and admixtures and complying with ASTM C1714/C1714M.
  - 1. Preblended Dry Portland Cement Mortar Mix:
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Amerimix is a trademark of Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
      - 2) Quikrete; The QUIKRETE Companies, LLC.
      - 3) Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.
      - 4) SPEC MIX, LLC.
  - 2. Preblended Dry Masonry Cement Mortar Mix
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Amerimix is a trademark of Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
      - 2) SPEC MIX, LLC.



- H. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C , and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
- I. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ACM Chemistries.
    - b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); a subsidiary of RPM International, Inc.
    - c. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    - d. Master Builders Solutions, brand of MBCC Group, a Sika company.
- J. Water: Potable.

## 2.4 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least 1-1/2 inches into veneer but with at least a 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, with ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 coating.
  - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  - 3. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 304 .
  - 4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel, G60 zinc coating.
  - 5. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
  - 6. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304 .
- C. Corrugated-Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than 7/8 inch wide with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch made from 0.0336-inch- thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication 0.0312-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet .
- D. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
  - 1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100 lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.
  - 2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.0785-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication .
  - 3. Fabricate wire ties from 0.187-inch- diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel stainless steel wire unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Contractor's Option: Unless otherwise indicated, provide any of the adjustable masonry-veneer anchors specified.

5. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Vertical Slotted L-Plate: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes at top and bottom, projecting vertical leg with slotted hole for wire tie and washer at face of insulation.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) FERO Corporation.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) PROSOCO, Inc.
    - 4) Wire-Bond.
6. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Double-Pintle Plate: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes at top and bottom, projecting horizontal leg with slots for vertical legs of double pintle wire tie. Provide with seismic tie, clip, and continuous wire in veneer.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) Quality Steel and Wire LLC.
    - 4) Wire-Bond.
7. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Slotted Plate: Sheet metal anchor section, with screw holes at top and bottom; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for wire tie. Use self-adhering tape to seal penetration behind anchor plate.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) Quality Steel and Wire LLC.
    - 4) Wire-Bond.
8. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Slotted Plate with Prongs: Sheet metal anchor section, with screw holes at top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for wire tie.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 2) Wire-Bond.
9. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Single-Barrel Screw: Self-drilling, single-barrel screw designed to receive wire tie. Screw has a smooth barrel the same thickness as insulation with factory-installed gasketed washer to seal at face of insulation and sheathing.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) PROSOCO, Inc.
    - 4) Wire-Bond.
10. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Single-Barrel Screw with Double-Pintle Wingnut: Self-drilling, single-barrel screw with thermally resistant wingnut head thermally resistant clip designed to receive double-pintle wire tie. Screw has a smooth barrel the same thickness as insulation with factory-installed gasketed washer to seal at face of insulation and sheathing.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Heckmann Building Products, Inc.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
11. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Seismic-Pintle Plate: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes at top and bottom, projecting leg with slotted hole for vertical leg of seismic

pintle tie. Tie is rib-stiffened, sheet metal bent plate with down-turned leg to fit in anchor slot and with integral tabs to hold continuous wire in veneer.

- a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
  - 2) Wire-Bond.
12. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, **No. 10** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
13. Stainless Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, **No. 10** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads; either made from Type 410 stainless steel or made with a carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless steel shank.

## 2.5 EMBEDDED FLASHING

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304 , **0.016 inch** thick.
2. Copper: ASTM B370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, **16 oz./sq. ft.** weight or **0.0216 inch** thick or ASTM B370, Temper H01, high-yield copper sheet, **12 oz./sq. ft.** weight or **0.0162 inch** thick.
3. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections **96 inches** long minimum, but not exceeding **12 ft.** Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
4. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel copper, with ribs at **3-inch** intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cheney Flashing Company.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
6. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge where indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing **1/2 inch** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
7. Fabricate through-wall flashing with sealant stop where indicated. Fabricate by bending metal back on itself **3/4 inch** at exterior face of wall and down into joint **1/4 inch** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
8. Fabricate metal drip edges and sealant stops for sawtooth metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as sawtooth flashing and extending at least **3 inches** into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive sawtooth flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam sheds water.
9. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches** into wall and **1/2 inch** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
10. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches** into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for **3/4 inch** and down into joint **1/4 inch** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
11. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from stainless steel copper to shapes indicated.
12. Solder metal items at corners.

- B. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Copper Fabric Flashing: **3- oz./sq. ft.** copper sheet bonded between two layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
    - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 3) Wire-Bond.
2. Stainless Steel Fabric Flashing: Composite, flashing product consisting of **2 mil** of Type 304 stainless steel sheet, bonded to a layer of polymeric fabric, to produce an overall thickness of **40 mil**.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 2) PROSOCO, Inc.
    - 3) Wire-Bond.
3. Self-Adhering, Stainless Steel Fabric Flashing: Composite, flashing product consisting of **2 mil** of Type 304 stainless steel sheet, bonded to a layer of polymeric fabric with a butyl adhesive , to produce an overall thickness of **10 mil** .
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 2) STS Coatings, Inc.
    - 3) Wire-Bond.
  - b. Applications: Use **10-mil-** thick flashing at windows, doors, and small wall penetrations; not at base of walls. Use **40-mil-** thick flashing at base of walls.
4. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than **30 mil** .
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
    - 2) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - 3) Polyguard Products, Inc.
  - b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
5. Butyl Rubber Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than **35 mil** .
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) DuPont de Nemours, Inc.
    - 2) GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    - 3) Wire-Bond.
  - b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
6. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy.
  - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
    - 2) Mortar Net Solutions.
    - 3) Wire-Bond.
  - b. Monolithic Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, **40 mil** thick.
  - c. Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, **25 mil** thick, with a **15-mil-** thick coating of adhesive.
    - 1) Color: Gray .

- d. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
  7. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D4637/D4637M, **40 mil** thick.
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 3) Wire-Bond.
  - C. Drainage Plane Flashing: Fabricate from stainless steel copper rubberized asphalt elastomeric membrane and drainage membrane to shapes indicated , including weep tabs, termination bar and drip edge. Provide flashing materials as follows:
    1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. Mortar Net Solutions.
      - b. STS Coatings, Inc.
      - c. York Manufacturing, Inc.
    2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304 , **0.016 inch** thick.
    3. Copper: **3 oz./sq. ft.** thick.
    4. Rubberized Asphalt: 40 mil (1.0 mm) thick.
    5. Elastomeric Membrane: EPDM complying with ASTM D4637/D4637M PVC PVC with Elvaloy Kee TPO , 40 mil (1.0 mm) .
    6. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections **60 inches** long, minimum.
    7. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
  - D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
    1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn60 , with acid flux of type recommended by stainless steel sheet manufacturer.
    2. Solder for Copper: ASTM B32, Grade Sn50 .
    3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, chemically curing urethane polysulfide silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.
  - E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
  - F. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing, Flanged: Stainless steel sheet **0.019 inch by 1-1/2 inches** Aluminum sheet **0.064 inch by 1-1/2 inches** with a **3/8-inch** flange at top and bottom.
- 2.6 ACCESSORIES
- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
  - B. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
    1. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, **3/8-inch** OD by **4 inches** long.

- C. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - 1. Mortar Deflector: Strips, full depth of cavity and **10 inches** high, with that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.
      - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
      - 3) Wire-Bond.
  - 2. Rainscreen Drainage Mat: Sheets or strips not less than full depth of cavity thick and installed to full height of cavity, with additional strips **4 inches** high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity to prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Mortar Net Solutions.
      - 2) Wire-Bond.

## 2.7 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  - 2. Use portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar.
  - 4. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar.
  - 5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Use Type N unless another type is indicated.
  - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M .

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- B. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- C. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- D. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- E. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

### 3.3 TOLERANCES

#### A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

- 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
- 2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
- 3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

#### B. Lines and Levels:

- 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft., 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., 3/8 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 ft., 1/4 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., 3/8 inch in 20 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 ft., or 1/2-inch maximum.
- 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.

#### C. Joints:

- 1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
- 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.

3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus **3/8 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**. Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than **1/8 inch**.
5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than **1/16 inch** from one masonry unit to the next.

### 3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- D. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- E. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- B. Lay CMUs with face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints. At starting course, fully bed entire units, including area under cells.
  1. At anchors and ties, fully bed units and fill cells with mortar as needed to fully embed anchors and ties in mortar.
- C. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer 3/4 inch or more in width.

### 3.6 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing with seismic masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
  1. Fasten screw-attached and seismic anchors through sheathing to wall framing with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
  2. Embed tie sections connector sections and continuous wire in masonry joints.



3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and 24 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 8 inches, around perimeter.
  5. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 25 inches o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches, around perimeter.
  6. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 18 inches o.c. vertically and horizontally. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 24 inches, around perimeter.
- B. Provide not less than **2 inches** of airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of insulation.
1. Keep airspace clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from airspace, to minimize mortar protrusions into airspace. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into airspace.

### 3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete to comply with the following:
1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

### 3.8 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form expansion joints as follows:
1. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
  2. Build flanges of factory-fabricated, expansion-joint units into masonry.
  3. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
  4. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an airspace or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch .
1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.9 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide offset angle supports where indicated and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are indicated without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing as indicated.

3.10 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. Extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least **8 inches**; with upper edge tucked under water-resistive barrier, lapping at least **4 inches**. Fasten upper edge of flexible flashing to sheathing through termination bar.
  - 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing **6 inches** minimum, to edge of next full unit at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing **6 inches** minimum, to edge of next full unit and turn ends up not less than **2 inches** to form end dams.
  - 4. Interlock end joints of sawtooth sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than **1-1/2 inches** or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  - 5. Install metal drip edges and sealant stops with sawtooth sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  - 6. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  - 7. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
  - 8. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are indicated to be built into masonry.
- D. Install weep holes in veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
  - 1. Use specified weep/cavity vent products or open-head joints to form weep holes.
  - 2. Use wicking material to form weep holes above flashing under brick sills. Turn wicking down at lip of sill to be as inconspicuous as possible.
  - 3. Space weep holes **24 inches** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Space weep holes formed from plastic tubing or wicking material **16 inches** o.c.

5. Cover cavity side of weep holes with plastic insect screening at cavities insulated with loose-fill insulation.
  6. Trim wicking material flush with outside face of wall after mortar has set.
- E. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Accessories" Article.
- F. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use specified weep/cavity vent products or open-head joints to form vents.
1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

### 3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
  6. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
1. Crush masonry waste to less than **4 inches** in each dimension.
  2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."

3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within **18 inches** of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 2613

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

|         |                           |
|---------|---------------------------|
| 05 1200 | STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING  |
| 05 3100 | STEEL DECKING             |
| 05 4000 | COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING |
| 05 5000 | METAL FABRICATIONS        |
| 05 5113 | METAL PAN STAIRS          |
| 05 5213 | PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS    |

## SECTION 05 1200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Structural steel
  2. Shear stud connectors.
  3. Shrinkage-resistant grout.
- B. Related Requirements:
  1. Section 05 3100 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear stud connectors through deck.
  2. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame and other steel items not defined as structural steel.
  3. Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for painting requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in ANSI/AISC 303.
- B. Seismic-Force-Resisting System: Elements of structural-steel frame designated as "SFRS" or along grid lines designated as "SFRS" on Drawings, including columns, beams, and braces and their connections.
- C. Heavy Sections: Rolled and built-up sections as follows:
  1. Shapes included in ASTM A6/A6M with flanges thicker than 1-1/2 inches.
  2. Welded built-up members with plates thicker than 2 inches.
  3. Column base plates thicker than 2 inches.
- D. Protected Zone: Structural members or portions of structural members indicated as "protected zone" on Drawings. Connections of structural and nonstructural elements to protected zones are limited.
- E. Demand-Critical Welds: Those welds, the failure of which would result in significant degradation of the strength and stiffness of the seismic-force-resisting system, and which are indicated as "demand critical" or "seismic critical" on Drawings.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
  - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Include embedment Drawings.
  - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
  - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.
  - 5. Identify members and connections of the seismic-force-resisting system.
  - 6. Indicate locations and dimensions of protected zones.
  - 7. Identify demand-critical welds.
  - 8. Identify members not to be shop primed.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer fabricator.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Mill test reports for structural-steel materials, including chemical and physical properties.
- D. Product Test Reports: For the following:
  - 1. Bolts, nuts, and washers, including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  - 2. Direct-tension indicators.
  - 3. Shear stud connectors
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category BU or is accredited by the IAS Fabricator Inspection Program for Structural Steel (Acceptance Criteria 172).
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified Installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. Welders and welding operators performing work on bottom-flange, demand-critical welds shall pass the supplemental welder qualification testing, as required by AWS D1.8/D1.8M. FCAW-S and FCAW-G shall be considered separate processes for welding personnel qualification.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
  - 1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.
- B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.

1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F3125/F3125M, Grade F1852 bolt assemblies and for retesting bolt assemblies after lubrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
  1. ANSI/AISC 303.
  2. ANSI/AISC 341.
  3. ANSI/AISC 360.
  4. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."

### 2.2 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: As indicated.
- B. Hollow Structural Sections (HSS): As indicated.
- C. Channels, Angles: As indicated.
- D. Plate and Bar: As indicated.
- E. Steel Pipe: As indicated.
  1. Weight Class: Extra strong.
  2. Finish: Black except where indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Bolts: As indicated.
- G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

### 2.3 PRIMER

- A. Steel Primer:
  1. SSPC-Paint 25, Type II, zinc oxide, alkyd. linseed oil primer.

### 2.4 SHRINKAGE-RESISTANT GROUT

- A. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

### 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and to ANSI/AISC 360.
  1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
  2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
  3. Identify high-strength structural steel in accordance with ASTM A6/A6M and maintain markings until structural-steel framing has been erected.
  4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.



5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- C. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- D. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted in accordance with SSPC-SP 2.
- E. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.
  1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
  2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

## 2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.

## 2.7 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
  1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

## 2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces, except the following:
  1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
  2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  3. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
  4. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation of Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the following specifications and standards:
  1. SSPC-SP 3.

- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  - 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Prepare a certified survey of existing conditions. Include bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction and structural-steel framing until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

#### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and in accordance with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360.
- B. Baseplates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
  - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 4. Promptly pack shrinkage-resistant grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates, so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for grouting.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within ANSI/AISC 303.
- D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure. Slope roof framing members to slopes indicated on Drawings.

2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect/Structural Engineer. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt and joint type specified.
  1. Joint Type: As indicated.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.
  1. Comply with ANSI/AISC 303 and ANSI/AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
  2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
  3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in ANSI/AISC 303 for mill material.
- C. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 REPAIR

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touchup Painting:
  1. Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  1. Verify structural-steel materials and inspect steel frame joint details.
  2. Verify weld materials and inspect welds.
  3. Verify connection materials and inspect high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  1. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections in accordance with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."
  2. Welded Connections: Visually inspect field welds in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

END OF SECTION 05 1200

## SECTION 05 3100 - STEEL DECKING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Composite floor deck.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight and lightweight structural concrete fill over steel deck.
  - 2. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
  - 3. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Composite floor deck.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.
- C. Test and Evaluation Reports:
  - 1. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:
    - a. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.
  - 2. Research Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES showing compliance with the building code.
- D. Field Quality-Control Submittals:
  - 1. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Qualification Statements: For welding personnel.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with SDI QA/QC and the following welding codes:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

- B. Store products in accordance with SDI MOC3. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck in accordance with AISI S100.

### 2.2 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. ASC Steel Deck; ASC Profiles, LLC.
  2. Verco Decking, Inc.; a Nucor company.
  3. Vulcraft Group; Division of Nucor Corp.
  4. Vulcraft/Verco Group; a division of Nucor Corp.
- B. Fabrication of Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with SDI C, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
  1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50 minimum, with top surface phosphatized and unpainted and underside surface shop primed with manufacturers' standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
  2. Profile Depth: as indicated.
  3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: as indicated.
  4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

### 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI standards for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.

- I. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0747 inch thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch minimum diameter.
- J. Shear Stud Connectors: ASTM A108, AISI C-1015 through C-1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.
- K. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- L. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.
- M. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or MIL-P-21035B, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.
- N. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories in accordance with SDI C, SDI NC, and SDI RD, as applicable; manufacturer's written instructions; and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.
- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
  - 1. Align cellular deck panels over full length of cell runs and align cells at ends of abutting panels.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install in accordance with deck manufacturer's written instructions.

- J. Shear Stud Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Weld using automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FLOOR DECK

- A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:
  - 1. Weld Diameter: 3/4-inch, nominal.
  - 2. Weld Spacing:
    - a. Space and locate welds as indicated.
  - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location.
- B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 12 inches, and as indicated.
- C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 2 inches , with end joints as follows:
  - 1. End Joints: Lapped.
- D. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure in accordance with SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, in accordance with SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

### 3.4 REPAIR

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint in accordance with ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair Painting:
  - 1. Wire brush and clean rust spots, welds, and abraded areas on both surfaces of prime-painted deck immediately after installation, and apply repair paint.
  - 2. Apply repair paint, of same color as adjacent shop-primed deck, to bottom surfaces of deck exposed to view.
  - 3. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of bottom deck surfaces are included in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
  - 4. Wire brushing, cleaning, and repair painting of rust spots, welds, and abraded areas of both deck surfaces are included in Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck in accordance with quality-assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.
    - a. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
  - 2. Steel decking will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

3. Shear Stud Connectors: In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:
  - a. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
  - b. Conduct tests in accordance with requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors that are already tested.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 05 3100



## SECTION 054000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
  - 2. Load-bearing wall framing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
  - 2. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.
  - 1. Design Loads: As indicated.
  - 2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
    - a. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/360.
    - b. Interior Non-Load Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240
    - c. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240.
  - 3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).
  - 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
    - a. Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - 1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
  - 2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer, testing agency.
- E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:
  - 1. Steel sheet.
  - 2. Expansion anchors.
  - 3. Power-actuated anchors.
  - 4. Mechanical fasteners.
  - 5. Vertical deflection clips.
  - 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
  - 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- F. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
  - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
  - 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 3100 "Project Management and Coordination". Verify with manufacturer's representative for correct installation of product for project.
- G. All thicknesses are based upon U.S. Standard Gauge for Uncoated Sheet Metal.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:
  - 1. Allied Studco.
  - 2. AllSteel Products, Inc.
  - 3. California Expanded Metal Products Company.
  - 4. Clark Steel Framing.
  - 5. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
  - 6. Craco Metals Manufacturing, LLC.
  - 7. Custom Stud, Inc.
  - 8. Dale/Incor.
  - 9. Design Shapes in Steel.
  - 10. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
  - 11. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
  - 12. Innovative Steel Systems.
  - 13. MarinoWare; a division of Ware Industries.
  - 14. Quail Run Building Materials, Inc.
  - 15. SCAFCO Corporation.
  - 16. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
  - 17. Steel Construction Systems.
  - 18. Steeler, Inc.
  - 19. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
  - 20. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
  - 1. Grade: ST33H (ST230H), ST50H (ST340H), as required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G60 (Z180), A60 or equivalent.
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection, Drift Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
  - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
  - 2. Coating: G90 (Z275).

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as indicated.

- B. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
    - b. MarinoWare, a division of Ware Industries.
    - c. SCAFCO Corporation
    - d. The Steel Network, Inc.

#### 2.4 LOAD-BEARING AND NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows unless otherwise indicated on the structural drawings:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 18 gauge.
  - 2. Flange Width: 1-5/8 inches.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges, and as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Match steel studs.
  - 2. Flange Width: 1-1/4 inches
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure.

#### 2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
  - 1. Supplementary framing.
  - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
  - 3. Web stiffeners.
  - 4. Anchor clips.
  - 5. End clips.
  - 6. Foundation clips.
  - 7. Gusset plates.
  - 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
  - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
  - 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
  - 11. Backer plates.

#### 2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488

conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
- F. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- G. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, ASTM A 780.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
  - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
  - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  - 3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
    - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
  - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
  1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
  1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
  1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
  2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
    - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and

- b. quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.  
Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.
- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
  - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

#### 3.4 WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends, and at spacings as follows:
  - 1. Anchor Spacing: 32 inches (813 mm) or as indicated.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between the end of wall framing member and the web of track. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom tracks. Space studs as follows:
  - 1. Stud Spacing: Not more than 16 inches.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.
- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.

1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
  2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.



- I. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
    - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
  - J. Install horizontal bridging in stud system, spaced 48 inches (1220 mm) or as indicated. Fasten at each stud intersection.
    - 1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
    - 2. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
    - 3. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - K. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
  - L. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.
- 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
  - C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
  - D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
  - E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION
- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
  - B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 054000

## SECTION 05 5000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
  2. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
  3. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
  4. Steel framing and supports for equipment.
  5. Steel tube reinforcement for low partitions.
  6. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  7. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  8. Shelf angles.
  9. Metal floor plate and supports.
  10. Metal bollards.
  11. Abrasive metal nosings.
  12. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
1. Loose steel lintels.
  2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
  3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- C. Related Requirements:
1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
  2. Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for steel framing, supports, elevator machine beams, hoist beams, divider beams, door frames, and other steel items attached to the structural-steel framing.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  - 2. Fasteners.
  - 3. Shop primers.
  - 4. Shrinkage-resisting grout.
  - 5. Prefabricated building columns.
  - 6. Manufactured metal ladders.
  - 7. Ladder safety cages.
  - 8. Metal bollards.
  - 9. Abrasive metal nosings.
  
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:
  - 1. Steel framing and supports for ceiling-hung toilet compartments.
  - 2. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
  - 3. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
  - 4. Steel tube reinforcement for low partitions.
  - 5. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
  - 6. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
  - 7. Prefabricated building columns.
  - 8. Shelf angles.
  - 9. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel angle corner guards steel edgings .
  - 10. Metal bollards.
  - 11. Loose steel lintels.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
  
- B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - 3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls, floor slabs, decks, and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.
- D. Rolled-Stainless Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A793.
- E. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallicly bonded to steel.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. IKG.
    - b. Ohio Gratings, Inc.
    - c. SlipNOT Metal Safety Flooring, division of Traction Technologies Holdings, LLC.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain floor plate from single source from single manufacturer.
- F. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: **ASTM B209**, Alloy 6061-T6.
- I. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**, Alloy 6063-T6.
- J. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B151/B151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500.

## 2.2 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
  - 1. Provide stainless steel fasteners for fastening aluminum stainless steel or nickel silver.
  - 2. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A307, Grade A**; with hex nuts, **ASTM A563**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, **Grade A325**, Type 3, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; **ASTM A563, Grade DH3**, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless steel bolts, **ASTM F593**; with hex nuts, **ASTM F594**; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, **ASTM A563**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Anchors, General: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

- G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron or ASTM A27/A27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F2329/F2329M.
- H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy stainless steel bolts, **ASTM F593**, and nuts, **ASTM F594**.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting." Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of **3000 psi**.

## 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch** unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

- J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, **1/8 by 1-1/2 inches**, with a minimum **6-inch** embedment and **2-inch** hook, not less than **8 inches** from ends and corners of units and **24 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as recommended by partition manufacturer. Drill or punch bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
  - 1. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
  - 2. Drill or punch girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
  - 3. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at **24 inches** o.c.
- E. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill or punch baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide **1/2-inch** baseplates with four **5/8-inch** anchor bolts and **1/4-inch** top plates.
- F. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- G. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

## 2.6 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive **3/4-inch** bolts, spaced not more than **6 inches** from ends and **24 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately **2 inches** larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize and prime shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- D. Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.

- E. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.
- D. Prime exterior miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer.

## 2.8 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
  - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch-thick, steel plate top.
  - 2. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
  - 3. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
- B. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel or stainless-steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch-thick, steel or stainless-steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard.
- C. Prime steel bollards with zinc-rich primer.

## 2.9 ABRASIVE METAL NOSINGS

- A. Cast-Metal Units: Cast, with an integral-abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
    - b. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
    - c. Barry Pattern & Foundry Co., Inc.
    - d. Safe-T-Metal Company, Inc.
    - e. Wooster Products Inc.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain units from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 4 inches wide with 1/4-inch lip, for casting into concrete.
  - 4. Nosings: Cross-hatched units, 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, for casting into concrete.
  - 5. Treads: Cross-hatched units, full depth of tread with 3/4-by-3/4-inch nosing, for application over bent plate treads or existing stairs.
  - 6. Thresholds: Fluted-saddle-type units, 5 inches wide by 1/2 inch high, with tapered edges.
  - 7. Thresholds: Fluted-interlocking- (hook-strip-) type units, 5 inches wide by 5/8 inch high, with tapered edge.
  - 8. Thresholds: Plain-stepped- (stop-) type units, 5 inches wide by 1/2 inch high, with 1/2-inch step.

- B. Extruded Units: Aluminum, with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
    - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - a. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
      - b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
      - c. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
      - d. Wooster Products Inc.
    - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain units from single source from single manufacturer.
    - 3. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting **1/16 inch** above aluminum extrusion.
    - 4. Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
    - 5. Nosings:
      - a. Square-back units, **3 inches** wide, for casting into concrete steps.
  - C. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
  - D. Drill for mechanical anchors and countersink. Locate holes not more than **4 inches** from ends and not more than **12 inches** o.c., evenly spaced between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Provide closer spacing if recommended by manufacturer.
    - 1. Provide two rows of holes for units more than **5 inches** wide, with two holes aligned at ends and intermediate holes staggered.
  - E. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.
  - F. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units.
- 2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES
- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
  - B. Galvanize bearing and leveling plates.
  - C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.
- 2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS
- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
  - B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span, but not less than **8 inches** unless otherwise indicated.
  - C. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with zinc-rich primer.
- 2.12 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES
- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.



2.13 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.14 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean galvanized surfaces of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.
- C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with primers specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" primers specified in Section 0 9123 "Interior Painting" unless indicated.
- D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Section 09 9600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. Other Steel Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  - 5. Galvanized-Steel Items: SSPC-SP 16, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning of Coated and Uncoated Galvanized Steel, Stainless Steels, and Non-Ferrous Metals."
- E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.15 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do

not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for ceiling hung toilet partitions operable partitions overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.
- C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
  - 1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
- D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installation of Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
  - 1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
  - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
- B. Anchor bollards in concrete in formed or core-drilled holes not less than **42 inches** deep and **3/4 inch** larger than OD of bollard. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with shrinkage-resistant grout; mixed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately **1/8 inch** toward bollard.

- C. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes **3 inches** above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- D. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF NOSINGS, TREADS, AND THRESHOLDS

- A. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.
- C. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

#### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with shrinkage-resistant grout. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

#### 3.6 REPAIRS

- A. Touchup Painting:
  - 1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    - a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil** dry film thickness.
  - 2. Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 5000

## SECTION 05 5113 - METAL PAN STAIRS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs.
  - 1. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
  - 2. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so they do not encroach on required stair width and are within fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
- D. Schedule installation of railings and guards so wall attachments are made only to completed walls.
  - 1. Do not support railings and guards temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Indicate sizes of metal sections, thickness of metals, profiles, holes, and field joints.
  - 3. Include plan at each level.
  - 4. Indicate locations of anchors, weld plates, and blocking for attachment of wall-mounted handrails.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification.
  - 1. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers.

2. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
3. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures.
  - a. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
  1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft.
  2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in.
  3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
  4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing and guard loads in addition to loads specified above.
  5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.

### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

### 2.3 ABRASIVE NOSINGS

- A. Cast-Metal Units: Cast, with an integral abrasive, as-cast finish consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
    - b. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
    - c. Safe-T-Metal Company, Inc.
  2. Configuration: Cross-hatched units, 3 inches wide without lip.
- B. Extruded Units: units with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
    - b. Armstrong Products, Inc.
    - c. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
  2. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch above aluminum extrusion.
  3. Provide solid-abrasive units without ribs.
  4. Nosings: Square-back units, 3 inches wide, without lip.
- C. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.

- D. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units set into concrete.
- E. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units set into concrete.

#### 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings and Guards to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings and guards to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, **ASTM A563**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, **ASTM A563**; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with
- C. Zinc-Rich Primer: Comply with SSPC-Paint 20, Type I-A, Level, and compatible with topcoat.
- D. For galvanized reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

#### 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
  - 1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
  - 2. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
  - 1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch** unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

- F. Weld connections to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
  - 5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 - No evidence of welded joint.
- G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible.
  - 1. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
  - 3. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
  - 4. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

## 2.7 FABRICATION OF STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for Commercial Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Stair Framing:
  - 1. Fabricate stringers of steel plates or steel channels or steel rectangular tubes.
    - a. Stringer Size: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube stringers.
    - c. Finish: Painted.
  - 2. Construct platforms of steel plate or channel or rectangular tube headers and miscellaneous framing members as indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube framing.
    - b. Finish: Painted.
  - 3. Weld stringers to headers; weld framing members to stringers and headers.
  - 4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below.
    - a. Locate hanger rods and struts where they do not encroach on required stair width and are within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
  - 5. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **0.067 inch**.
  - 1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold -rolled steel sheet.
  - 2. Attach risers and subtreads to stringers with brackets made of steel angles or bars. Weld brackets to stringers and attach metal pans to brackets by welding, riveting, or bolting.
  - 3. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
  - 4. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
  - 5. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal pan subtreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.
  - 6. Provide epoxy-resin-filled treads, reinforced with glass fibers, with non-slip-concrete aggregate finish to tread surface.
  - 7. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subtreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.
    - a. Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct subplatforms with flat metal under surfaces to produce smooth soffits.

- D. Abrasive-Coating-Finished, Formed-Metal Stairs: Form risers, treads, and platforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than **0.097 inch**.
  - 1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, hot-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Directly weld risers and treads to stringers; locate welds on underside of stairs.
  - 3. Provide platforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as treads. Weld platforms to platform framing.
  - 4. Finish tread and platform surfaces with manufacturer's standard epoxy-bonded abrasive finish.

## 2.8 FINISHES

- A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated, ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of floors, bearing surfaces and locations of bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.
  - 1. For wall-mounted railings, verify locations of concealed reinforcement within gypsum board and plaster assemblies.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL PAN STAIRS

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction.
  - 1. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Grouted Baseplates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates.
    - a. Clean bottom surface of plates.
    - b. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts.
    - c. Tighten anchor bolts after supported members have been positioned and plumbed.
    - d. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
    - e. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain.
      - 1) Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure.



- 2) Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
  - E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.
    1. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
    2. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
    3. Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.
  - F. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
    1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete.
    2. Center nosings on tread width.
  - G. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.
  - H. Install precast terrazzo treads according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.3 REPAIR
- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
    1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum **2.0-mil** dry film thickness.
  - B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 5113

## SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Steel pipe and tube railings.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
  - 1. Post-installed anchors.
  - 2. Handrail brackets.
  - 3. Bituminous paint.
  - 4. Nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
  - 5. Anchoring cement.
  - 6. Paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design, including mechanical finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - 1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters, including finish.
  - 2. Fittings and brackets.
  - 3. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
    - a. Show method of connecting and finishing members at intersections.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of railings from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt and that provides 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Pisor Industries
  2. R & B Wagner, Inc.
  3. Sharpe Products
  4. CL Laurence
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Tubing: ASTM A554, Grade MT 304.
- D. Pipe: ASTM A312/A312M, Grade TP 304.
- E. Castings: ASTM A743/A743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 20.
- F. Plate and Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. Fastener Materials:
1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railing Components: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM F1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.

2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M for zinc coating.
  3. Stainless Steel Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel fasteners.
  4. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
  3. Provide tamper-resistant flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193.
1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select in accordance with AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
1. For aluminum and stainless-steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
- B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting." Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- F. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
- G. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.
- H. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting." Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."

- I. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
- J. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.
- K. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion, complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.
- L. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- M. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  - 1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated on Drawings, provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
  - 1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
  - 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.
  - 1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately **1/32 inch** unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.
  - 1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
  - 2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #2 welds; ornamental quality with no evidence of a welded joint
- I. Form changes in direction as follows:
  - 1. By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.

- J. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is **1/4 inch** or less.
- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work.
  - 1. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
  - 2. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

## 2.6 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1 for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.
  - 1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
  - 2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
  - 3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
  - 4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of **1/16 inch in 3 feet**.
  - 6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed **1/4 inch in 12 feet**.
- B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
  - 1. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article, whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve, extending **2 inches** beyond joint on either side; fasten internal sleeve securely to one side; and locate joint within **6 inches** of post.

### 3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Form or core-drill holes not less than **5 inches** deep and **3/4 inch** larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material.
- C. Leave anchorage joint exposed with **1/8-inch** buildup, sloped away from post.
- D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type, as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - 1. For steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
  - 2. For aluminum railings, attach posts as indicated, using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  - 3. For stainless steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to supporting surfaces.
- E. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit stainless-steel sockets cast in concrete.

### 3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with brackets on underside of rails connected to railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends, using nonwelded connections.
- C. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with **1-1/2-inch** clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.
  - 1. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.

3. For steel-framed partitions, fasten brackets directly to steel framing or concealed steel reinforcements, using self-tapping screws of size and type required to support structural loads.

3.6 REPAIR

- A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period, so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 055213



**DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTIC AND COMPOSITES**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 06 1000 | ROUGH CARPENTRY                               |
| 06 1600 | SHEATHING                                     |
| 06 4116 | PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS |

## SECTION 06 1000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  2. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  3. Plywood backing panels.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than **2 inches nominal** size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of **2 inches nominal** size or greater but less than **5 inches nominal** size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.
- E. Timber: Lumber of **5 inches nominal** size or greater in least dimension.
- F. Lumber grading agencies, and abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
  2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
  3. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
  4. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
  5. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
  3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5664.
  4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  - 2. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber:
  - 1. Boards: 19 percent.
  - 2. Dimension Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Timber: 19 percent.
- C. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

#### 2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT TREATMENT

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials are to comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame

front not extending more than **10.5 feet** beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Treatment is not to promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Exterior Type: Treated materials are to comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber is to be tested according to ASTM D5664 and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated according to ASTM D6841.

C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.

E. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

1. Blocking.
2. Nailers.
3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
4. Cants.
5. Furring.

B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any of the following species:

1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
2. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
3. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
4. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
5. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
6. Northern species; NLGA.

C. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:

1. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
2. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
4. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

- E. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- F. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, , fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than **3/4-inch** nominal thickness.

## 2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than **1-1/2 inches** into wood substrate.
  - 1. For pressure-preservative-treated wood, use stainless steel fasteners.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01 as appropriate for the substrate.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- C. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches** o.c.
- D. Comply with AWWA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.

- F. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
  - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

END OF SECTION 06 1000

## SECTION 06 1600 - SHEATHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Wall sheathing.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing requirements and installation, special details, transitions, mockups, air-leakage testing, protection, and work scheduling that covers air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
  - 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5516.
  - 4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
  - 5. For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, include manufacturer's technical data and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assemblies.
  - 1. Show locations and extent of sheathing, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
  - 2. Include details for sheathing joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
  - 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, indicating compliance with specified requirements, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1. Wood-preservative-treated plywood.

2. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.
3. Foam-plastic sheathing.
4. Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested according to ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

### 2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Gypsum.
    - b. Continental Building Products, LLC.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - d. National Gypsum Company.
    - e. USG Corporation.
  2. Type and Thickness: Type X, **5/8 inch** thick.
  3. Size: **48 by 96 inches** for vertical installation.
- B. Air-Barrier and Water-Resistant Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M, Type X, coated fiberglass mat gypsum sheathing with integral weather-resistant barrier and air barrier complying with ASTM E2178.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - b. USG Corporation.
  2. Thickness: **5/8 inch** thick.
  3. Size: **48 by 96 inches** for vertical installation.
  4. Edges: Square.
  5. Flashing and Transitions Strips: As acceptable to sheathing manufacturer.
  6. Air Permeance: Maximum **0.004 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft.** pressure difference when tested according to ASTM E2178.
  7. Vapor Permeance: Minimum **20 perms** when tested according to ASTM E96/E96M, Desiccant Method, Procedure A.
  8. Sheathing Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (0.2 L/s x sq. m of surface area at 75 Pa) when tested according to ASTM E2357.
  9. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Complies with NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
  10. UV Resistance: Can be exposed to sunlight for 30 days according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  11. Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination



mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by sheathing manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.

- C. Cementitious Backer Units: ASTM C1325, Type A.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. C-Cure.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. FinPan, Inc.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  - 2. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.

### 2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. For roof parapet and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.
- E. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
  - 1. For steel framing less than **0.0329 inch** thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
  - 2. For steel framing from **0.033 to 0.112 inch** thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C954.
- F. Screws for Fastening Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
  - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall parapet and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  2. Install panels with a **3/8-inch** gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  3. Install panels with a **1/4-inch** gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent panels without forcing. Abut ends over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent panels not less than one stud spacing. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
  1. Space fasteners approximately **8 inches** o.c. and set back a minimum of **3/8 inch** from edges and ends of panels.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.
  1. Space fasteners approximately **8 inches** o.c. and set back a minimum of **3/8 inch** from edges and ends of panels.
- E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

### 3.3 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

END OF SECTION 06 1600

## SECTION 06 4116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.
- 2. Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets that are not concealed within other construction.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

- B. Shop Drawings: For plastic-laminate-faced architectural cabinets.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- 2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
- 3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.

- C. Samples for Verification: For the following:

- 1. Plastic Laminates: 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required.
- 2. Corner Pieces:

- a. Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails and at exposed end pieces, 18 inches (450 mm) high by 18 inches (450 mm) wide by 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
  - b. Miter joints for standing trim.
3. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification data: For Installer and Fabricator.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- C. Established Dimensions: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, establish dimensions for areas where cabinets are to fit. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
- B. Grade: Premium.
- C. Type of Construction: Frameless.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.

- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS FOR PLASTIC-LAMINATES

- A. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: PL1 - Wilsonart. Refer to Finish Schedule in drawings.
- B. Basis-of-Design Manufacturer: PL2 - Formica. Refer to Finish Schedule in drawings.
- C. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
  - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
  - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
  - 4. Edges: Match surface.
  - 5. Pattern Direction: Vertically for doors and fixed panels, horizontally for drawer fronts.
- D. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:
  - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
    - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC edge banding, 0.12 inch (3 mm) thick, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
    - b. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
  - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Thermoset decorative panels with PVC or polyester edge banding.
  - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Thermoset decorative panels.
- E. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.
- F. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.
- G. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.
  - 1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners.
- H. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As indicated on Construction Drawings Finish Schedule.

## HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware Quality: ANSI/BHMA A156.9, Grade 1
- B. Bumper: Clear rubber.

- C. Concealed Hinge for Reveal Overlay: Wrap-around 2-3/4 inch fixed pin, five knuckle, 270 degree swing, hospital type.
  - D. Magnetic Catch: heavy-duty magnetic with a maximum 5 lb., minimum 3 lb. pull.
  - E. Drawer Glides: Knap & Vogt or equivalent by Accuride, full extension type as follows:
    - 1. No. 8405 at 6-inch and less.
    - 2. No. 8505 at drawers greater than 6 inches deep.
  - E. Locks: Olympus, 700SC and 800SC. Provide locks where shown. Key locks separately. Provide 3 keys per lock.
  - G. Multiple hole adjustable shelf support:
    - 1. Each shelf shall have 5 mm nickel plated steel, plug-in, retainer type security pin support clips let into shelf bottoms to prevent sliding.
    - 2. Drill shelf clip holes at 1-1/4 inch on center, full height of cabinet, two columns per cabinet side.
    - 3. Provide four support clips at each shelf indicated, six at shelves over 42 inches in length.
  - H. Recessed standards adjustable shelf support: Knap & Vogt or equivalent:
    - 1. Standard: No. 255AL natural or clear anodized aluminum, matching fastener
    - 2. Shelf Support: 256AL NAT
  - I. For concealed hardware provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements of ANSI/BHMA A156.9.
  - I. Drawer Pulls/Handles: Mockett DP57D
    - 1. 6-3/4" long, 3/8" diameter, 1-13/32" projection.
  - J. Grommets for Cable Passage: 2-inch (51-mm) OD, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
    - 1. Color: To be selected from Manufacturer's standard range. Provide physical samples for selection.
  - K. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
    - 1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
  - L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.
- 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
  - B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.
  - C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Contact cement.
    - 1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.
- B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times architectural cabinet fabrication will be complete.
  - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.
- C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm) using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 06 4116



**DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| 07 1113    | BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING                   |
| 07 1900    | WATER REPELLENTS                          |
| 07 2100    | THERMAL INSULATION                        |
| 07 2500    | WEATHER BARRIER.                          |
| 07 4213.23 | METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL WALL PANELS      |
| 07 5419    | POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING          |
| 07 6200    | SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM             |
| 07 7200    | ROOF ACCESSORIES                          |
| 07 8413    | PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING                  |
| 07 8446    | FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS              |
| 07 9200    | JOINT SEALANTS                            |
| 07 9513.13 | INTERIOR EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES |

## SECTION 07 1113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
  2. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. APOC, Inc; a division of Gardner Industries.
  2. Brewer Company (The).
  3. Henry Company.
  4. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D4586/D4586M, Type I, Class 1, fibered.
- C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D4479/D4479M, Type I, fibered or nonfibered.

#### 2.2 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brewer Company (The).
  2. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
  3. Mar-flex Waterproofing & Building Products.
  4. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D1227, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D1227, Type II, Class 1.
- D. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D1227, Type III, Class 1.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D41/D41M.
- C. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, maximum surface moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for dampproofing application.
- B. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- C. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any.
- D. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  - 2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of **6 inches** over outside face of footing.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing **12 inches** onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  - 2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where indicated as "reinforced," by embedding an **8-inch-** wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.

- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least **1/4 inch** onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
  - 1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
  - 2. Lap dampproofing at least **1/4 inch** onto shelf angles supporting veneer.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than **1.25 gal./100 sq. ft.** for first coat and **1 gal./100 sq. ft.** for second coat.

#### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations and Parged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than **1.5 gal./100 sq. ft.** for first coat and **1 gal./100 sq. ft.** for second coat.

#### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
  - 1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
  - 2. Install protection course within 24 hours of dampproofing installation (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

#### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Correct dampproofing that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply dampproofing.

END OF SECTION 07 1113

## SECTION 07 1900 - WATER REPELLENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
  - 1. Cast-in-place concrete.
  - 2. Concrete unit masonry.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry" for integral water-repellent admixture for unit masonry assemblies.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 3. Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.
  - 4. Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2 that specifies water repellents approved by MPI, with the proposed product highlighted.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Applicator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of water repellent.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

#### 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing of water repellents on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies.
  - 1. In addition to verifying performance requirements, use mockups to verify manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure and optimum rates of product application to substrates.

2. Propose changes to materials and methods to suit Project.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be tested.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:
1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
  2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
  3. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F and will remain so for 24 hours.
  4. Substrate is not frozen and substrate-surface temperature is above 40 deg F and below 100 deg F.
  5. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
  6. Not less than 24 hours have passed since surfaces were last wet.
  7. Windy conditions do not exist that might cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.
  8. .

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

- A. Water Repellents: Clear-drying, water-based silicone emulsion for weatherproofing, and primarily non-sacrificial graffiti protection for concrete block and other porous masonry materials protecting them from graffiti attacks. No film formers are allowed.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Sure Klean Weather Seal Blok-Guard & Graffiti Control or Control II as manufactured by Prosoco.
    - a. a. Applicator to use correct product for cool or warm temperature as recommended by Prosoco.
  2. Approved equal by Architect prior to bidding.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.

3. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. New Construction and Repairs: Allow concrete and other cementitious materials to age before application of water repellent, according to repellent manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions

1. Cast-in-Place Concrete Precast Concrete and Concrete Unit Masonry: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857.

C. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.

D. Coordinate with joint sealants: Do not apply water repellents until joint sealants have been installed and cured.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

A. Apply coating of water repellent on surfaces to be treated using 15 psi- pressure spray with a fan-type spray nozzle to the point of saturation. Apply coating in dual passes of uniform, overlapping strokes (referred to as "wet-on-wet"). Remove excess material; do not allow material to puddle beyond saturation. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure unless otherwise indicated.

1. Unpainted Concrete: Apply at rate as recommended by manufacturer.

2. Concrete Unit Masonry (Exterior): Apply at rate of 75-100 sq. ft. a gallon.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

C. Allow two to three minutes absorption time between wet-on-wet coats.

END OF SECTION 07 1900

## SECTION 07 2100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
  - 2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
  - 3. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
  - 4. Loose-fill insulation.
  - 5. Closed Cell insulation.
  - 6. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 5419 "Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board insulation.
  - 2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
  - 3. Mineral-wool blanket insulation.
  - 4. Loose-fill insulation.
  - 5. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Research Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
  - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
  - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
  - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded Polystyrene Board Insulation, Type IV: ASTM C578, Type IV, 25-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Kingspan Insulation Limited.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  4. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
  5. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

### 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
  4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.
- B. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Reinforced-Foil Faced: ASTM C665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

### 2.3 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type IA (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Owens Corning.
    - c. ROCKWOOL.
  2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation **12 inches** and wider in width.

#### 2.4 FOAMED- IN-PLACE INSULATION

- A. Closed-Cell Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM 1029, Type II, with maximum flame-spread and smoke developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Icynene MD-C-200 closed-cell spray polyurethane foam or product by one of the following manufacturers:
    - a. BASF Corp.
    - b. Bayer MaterialScience
    - c. Dow Chemical Company.
    - d. Johns Manville.
  2. Nominal density of 2.0 lb/cu ft. per ASTM D 1622.
  3. Insulation used in stud cavities from floor to deck.

#### 2.5 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.
  2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, **0.030 inch** thick by **2 inches** square.
  3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; **0.105 inch** in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- B. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco.

#### 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E84.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.

- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Install insulation with manufacturer's R-value label exposed after insulation is installed.
- D. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- E. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of **24 inches** below exterior grade line.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
  - 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
  - 3. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.
  - 4. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
  - 5. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately **24 inches** o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions, and with faces flush.
  - 2. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
  - 3. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 04 2000 "Unit Masonry."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  3. Maintain **3-inch** clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed **96 inches**, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
    - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward interior of construction as indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately **2.5 lb/cu. ft.**
  2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Loose-Fill Insulation: Apply according to ASTM C1015 and manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.
  2. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with CIMA's Bulletin #2, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."
- D. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked.
  2. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes.
  - B. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 2100

## SECTION 07 2500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Building wrap.
  - 2. Flexible flashing.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 06 1600 "Sheathing" for sheathing joint and penetration treatment.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. For building wrap, include data on air and water-vapor permeance based on testing according to referenced standards.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek CommercialWrap.
    - b. Pactiv, Inc.; GreenGuard Classic Wrap.
    - c. Raven Industries Inc.; Fortress Pro Weather Protective Barrier.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Not less than 20 perms (1150 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) per ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
  - 3. Allowable UV Exposure Time: Not less than three months.
- B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

#### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, thickness of not less than 20 mil. Provide flexible flashing as recommended by manufacturer of building wrap.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); DuPont Flashing Tape.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Butyl Self Adhered Flashing.
    - c. Pactiv, Inc.; GreenGuard Flashing.
    - d. Protecto Wrap Company; BT-25 XL.
    - e. Raven Industries Inc.; Fortress Flashshield.
- B. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.
- C. Nails and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  - 2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

#### 3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 07 2500

## SECTION 07 5419 - POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Adhered polyvinyl chloride (PVC) roofing system.
  - 2. Mechanically fastened, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) roofing system.
  - 3. Roof insulation.
  - 4. Walkways.
  - 5. Protection Board.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
  - 2. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
  - 3. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to work of this Section.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.
- B. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's

- representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
  5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
  7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:
  1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
  2. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  3. Flashing details at penetrations.
  4. Tapered insulation thickness and slopes.
  5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
  6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
  7. Tie-in with air barrier.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  1. Roof membrane and flashing, of color required.
  2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
  1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
    - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
  2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, tests performed by independent qualified testing agency indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.



1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, and other components of roofing system.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
  - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
  - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272/D4272M, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. FM Approvals' RoofNav Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials shall comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system, and shall be listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals Certification markings.
  - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90.
- D. SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials shall comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system, and shall be listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roof assembly identical for that specified for this Project.
  - 1. Wind Uplift Load Capacity: 90 psf.
- E. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI): Three-year-aged SRI not less than 64 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.

### 2.2 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

- A. PVC Sheet: ASTM D4434/D4434M, Type II, polyester scrim reinforced.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Sika Sarnafil – S327 with Rhinobond attachment for mechanically fastened roof areas and Sika Sarnafil G410 for adhered roof areas or an approved comparable product by one of the followings:
    - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
    - b. Johns Manville.
  - 2. Thickness: 60 mils
  - 3. Exposed Face Color: White.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer.

### 2.3 PROTECTION BOARD

- A. Hardboard: Coverboard board thickness 1/4" Dens Deck or Securerock.

### 2.4 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
  - 1. Adhesives and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard sheet flashing of same material, type, reinforcement, thickness, and color as PVC sheet.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- D. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
  - 1. Size: Not less than 4-inch diameter.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.
- F. Water-Based, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard water-based, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- G. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- H. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

## 2.5 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by PVC roof membrane manufacturer, approved for use in FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assemblies.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 2, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
  - 1. Compressive Strength: 20 psi.
  - 2. Size: 48 by 48 inches 48 by 96 inches.
  - 3. Thickness:
    - a. Base Layer: 2.6 inch.
    - b. Upper Layer: 2.6 inch.
- C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.
  - 1. Material: Match roof insulation.
  - 2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Slope:
    - a. Roof Field: 1/4 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

## 2.6 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

## 2.7 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately **3/16 inch** thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
  - 1. Size: Approximately **36 by 60 inches**.
  - 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 05 3100 "Steel Decking."
  - 4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  - 5. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours of performing tests.
    - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.
- D. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Decking:
  - 1. Install base layer of insulation with end joints staggered not less than **12 inches** in adjacent rows.
    - a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
    - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than **1/4 inch** in width.
    - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus **24 inches**.
      - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
    - e. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch** with insulation.
    - f. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
    - g. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation and substrate board using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to decks.
      - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
      - 2) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - 2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than **12 inches** from previous layer of insulation.
    - a. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than **12 inches** in adjacent rows.
    - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than **1/4 inch** in width.
    - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus **24 inches**.
      - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
    - e. Fill gaps exceeding **1/4 inch** with insulation.
    - f. Cut and fit insulation within **1/4 inch** of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
    - g. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
    - h. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
      - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.

- C. Accurately align roof membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- D. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.
- E. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
  - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
  - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MECHANICALLY FASTENED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Mechanically fasten roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. For in-splice attachment, install roof membrane with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Mechanically fasten or adhere roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- F. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- G. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
  - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
  - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- H. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
    - a. Locations indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Provide **6-inch** clearance between adjoining pads.
  - 3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following tests:
  - 1. Testing agency shall prepare survey report indicating locations of initial discontinuities, if any.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
- D. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

### 3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.11 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
  - 1. Owner: Canyons School District
  - 2. Address: 9361 South 300 East, Sandy, Utah 84070
  - 3. Building Name: Corner Canyon High School – Fieldhouse & Soccer Fields
  - 4. Address: 12943 South 700 East, Draper, Utah 84020
  - 5. Acceptance Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6. Warranty Period: 20 years.
  - 7. Expiration Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
  - 1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
    - a. lightning;
    - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 70 mph;
    - c. fire;
    - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
    - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
    - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
    - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
  - 2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
  - 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
  - 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.



5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

1. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Name: \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Title: \_\_\_\_\_.

END OF SECTION 07 5419

## SECTION 07 6200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Manufactured reglets.
  2. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
  3. Formed equipment support flashing.
  4. Formed overhead-piping safety pans.
- B. Related Requirements:
  1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
  2. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  1. Review construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  2. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof-penetration flashing, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect sheet metal flashing and trim.
  3. Review requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  4. Review sheet metal flashing observation and repair procedures after flashing installation.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each of the following
  1. Underlayment materials.
  2. Elastomeric sealant.
  3. Butyl sealant.
  4. Epoxy seam sealer.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **12 inches** long by actual width.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
  - 1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
  - 1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
  - 2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
  - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

#### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
  - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.
- C. Lead Sheet: ASTM B749 lead sheet.

### 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet Underlayment: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer in accordance with underlayment manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Carlisle WIP Products; a brand of Carlisle Construction Materials.
    - b. GCP Applied Technologies Inc.
    - c. Henry Company.
    - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, a Drexel Metals Company.
    - e. Owens Corning.
    - f. Protecto Wrap Company.
    - g. SDP Advanced Polymer Products Inc.
  - 2. Source Limitations: Obtain underlayment from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 3. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970/D1970M; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.

2. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
- C. Solder:
  1. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead or Grade Sn60, 60 percent tin and 40 percent lead.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape **1/2 inch** wide and **1/8 inch** thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
  1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances:
  1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet** on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
  2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.
- E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- F. Seams:
  1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use.

- G. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Copings: Fabricate in minimum **96-inch-** long, but not exceeding **12-foot-** long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1. Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Galvanized Steel: **0.040 inch** thick.
- B. Roof and Roof-to-Wall Transition Expansion-Joint Cover: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.034 inch** thick.
- C. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch** thick.
- D. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch** thick.
- E. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.022 inch** thick.
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch** thick.

## 2.7 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum **96-inch-** long, but not exceeding **12-foot-** long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend **6 inches** beyond each side of wall openings; and form with **2-inch-** high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Copper-Clad Stainless Steel: **0.016 inch** thick.
- B. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: **0.028 inch** thick.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.028 inch** thick.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1. Galvanized Steel: **0.040 inch** thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Install fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder welds sealant.
3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than **12 inches** o.c.
6. Space individual cleats not more than **12 inches** apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.

1. Coat concealed side of sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Space movement joints at maximum of **10 feet** with no joints within **24 inches** of corner or intersection.
2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.

F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.

1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than **1 inch** into sealant.
  - b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.

- c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
- d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
  - 1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter.
1. Pretin edges of sheets with solder to width of 1-1/2 inches; however, reduce pretinning where pretinned surface would show in completed Work.
  2. Do not solder metallic-coated steel sheet.
  3. Do not use torches for soldering.
  4. Heat surfaces to receive solder, and flow solder into joint.
    - a. Fill joint completely.
    - b. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOF-DRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. Install sheet metal roof-drainage items to produce complete roof-drainage system in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof-drainage system.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF ROOF FLASHINGS

- A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard.
1. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes.
  2. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing:
1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
  2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- C. Copings:
1. Install roof edge flashings in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.
  2. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces in accordance with recommendations in FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified FM Approvals' listing for required windstorm classification.
- D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless steel draw band and tighten.
- E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing.
1. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing.
  2. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing.
  3. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches.
  4. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.



- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING

- A. Equipment Support Flashing:
  - 1. Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment.
  - 2. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans:
  - 1. Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of **1/4 inch in 20 feet** on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within **1/8-inch** offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.
- C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 6200

## SECTION 07 7200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Roof curbs.
  - 2. Equipment supports.
  - 3. Roof hatches.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
  - 2. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
  - 1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
  - 2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
  - 3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
  - 4. Required clearances.

- B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

### 2.2 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Adaptable Air Products.
    - b. AES Industries, Inc.
    - c. Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
    - d. Conn-Fab Sales, Inc.
    - e. Curbs Plus, Inc.
    - f. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - g. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    - h. KCC International Inc.
    - i. Kingspan Light + Air, North America.
    - j. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
    - k. LMCurbs.
    - l. Louvers & Dampers, Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - m. Metallic Products Corp.
    - n. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - o. Pate Company (The).
    - p. Plenums Incorporated.
    - q. Roof Curb Systems.
    - r. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - s. Roof Products, Inc.
    - t. Sunoptics Skylights and Daylighting Systems; Acuity Brands International, Inc.
    - u. Thybar Corporation.
    - v. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

- C. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.079 inch thick.
  - 1. Finish: Factory finished.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  
- D. Construction:
  - 1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
  - 2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  - 3. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange or by use of leveler frame.
  - 5. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surface of perimeter curb is level. Equip unit with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
  - 6. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch- thick glass-fiber board insulation.
  - 7. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer along top flange of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.

### 2.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Equipment Supports: Internally reinforced perimeter metal equipment supports capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads between structural supports, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, spanning between structural supports; capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed structure-mounting flange at bottom.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Adaptable Air Products.
    - b. AES Industries, Inc.
    - c. Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
    - d. Conn-Fab Sales, Inc.
    - e. Curbs Plus, Inc.
    - f. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - g. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    - h. KCC International Inc.
    - i. Lloyd Industries, Inc.
    - j. LMCurbs.
    - k. Louvers & Dampers, Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
    - l. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - m. Pate Company (The).
    - n. Plenums Incorporated.
    - o. Roof Curb Systems.
    - p. Roof Products and Systems (RPS); a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - q. Roof Products, Inc.
    - r. Thybar Corporation.
    - s. Vent Products Co., Inc.
  
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
  
- C. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.079 inch thick.
  - 1. Finish: Factory finished.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- D. Construction:
1. Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
  2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  3. Fabricate equipment supports to minimum height of **12 inches** above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Babcock-Davis.
    - b. BILCO Company (The).
    - c. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - d. Kingspan Light + Air, North America.
    - e. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - f. O'Keeffe's Inc.
    - g. Pate Company (The).
    - h. Precision Ladders, LLC.
- B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 48 by 48 inches.
- C. Loads: Minimum **40-lbf/sq. ft.** external live load and **20-lbf/sq. ft.** internal uplift load.
- D. Hatch Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
1. Thickness: **0.079 inch.**
  2. Finish: Factory prime coating.
  3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Construction:
1. Insulation: **1-inch-** thick, glass-fiber board.
    - a. R-Value: 4.3 according to ASTM C1363.
  2. Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
  3. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  4. Hatch Lid: Glazed, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  5. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
  6. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  7. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of **12 inches** above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is constant. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
- F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, stainless steel spring latch with turn handles, stainless steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than **84 inches.**
  2. Provide remote-control operation.
- G. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation;

attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Height: **42 inches** above finished roof deck.
2. Posts and Rails: Galvanized-steel pipe, **1-1/4 inches** in diameter or galvanized-steel tube, **1-5/8 inches** in diameter.
3. Flat Bar: Galvanized steel, **2 inches** high by **3/8 inch** thick.
4. Maximum Opening Size: System constructed to prevent passage of a sphere **21 inches** in diameter.
5. Chain Passway Barrier: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
6. Post and Rail Tops and Ends: Weather resistant, closed or plugged with prefabricated end fittings.
7. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members.
8. Fabricate joints exposed to weather to be watertight.
9. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, finished to match railing system.
10. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.5 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, **G90** coating designation.
  1. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of **0.2 mil**.
  2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: After cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat to a minimum dry film thickness of **2 mils**.
- B. Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A500/A500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, galvanized.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C726, nominal density of **3 lb/cu. ft.**, thermal resistivity of **4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F**, thickness as indicated.
- C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPA C2; not less than **1-1/2 inches** thick.
- D. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.
2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
3. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.

- E. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.

## 2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
1. Coat concealed side of roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
  3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.

- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- E. Roof-Hatch Installation:
  - 1. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
  - 2. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  - 3. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Roof Walkway Installation:
  - 1. Verify that locations of access and servicing points for roof-mounted equipment are served by locations of roof walkways.
- G. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A780/A780M.
- B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting."
- C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Clean off excess sealants.
- E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 7200



## SECTION 07 8413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes through-penetration firestop systems for penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 21 for fire-suppression piping penetrations.
  - 2. Division 22 and 23 Sections specifying duct and piping penetrations.
  - 3. Division 26, 27, and 28 Sections specifying cable and conduit penetrations.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: For penetrations through fire-resistance-rated constructions, including both empty openings and openings containing penetrating items, provide through-penetration firestop systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated.
  - 1. Only tested firestop systems shall be used in specific locations as follows:
    - a. Penetrations for the passage of duct, cable, cable tray, conduit piping, electrical busways and raceways through fire-rated vertical barriers (walls and partitions), horizontal barriers (floor/ceiling assemblies), and vertical service shaft walls and partitions.
    - b. Safing slot gaps between edge of floor slabs and curtain walls.
    - c. Openings between structurally separate sections of walls or floors.
    - d. Gaps between the top of the walls and ceiling or roof assemblies.
    - e. Expansion joints in walls and floors.
    - f. Openings and penetrations in fire-rated partitions or walls containing fire doors.
    - g. Openings around structural members which penetrate floors or walls.
- B. Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with the following ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479:
  - 1. F-Rated Systems: Provide through-penetration firestop systems with F-ratings indicated, but not less than that equaling or exceeding fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, traffic, moisture, and physical damage, provide products that, after curing, do not deteriorate when exposed to these conditions both during and after construction.

1. For piping penetrations for plumbing and wet-pipe sprinkler systems, provide moisture-resistant through-penetration firestop systems.
  2. For floor penetrations with annular spaces exceeding 4 inches (100 mm) in width and exposed to possible loading and traffic, provide firestop systems capable of supporting floor loads involved, either by installing floor plates or by other means.
  3. For penetrations involving insulated piping, provide through-penetration firestop systems not requiring removal of insulation.
- D. For through-penetration firestop systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each through-penetration firestop system, show each type of construction condition penetrated, relationships to adjoining construction, and type of penetrating item. Include firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency that evidences compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each through-penetration firestop system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
  2. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular through-penetration firestop condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- C. Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule: Indicate locations of each through-penetration firestop system, along with the following information:
1. Types of penetrating items.
  2. Types of constructions penetrated, including fire-resistance ratings and, where applicable, thicknesses of construction penetrated.
  3. Through-penetration firestop systems for each location identified by firestop design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating through-penetration firestop system complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products.

1.5 INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Engage an experienced Installer who is certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by the firestopping manufacturer as having been provided the necessary training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. A supplier's willingness to sell its firestopping products to the Contractor or to an Installer engaged by the Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on the buyer.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in installing through-penetration firestop systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its through-penetration firestop system products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- B. **Installation Responsibility:** Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.
- C. **Source Limitations:** Obtain through-penetration firestop systems, for each kind of penetration and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. **Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:** Provide through-penetration firestop systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:
  - 1. Firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL, or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for firestop systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Through-penetration firestop systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Part 1 Performance Requirements" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Through-penetration firestop system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Through-penetration firestop systems correspond to those indicated by reference to through-penetration firestop system designations listed by the following:
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
- E. **Preinstallation Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver through-penetration firestop system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life if applicable, qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for through-penetration firestop systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. **Environmental Limitations:** Do not install through-penetration firestop systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Do not use materials that contain flammable solvents.
- C. During installation, provide masking and drop cloths to prevent firestopping materials from contaminating any adjacent surfaces.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate through-penetration firestop systems.
- C. Do not cover up through-penetration firestop system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until each installation has been examined by Owner's inspecting agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the through-penetration firestop systems indicated for each application in the Through-Penetration Firestop System Schedule at the end of Part 3. Specification based on Hilti, Inc.:
  - 1. Nelson Firestop Products.
  - 2. NUCO Inc.
  - 3. RectorSeal Corporation (The).
  - 4. Specified Technologies Inc.
  - 5. 3M; Fire Protection Products Division.
  - 6. USG Corporation.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide through-penetration firestop systems that are compatible with one another; with the substrates forming openings; and with the items, if any, penetrating through-penetration firestop systems, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Accessories: Provide components for each through-penetration firestop system that are needed to install fill materials. Fill materials are those referred to in directories of referenced testing and inspecting agencies as "fill", "void", or "cavity" materials. Use only components specified by through-penetration firestop system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestop systems indicated.
  - 1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-/rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fillers for sealants.
  - 2. Temporary forming materials.
  - 3. Collars.
  - 4. Steel sleeves.
- C. Firestopping Materials are either "cast-in-place" (integral with concrete placement) or "post installed." Provide cast-in-place firestop devices prior to concrete placement.

## 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide through-penetration firestop systems containing the types of fill materials indicated.
- B. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- C. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that after cure do not re-emulsify during exposure to moisture.
- D. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- E. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized steel sheet.
- F. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- G. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- H. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- I. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives.
- J. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- K. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces requiring a nonslumping, gunnable sealant, unless indicated firestop system limits use to nonsag grade for both opening conditions.
  - 2. Grade for Horizontal Surfaces: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces.
  - 3. Grade for Vertical Surfaces: Nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and other surfaces.

## 2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with through-penetration firestop system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Verification of Conditions: Examine areas and conditions under which work is to be performed and identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely completion.
  - 1. Verify penetrations are properly sized and in suitable condition for application of materials.
  - 2. Surfaces to which firestop materials will be applied shall be free of dirt, grease, oil, rust, laitance, release agents, water repellents, and any other substances that may affect proper adhesion.
  - 3. Provide masking and temporary covering to prevent soiling of adjacent surfaces by firestopping materials.
  - 4. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for temperature and humidity conditions before, during, and after installation of firestopping.
  - 5. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location and proper selection of cast-in-place Firestop Devices with trade responsible for the work. Ensure device is installed before placement of concrete.
- B. Responsible trades to provide adequate spacing of field run pipes to allow for installation of cast-in-place firestop devices without interferences.

#### 3.4 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install through-penetration firestop systems to comply with firestop system manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/damming/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestop systems.
- C. Install fill materials for firestop systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner's inspector will inspect through-penetration firestops. Inspector shall comply with ASTM E 2174 requirements including those related to qualifications, conducting inspections, and preparing test reports.
- B. Where deficiencies are found, repair or replace through-penetration firestop systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing through-penetration firestop systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and firestop installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by through-penetration firestop system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that through-penetration firestop systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated through-penetration firestop systems immediately and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

### 3.7 THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Cast-in-place firestop devices for use with noncombustible and combustible pipes (closed and open systems), conduit, and cable bundles penetrating concrete floors, the following products are acceptable:
  - 1. Hilti CP 680 Cast-In-Place Firestop Device.  
Add Aerator adaptor when used in conjunction with aerator ("sovent") system.
  - 2. Hilti CP 681 Tub Box Kit for use with tub installations.
  - 3. Hilti CP 682 Cast-In-Place Firestop Device for use with noncombustible penetrants.
- B. Sealants, caulking materials, or foams for use with non-combustible items including steel pipe, copper pipe, rigid steel conduit and electrical metallic tubing (EMT), the following products are acceptable:
  - 1. Hilti FS-ONE Intumescent Firestop Sealant
  - 2. Hilti CP 604 Self-leveling Firestop Sealant
  - 3. Hilti CP 620 Fire Foam
  - 4. Hilti CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant
  - 5. Hilti CP 601s Elastomeric Firestop Sealant
- C. Sealants or caulking materials for use with sheet metal ducts, the following products are acceptable:
  - 1. Hilti CP 601s Elastomeric Firestop Sealant
  - 2. Hilti CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant
  - 3. Hilti FS-ONE Intumescent Firestop Sealant
- D. Sealants, caulking or spray materials for use with fire-rated construction joints and other gaps, the following products are acceptable:

1. Hilti CFS-SP WB Firestop Joint Spray
  2. Hilti CP 601s Elastomeric Firestop Sealant
  3. Hilti CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant
  4. Hilti CP 604 Self-leveling Firestop Sealant
- E. Pre-formed mineral wool designed to fit flutes of metal profile deck and gap between top of wall and metal profile deck; as a backer for spray material.
1. Hilti CP 777 Speed Plugs
  2. Hilti CP 767 Speed Strips
- F. Intumescent sealants, caulking materials for use with combustible items (penetrants consumed by high heat and flame) including insulated metal pipe, PVC jacketed, flexible cable or cable bundles and plastic pipe, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti FS-ONE Intumescent Firestop Sealant
- G. Foams, intumescent sealants, or caulking materials for use with cable or cable bundles, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti FS-ONE Intumescent Firestop Sealant
  2. Hilti CP 620 Fire Foam
  3. Hilti CP 601s Elastomeric Firestop Sealant
  4. Hilti CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant
- H. Non-curing, re-penetrable intumescent putty or foam materials for use with flexible cable or cable bundles, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti CP 618 Firestop Putty Stick
  2. Hilti CP 658T Firestop Plug
- I. Wall opening protective materials for use with U.L. listed metallic and specified nonmetallic outlet boxes, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti CP 617 Firestop Putty Pad
- J. Firestop collar or wrap devices attached to assembly around combustible plastic pipe (closed and open piping systems), the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti CP 643 N Firestop Collar
  2. Hilti CP 644 Firestop Collar
  3. Hilti CP 645/648 Wrap Strips
- K. Materials used for large openings and complex penetrations made to accommodate cable trays and bundles, multiple steel and copper pipes, electrical busways in raceways, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti CP 637 Firestop Mortar
  2. Hilti FS 657 FIRE BLOCK
  3. Hilti CP 620 Fire Foam
  4. Hilti CP 675T Firestop Board
- L. Non curing, re-penetrable materials used for large size/complex penetrations made to accommodate cable trays and bundles, multiple steel and copper pipes, electrical busways in raceways, the following products are acceptable:



1. Hilti FS 657 FIRE BLOCK
  2. Hilti CP 675T Firestop Board
- M. Sealants or caulking materials used for openings between structurally separate sections of wall and floors, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti CP 672 Speed Spray
  2. Hilti CP 601s Elastomeric Firestop Sealant
  3. Hilti CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant
  4. Hilti CP 604 Self-Leveling Firestop Sealant
- N. For blank openings made in fire-rated wall or floor assemblies, where future penetration of pipes, conduits, or cables is expected, the following products are acceptable:
1. Hilti FS 657 FIRE BLOCK
  2. Hilti CP 658T Firestop Plug
- O. Provide a firestop system with a "F" Rating as determined by UL 1479 or ASTM E 814 which is equal to the time rating of construction being penetrated.
- P. Provide a firestop system with an Assembly Rating as determined by UL 2079 which is equal to the time rating of construction joint assembly.

END OF SECTION 07 8413

## SECTION 07 8446 - FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fire-resistive joint systems for the following:
  - 1. Floor-to-floor joints.
  - 2. Floor-to-wall joints.
  - 3. Head-of-wall joints.
  - 4. Wall-to-wall joints.
  - 5. Perimeter fire-resistive joint systems consisting of floor-to-wall joints between perimeter edge of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior walls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation" for floor-to-wall joints indicated as perimeter fire-containment systems between perimeter edge of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and back of non-fire-resistance-rated exterior walls.
  - 2. Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping" for systems installed in openings in walls and floors with and without penetrating items.
  - 3. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for non-fire-resistive joint sealants.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assembly in which fire-resistive joint systems are installed.
- B. Joint Systems in and between Fire-Resistance-Rated Constructions: Provide systems with assembly ratings equaling or exceeding the fire-resistance ratings of construction as determined by UL 2079.
- C. Perimeter Fire-Resistive Joint Systems: For joints between edges of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies and exterior curtain walls, provide systems of type and with ratings indicated below and those indicated in the Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule at the end of Part 3, as determined by UBC Standard 26-9, NFPA 285 and UL 2079.
  - 1. UL-Listed, Perimeter Fire-Containment Systems: Integrity ratings equaling or exceeding fire-resistance ratings of floor or floor/ceiling assembly forming one side of joint.
  - 2. OPL-Listed, Perimeter Fire-Barrier Systems: F-ratings equaling or exceeding fire-resistance ratings of floor or floor/ceiling assembly forming one side of joint.
- D. For fire-resistive systems exposed to view, provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each fire-resistive joint system, show each kind of construction condition in which joints are installed; also show relationships to adjoining construction. Include fire-resistive joint system design designation of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that demonstrates compliance with requirements for each condition indicated.
  - 1. Submit documentation, including illustrations, from a qualified testing and inspecting agency that is applicable to each fire-resistive joint system configuration for construction and penetrating items.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of fire-resistive joint system, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.
- F. Evaluation Reports: Evidence of fire-resistive joint systems' compliance with ICBO ES AC30, from the ICBO Evaluation Service.
- G. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each type of fire-resistive joint system.

#### 1.5 INSTALLER QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Engage an experienced Installer who is certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by the firestopping manufacturer as having been provided the necessary training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. A supplier's willingness to sell its firestopping products to the Contractor or to an Installer engaged by the Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on the buyer.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installation Responsibility: Assign installation of through-penetration firestop systems and fire-resistive joint systems in Project to a single qualified installer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-resistive joint systems, for each kind of joint and construction condition indicated, through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that comply with the following requirements and those specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article:
  - 1. Fire-resistance tests are performed by a qualified testing and inspecting agency. A qualified testing and inspecting agency is UL or another agency performing testing and follow-up inspection services for fire-resistive joint systems acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per methods indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and comply with the following:
    - a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by referencing system designations of the qualified testing and inspecting agency.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fire-resistive joint system products to Project site in original, unopened containers or packages with qualified testing and inspecting agency's classification marking applicable to Project and with intact and legible manufacturers' labels identifying product and manufacturer, date of manufacture, lot number, shelf life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials for fire-resistive joint systems to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, temperature changes, contaminants, or other causes.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Ventilate fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions by natural means or, if this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.
- C. Notify Owner's inspecting agency at least seven days in advance of fire-resistive joint system installations; confirm dates and times on days preceding each series of installations.
- D. Do not cover up fire-resistive joint system installations that will become concealed behind other construction until Owner's inspecting agency and building inspector of authorities having jurisdiction have examined each installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the fire-resistive joint systems indicated for each application in the Fire-Resistive Joint System Schedule at the end of this Section. Specification section based on Hilti, Inc. or otherwise listed. Equal by approved manufacturer's as follows:
  - 1. Nelson Firestop Products.
  - 2. NUCO Inc.
  - 3. RectorSeal Corporation (The).
  - 4. Specified Technologies Inc.
  - 5. 3M; Fire Protection Products Division.
  - 6. USG Corporation.

2.2 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Compatibility: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that are compatible with joint substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

- B. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing and inspecting agency for systems indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
  - 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove smears from fire-resistive joint system materials. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates or damaging adjoining surfaces.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article and fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming/packing/backing materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
- C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings and forming/packing/backing materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Engage a qualified independent inspecting agency to inspect fire-resistive joint systems and prepare inspection reports.

- B. Testing Services: Inspecting of completed installations of fire-resistive joint systems shall take place in successive stages as installation of fire-resistive joint systems proceeds. Do not proceed with installation of joint systems for the next area until inspecting agency determines completed work shows compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Inspecting agency shall state in each report whether inspected fire-resistive joint systems comply with or deviate from requirements.
- C. Remove and replace fire-resistive joint systems where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- E. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and fire-resistive joint systems comply with requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

### 3.6 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Use only firestop products that have been tested in accordance with ASTM E 1966 and/or ANSI/UL 2079 for specific rated construction conditions conforming to construction assembly type, movement capability, spacing requirements, and fire-resistance-rating involved for each separate instance.
- B. Sealants for use with fire-resistance-rated construction joints, the following products are acceptable:
  - 1. Hilti CP 672 Speed Spray
  - 2. Hilti CP 601s Elastomeric Firestop Sealant
  - 3. Hilti CP 606 Flexible Firestop Sealant
  - 4. Hilti CP 604 Self-leveling Firestop Sealant
- C. Sealants for use as part of a Perimeter Fire Barrier System between fire-resistance-rated floors and exterior wall assemblies, the following products are acceptable:
  - 1. Hilti CP 672 Speed Spray
  - 2. Hilti CP 604 Self-leveling Firestop Sealant
- D. Pre-formed mineral wool designed to fit flutes of metal profile deck and gap between top of wall and metal deck profile; use as a backer for spray material.
  - 1. Hilti CP 777 Speed Plugs
  - 2. Hilti CP 767 Speed Strips

- E. Provide a firestop system with an Assembly Rating as determined by ASTM E 1966 and/or ANSI/UL 2079 which is equal to the fire-resistance ratings of the construction in which the joint occurs.
- F. Metal Deck Flutes perpendicular to Wall.
  - 1. 3M™ FireDam Spray 200.

END OF SECTION 07 8446

## SECTION 07 9200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
  - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
  - 3. Latex joint sealants.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency a qualified testing agency.
- C. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:
  - 1. Joint-sealant location and designation.
  - 2. Manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Type of substrate material.
  - 4. Proposed test.
  - 5. Number of samples required.
- D. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.



- E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- F. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

#### 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
  - 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
  - 4. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
  - 5. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 100/50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. Pecora Corporation.
    - c. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division.
    - d. Tremco Incorporated.
- B. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    - b. Pecora Corporation.
    - c. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
    - d. The Dow Chemical Company.
- C. Silicone, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.
    - b. GE Advanced Materials.
    - c. Pecora Corporation.
    - d. Sika Corporation; Joint Sealants.
    - e. The Dow Chemical Company.

## 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Lym Tai International, Inc.
    - b. Master Builders Solutions.

## 2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.
    - b. Franklin International.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; a subsidiary of Sika Corporation.
    - d. Pecora Corporation.
    - e. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
    - f. Tremco Incorporated.

## 2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Adfast.
    - b. Alcot Plastics Ltd.
    - c. BASF Corporation.
    - d. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
    - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
  - 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
    - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  - 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
  - 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 07 9200

## SECTION 07 9513.13 - INTERIOR EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Floor expansion joint covers.
  - 2. Wall expansion joint covers.
  - 3. Ceiling expansion joint covers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for expansion joint cover assemblies.
  - 1. Floor expansion joint covers.
  - 2. Wall expansion joint covers.
  - 3. Ceiling expansion joint covers.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each expansion joint cover assembly.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, block-out requirement, attachments to other work, and line diagrams showing entire route of each expansion joint.
  - 2. Where expansion joint cover assemblies change planes, provide isometric or clearly detailed drawing depicting how components interconnect.
- C. Samples: For each expansion joint cover assembly and for each color and texture specified, full width by 6 inches long in size.
- D. Expansion Joint Cover Assembly Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of the supplier. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Manufacturer and model number for each expansion joint cover assembly.
  - 2. Expansion joint cover assembly location cross-referenced to Drawings.
  - 3. Nominal, minimum, and maximum joint width.
  - 4. Movement direction.
  - 5. Materials, colors, and finishes.
  - 6. Product options.
  - 7. Fire-resistance ratings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each fire-resistance-rated expansion joint cover assembly, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

## 1.5 MOCKUPS

- A. Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical expansion joint cover assembly in the location and of the size as directed by the Architect, coordinated with sequence of the Work.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing.
- B. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, T-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous expansion joint cover assemblies.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide expansion joint cover assemblies with fire barriers identical to those of systems tested for fire resistance according to UL 2079 or ASTM E1966 by a qualified testing agency.
- A. Expansion Joint Design Criteria:
  - 1. Type of Movement: Thermal.
    - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Minimum Joint Width: -50% of nominal width.
    - c. Maximum Joint Width: +50% of nominal width.

### 2.3 FLOOR EXPANSION JOINT COVERS

- A. Metal-Plate Floor Joint Cover: Metal cover plate fixed on one side of joint gap, and free to slide on other side:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Construction Specialties, Inc.; PCS-2G, or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
    - b. Inpro Corporation.
    - c. MM Systems Corporation.
    - d. Nystrom.
  - 2. Application: Floor to floor.
  - 3. Installation: Surface mounted.
  - 4. Load Capacity: 500 lb.
  - 5. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Cover-Plate Design: Serrated.



7. Exposed Metal:
  - a. Aluminum: Clear anodic, Class I.

#### 2.4 WALL EXPANSION JOINT COVERS

- C. Center-Plate Wall Joint Cover: Assembly consisting of center plate that slides over gaskets in metal frames fixed to sides of joint gaps.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Construction Specialties, Inc.; AFW, or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
    - b. Inpro Corporation.
    - c. MM Systems Corporation.
    - d. Nystrom.
  2. Application: Wall to wall.
  3. Installation: Surface mounted.
  4. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated on Drawings.
  5. Exposed Metal:
    - a. Aluminum: Clear anodic, Class I.

#### 2.5 CEILING EXPANSION JOINT COVERS

- D. Center-Plate Ceiling Joint Cover: Assembly consisting of center plate that slides over gaskets in metal frames fixed to sides of joint gaps.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Construction Specialties, Inc.; AFW, or comparable products by one of the following:
    - a. Balco; a CSW Industrials Company.
    - b. Inpro Corporation.
    - c. MM Systems Corporation.
    - d. Nystrom.
  2. Application: Ceiling to ceiling.
  3. Installation: Surface mounted.
  4. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that indicated on Drawings.
  5. Exposed Metal:
    - a. Aluminum: Clear anodic, Class I.

#### 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.
  1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.
- B. Elastomeric Seals: Manufacturer's standard preformed elastomeric membranes or extrusions to be installed in metal frames.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturer's standard attachment devices. Include anchors, clips, fasteners, set screws, spacers, and other accessories compatible with material in contact, as indicated or required for complete installations.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces where expansion joint cover assemblies will be installed for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper expansion joint cover assembly installation and performance.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to expansion joint cover assembly manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing expansion joint cover assemblies. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and to provide for secure attachment of expansion joint cover assemblies.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing expansion joint cover assemblies and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install expansion joint cover assemblies.
  - 1. Repair or grout block out as required for continuous frame support using nonmetallic, shrinkage-resistant grout.
  - 2. Install frames in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
    - a. Shimming is not permitted.
  - 3. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
  - 4. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation.
  - 5. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
  - 6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches from each end and not more than 24 inches o.c.
- C. Seals: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.

1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
  2. Seal transitions. Vulcanize or heat-weld field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
  3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Install with hairline mitered corners where expansion joint cover assemblies change direction or abut other materials.
- E. Terminate exposed ends of expansion joint cover assemblies with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Coordinate installation of expansion joint cover assembly materials and associated work so complete assemblies comply with performance requirements.
1. Fire Barriers: Install fire barriers to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of joint, including transitions and field splices.
- 3.4 PROTECTION
- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections. Where necessary due to heavy construction traffic, remove and properly store cover plates or seals and install temporary protection over expansion joint cover assemblies. Reinstall cover plates or seals prior to Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 07 9513.13

**DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

|         |   |
|---------|---|
| 08 1113 | HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES                 |
| 08 1416 | FLUSH WOOD DOORS                              |
| 08 3113 | ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES                       |
| 08 3323 | OVERHEAD COILING DOORS                        |
| 08 4113 | ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS     |
| 08 4523 | TRANSLUCENT STRUCTURAL SKYLIGHT & WALL SYSTEM |
| 08 7100 | DOOR HARDWARE                                 |
| 08 8000 | GLAZING                                       |
| 08 8300 | MIRRORS                                       |

## SECTION 08 1113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
  - 2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware" for door hardware for hollow-metal doors.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or ANSI/SDI A250.8.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1. Elevations of each door type.
  - 2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
  - 6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
  - 7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 8. Details of accessories.
  - 9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

- C. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each type of fire-rated hollow-metal door and frame assembly fire-rated borrowed-lite assembly and thermally rated door assemblies for tests performed by a qualified testing agency indicating compliance with performance requirements.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
  - 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
  - 3. DKS Steel Door & Frame Systems, Inc.
  - 4. Republic Doors and Frames.
  - 5. Rocky Mountain Metals, Inc.
  - 6. Security Metal Products; a brand of ASSA ABLOY.
  - 7. Steelcraft; an Allegion brand.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
- B. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Lite Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9.
- C. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.50 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM C518.

### 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener core for fire-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Uncoated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
    - b. Sidelite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
    - c. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

### 2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
- B. Extra-Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 3; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level A.
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
    - d. Edge Construction: Model 2, Seamless.
    - e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
    - f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
    - g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
    - h. Core: Polystyrene.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A40 coating.
    - b. Construction: Full profile welded.
  - 3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

### 2.5 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
- B. Construction: Full profile welded.

- C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.
- D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  - 1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  - 2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
  - 3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.
- C. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.



- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
  - 1. Sidelite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding, or by rigid mechanical anchors.
  - 2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
  - 1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  - 2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
  - 1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with beveled stops unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
  - 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
  - 4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
  - 5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches** o.c. and not more than **2 inches** o.c. from each corner.

## 2.9 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.
- B. Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, complying with ANSI/SDI A250.3.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.10 LOUVERS

- A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, which comply with SDI 111, with blades or baffles formed of **0.020-inch**-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into **0.032-inch**-thick steel frame.
  - 1. Sightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted-V or inverted-Y blades.
  - 2. Lightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with baffles to prevent light from passing from one side to the other.
  - 3. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Louvers constructed with movable blades closed by actuating fusible link and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated by same qualified testing and inspecting agency that established fire-resistance rating of door assembly.

- B. Form corners of moldings with hairline joints. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11 NAAMM-HMMA 840.
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
    - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames according to NFPA 80.
  - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.
    - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
  - 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
  - 5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
  - 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with postinstalled expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
  - 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus **1/16 inch**, measured at jambs at floor.
- C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
  - 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.
- D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Owner will engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door according to NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
  - 2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements according to NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.

### 3.4 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 08 1113

## SECTION 08 1416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors and transom panels for transparent finish.
  - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
  - 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 08 8000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:
  - 1. Door core materials and construction.
  - 2. Door edge construction
  - 3. Door face type and characteristics.
  - 4. Door louvers.
  - 5. Door trim for openings.
  - 6. Door frame construction.
  - 7. Factory-machining criteria.
  - 8. Factory- finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:
  - 1. Door schedule indicating door location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
  - 2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
  - 3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.
  - 4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
  - 5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
  - 6. Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
  - 7. Clearances and undercuts.
  - 8. Requirements for veneer matching.
  - 9. Doors to be factory finished and application requirements.
  - 10. Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.
- D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately **8 by 10 inches**, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Frames for light openings, **6 inches** long, for each material, type, and finish required.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Special warranties.
- B. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.
- C. Mark each door on bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at levels designed for building occupants for the remainder of construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weathertight, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between **60 and 90 deg F** and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during remainder of construction period.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Delamination of veneer.
    - b. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than **1/4 inch** in a **42-by-84-inch** section.
    - c. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding **0.01 inch in a 3-inch span**.
  2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
  3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Exterior Doors: Life of installation.
  4. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with UL 10C or NFPA 252.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated on Drawings At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

### 2.3 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

- A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
  - 2. The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with the Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.

### 2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS AND TRANSOM PANELS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Interior Doors:
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Eggers Industries.
    - b. Graham Wood Doors; an Assa Abloy Group Company.
    - c. Lambton Doors.
    - d. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
    - e. Masonite Architectural.
    - f. Oshkosh Door Company.
    - g. Oshkosh Door Company.
    - h. VT Industries Inc.
  - 2. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty.
  - 3. Performance Grade:
    - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
  - 5. Faces: Single-plywood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
    - a. Species: Red Oak.
    - b. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
    - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.

- d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Balance match.
- e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
- f. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
- g. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
- h. Transom Match: Continuous match.
- 6. Exposed Vertical and Top Edges: Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A.
  - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
  - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - c. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors: Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
    - 1) Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel same color as doors.
    - 2) Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).
  - d. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
- 7. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
    - 1) 5-inch top-rail blocking.
    - 2) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
    - 3) 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
    - 4) 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
- 8. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

## 2.5 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.
  - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
  - 1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.

2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
  3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
  5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."
  3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.
- D. Exterior Doors: Factory treat exterior doors with water repellent after fabrication has been completed but before factory finishing.
1. Flash top of outswinging doors with manufacturer's standard metal flashing.

## 2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.
- C. Transparent Finish:
1. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Premium.
  2. Finish: Architectural Woodwork Standards System-11, Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
  3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Effect: Open-grain finish.
  5. Sheen: Semigloss.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.
1. Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
  2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware."
- B. Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.



1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches**.
  2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
    - a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
    - b. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
      - 1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
  3. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
  4. Install smoke- and draft-control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- D. Job-Fitted Doors:
1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
    - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
  2. Machine doors for hardware.
  3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
  4. Clearances:
    - a. Provide **1/8 inch** at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
    - b. Provide **1/8 inch** from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide **1/4 inch** from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
    - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock and hinge edges.
  6. Bevel fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.
- E. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- F. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Owner will engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Inspections:
1. Provide inspection of installed Work through AWI's Quality Certification Program, certifying that wood doors and frames, including installation, comply with requirements of AWI/AWMCA/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for the specified grade.
  2. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
  3. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08 1416

## SECTION 08 3113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Product Schedule: For access doors and frames.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, section 5.2.3.1.
  - 2. Submit copy of DHI Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

#### 2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Acudor Products, Inc.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Elmdor/Stoneman Manufacturing Company; a division of Acorn Engineering Company.
    - d. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - e. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
    - f. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - g. Nystrom.

2. Description: Face of door flush with frame; with concealed flange for gypsum board installation and concealed hinge.
3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
4. Door Size: As shown on drawings.
5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal **0.060 inch**, 16 gage, factory primed.
6. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
7. Latch and Lock: Operated by screwdriver.

## 2.3 FIRE-RATED ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Acudor Products, Inc.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Cendrex Inc.
    - d. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
    - e. Karp Associates, Inc.
    - f. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
    - g. Metropolitan Door Industries Corp.
    - h. MIFAB, Inc.
    - i. Nystrom.
    - j. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).
  2. Description: Door face flush with frame, uninsulated; with concealed flange for gypsum board installation, self-closing door, and concealed hinge.
  3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
  4. Door Size: See Drawings
  5. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
  6. Temperature-Rise Rating: **250 deg F** at the end of 30 minutes.
  7. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal **0.036 inch**, 20 gage, factory primed.
  8. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
  9. Latch and Lock: Self-closing, self-latching door hardware, operated by screwdriver.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A879/A879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- C. Frame Anchors: Same material as door face.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 2. For concealed flanges with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded-metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
  - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded-metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latch and Lock Hardware:
  - 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches required to hold doors tightly closed.
- F. Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Owner will engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

- B. Inspections:
  - 1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated access door in accordance with NFPA 80, section 5.2.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated access door indicating compliance with each item listed in NFPA 80.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

END OF SECTION 08 3113

## SECTION 08 3323 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Service doors.
  - 2. Insulated service doors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports, door-opening framing, corner guards, and bollards.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
  - 3. Include description of automatic-closing device and testing and resetting instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies, and indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
  - 4. For exterior components, include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for excluding and draining moisture to the exterior.
  - 5. Show locations of controls, locking devices, detectors or replaceable fusible links, and other accessories.
  - 6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing full range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following components, in manufacturer's standard sizes:
  - 1. Curtain slats.
  - 2. Bottom bar with sensor edge.
  - 3. Guides.
  - 4. Brackets.
  - 5. Hood.
  - 6. Locking device(s).
  - 7. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For overhead coiling doors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
  - 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain overhead coiling doors from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 1. Obtain operators and controls from overhead coiling-door manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the following design wind loads:
  - 1. Design Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward and outward.
    - a. Include roller-type wind locks on exterior doors.
  - 2. Testing: According to ASTM E330/E330M.
  - 3. Deflection Limits: Design overhead coiling doors to withstand design wind load without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
  - 4. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20-lbf/sq. ft. wind load, acting inward and outward.

2.3 DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Insulated Service Door: Overhead coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Cookson Company.
    - b. Cornell.
    - c. McKeon Rolling Steel Door Company, Inc.
    - d. Overhead Door Corporation.
    - e. Raynor.
    - f. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
- B. Operation Cycles: Door components and operators capable of operating for not less than 20,000. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.



1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.
- C. Curtain R-Value: 4.5 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.
- D. Door Curtain Material: Galvanized steel.
- E. Door Curtain Slats: Flat profile slats of 2-5/8-inch center-to-center height.
  1. Gasket Seal. Manufacturer's standard continuous gaskets between slats.
- F. Bottom Bar: Two angles, each not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch thick; fabricated from hot-dip galvanized steel and finished to match door.
- G. Curtain Jamb Guides: Galvanized steel with exposed finish matching curtain slats.
- H. Hood: Match curtain material and finish.
  1. Shape: Round.
  2. Mounting: Between jambs.
- I. Locking Devices: Equip door with locking device assembly.
  1. Locking Device Assembly: Single-jamb side locking bars, operable from inside and outside with cylinders.
- J. Curtain Accessories: Equip door with weatherseals at exterior locations.
- K. Door Finish:
  1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coated Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match finish of exterior curtain-slat face.

## 2.4 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

- A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling-door curtain of interlocking metal slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:
  1. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural-steel sheet; complying with ASTM A653/A653M, with G90 zinc coating; nominal sheet thickness (coated) of 0.028 inch; and as required.
  2. Insulation: Fill slats for insulated doors with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E84 or UL 723. Enclose insulation completely within slat faces.
  3. Metal Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match metal of exterior curtain-slat face, with minimum steel thickness of 0.010 inch.
- B. Curtain Jamb Guides: Manufacturer's standard angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Slot bolt holes for guide adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain.

## 2.5 HOODS

- A. General: Form sheet metal hood to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Form closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and fascia for any

portion of between-jamb mounting that projects beyond wall face. Equip hood with intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.

1. Galvanized Steel: Nominal **0.028-inch-** thick, hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet with **G90** zinc coating, complying with ASTM A653/A653M.
2. Aluminum: **0.040-inch-** thick aluminum sheet complying with **ASTM B209**, of alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
3. Include automatic drop baffle on fire-rated doors to guard against passage of smoke or flame.
4. Exterior-Mounted Doors: Fabricate hood to act as weather protection and with a perimeter sealant-joint-bead profile for applying joint sealant.

- B. Removable Metal Soffit: Formed or extruded from same metal and with same finish as curtain if hood is mounted above ceiling unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 LOCKING DEVICES

- A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.
- B. Chain Lock Keeper: Suitable for padlock.

## 2.7 CURTAIN ACCESSORIES

- A. Weatherseals for Exterior Doors: Equip each exterior door with weather-stripping gaskets fitted to entire exterior perimeter of door for a weather-resistant installation unless otherwise indicated.
1. At door head, use **1/8-inch-** thick, replaceable, continuous-sheet baffle secured to inside of hood or field-installed on the header.
  2. At door jambs, use replaceable, adjustable, continuous, flexible, **1/8-inch-** thick seals of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene.
- B. Astragal for Interior Doors: Equip each door bottom bar with a replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible gasket of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene as a cushion bumper.
- C. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each push-up-operated or emergency-operated door with lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.

## 2.8 COUNTERBALANCE MECHANISM

- A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.
- B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, seamless or welded carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than **0.03 in./ft.** of span under full load.
- C. Counterbalance Spring: One or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.
1. Fire-Rated Doors: Equip with auxiliary counterbalance spring and prevent tension release from main counterbalance spring when automatic-closing device operates.

- D. Torsion Rod for Counterbalance Shaft: Fabricate of manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.
- E. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard mounting brackets of either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

## 2.9 MANUAL DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Chain-Hoist Operator: Consisting of endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel and guard, and gear-reduction unit with a maximum **25-lbf** force for door operation. Provide alloy-steel hand chain with chain holder secured to operator guide.

## 2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA 500 for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.11 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## 2.12 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

## 2.13 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  1. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  2. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  3. Directional Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4.
- C. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 2B.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install overhead coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Install overhead coiling doors, hoods, controls, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each door.
- C. Accessibility: Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with the accessibility standard.

### 3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
  - 1. Adjust exterior doors and components to be weather resistant.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust seals to provide tight fit around entire perimeter.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors.

END OF SECTION 08 3323

## SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Exterior storefront framing.
  - 2. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 07 6200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".
  - 2. Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware" for entrance door hardware sets not under this section.
  - 3. Section 08 8000 "Glazing" for glazing requirements for aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
- C. Products installed, but not furnished in this Section include:
  - 1. Flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
  - 1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
  - 3. Failure includes the following:
    - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
    - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
    - d. Glazing-to-glazing contact.
    - e. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
    - f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - g. Sealant failure.
    - h. Failure of operating units.

- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: See Structural General Notes.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
  - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed  $L/175$  of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to  $3/4$  inch (19 mm), whichever is less.
- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.03 L/s per sq. m) of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- I. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
  - 2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
    - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
  - 3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
- J. Structural-Sealant Joints: Designed to produce tensile or shear stress of less than 20 psi (138 kPa).

- K. NFRC Certificate: Provide NFRC label certificate in compliance with 2021 IECC.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
  - 2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
  - 2. Include design calculations.
- G. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
- H. Preconstruction Test Reports: For sealant.
- I. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- J. Source quality-control reports.
- K. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

- C. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
  - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- E. Accessible Entrances: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- F. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, and metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
    - e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - f. Failure of operating components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include normal weathering.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.



1.9 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware:

1. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six (6) months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Kawneer North America.
2. EFCO (S402 & S403/thermal, Series D518 Durastile Door).
3. U.S. Aluminum (Series 450, 451, 451T, & 850).
4. Vistawall Architectural Products.
5. Manko Windows (1450, 2450 & 2600XPT series)

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer, complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard wall extruded-aluminum framing members and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

B. Basis-of-Design for 4-1/2-inch storefront: Kawneer North America.

1. Construction:

- a. Entry doors surrounding framing system – Kawneer 451 with heavy wall (3/16”).
- b. All other window framing – Kawneer 451T standard wall.

2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: Center.
- C. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with non-staining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- D. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.
1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## 2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- A. Glazing: As specified in Section 08 8000 "Glazing".
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
- C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
- E. Glazing Sealants: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, as recommended by manufacturer for joint type, and as follows:
1. Weatherseal Sealant: ASTM C 920 for Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, G, A, and O; single-component neutral-curing formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and aluminum-framed-system manufacturers for this use.
    - a. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D

## 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 2-inch (50.8-mm) overall thickness, with minimum 0.188-inch- (4.8-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.

2. Door Design: Wide stile; 5-inch (127-mm) nominal width.
3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
4. Continuous Hinge.

## 2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide entrance door hardware as specified in Section 08 7100 "Door Hardware".
- B. Provide heavy-duty hardware units as indicated, scheduled, or required for operation of each door, including the following items of sizes, number, and type recommended by manufacturer for service required; finish to match door.
  1. Thresholds: Provide Pemko 2005AT. Coordinate undercut of door with threshold to provide weathertight seal.
  2. Weatherstripping and sweeps at aluminum entry doors (both exterior and interior doors) for watertight seal.
  3. Opening-Force Requirements:
    - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf ((133 N)) to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to open the door to its minimum required width.
    - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N) to fully open door.
- C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:
  1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
  2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- D. Opening-Force Requirements:
  1. Delayed-Egress Locks: Lock releases within 15 seconds after applying a force of not more than 15 lbf (67 N) for not more than 3 seconds.
  2. Latches and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to release latch.
- E. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- F. Mullions: BHMA A156.3.
  1. When used with panic exit devices, provide removable mullions listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305. Use only mullions that have been tested with exit devices to be used.
- G. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
  1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.

- H. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.

## 2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
  - 1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Color as selected by Architect to match existing school.
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
  - 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
  - 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using screw-spline system.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
  - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
  - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Color: Kawneer "Permafluor Finishes". Color as selected by Architect.
  - 2. Approved equal by one of the following:
    - a. EFCO.
    - b. Vistawall Architectural Products.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Do not install damaged components.
  - 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
  - 4. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
  - 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
  - 6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
- D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.
- E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.
- F. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing".
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

H. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:

1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.7 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) over total length.
2. Alignment:
  - a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
  - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).

B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.

1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

END OF SECTION 08 4113

## SECTION 08 4523 – TRANSLUCENT STRUCTURAL SKYLIGHT & WALL SYSTEM

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the insulated translucent sandwich panel skylight system as shown and specified. Work includes providing and installing:
  - 1. Factory prefabricated structural insulated translucent sandwich panels.
  - 2. Aluminum installation system.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry".
  - 2. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories".
  - 3. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants".
  - 4. Section 08 8000 "Glazing".

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit manufacturer's product data. Include construction details, material descriptions, profiles and finishes of skylight components.
- B. Submit shop drawings. Include plans, details, dimensions and attachments to other work.
- C. Submit manufacturer's color charts showing the full range of colors available for factory finished aluminum.
  - 1. Submit samples for each exposed finish required, in same thickness and material indicated for the work and in size indicated below. If finishes involve normal color variations, include sample sets consisting of two or more units showing the full range of variations expected.
    - a. Sandwich panels: 14" x 28" units.
- D. Submit Installer Certificate, signed by installer, certifying compliance with project qualification requirements.
- E. Submit product test reports from a qualified independent testing agency indicating each type and class of skylight panel system complies with the project performance requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products. Previously completed test reports will be acceptable if for current manufacturer and indicative of products used on this project.
  - 1. Test reports required are:
    - a. International Building Code Evaluation Report
    - b. Flame Spread and Smoke Developed (UL 723) – Submit UL Card
    - c. Burn Extent (ASTM D 635)
    - d. Color Difference (ASTM D 2244)

- e. Impact Strength (UL 972)
- f. Bond Tensile Strength (ASTM C 297 after aging by ASTM D 1037)
- g. Bond Shear Strength (ASTM D 1002)
- h. Beam Bending Strength (ASTM E 72)
- i. Fall Through Resistance (ASTM E 661)
- j. Insulation U-Factor (NFRC 100)
- k. NFRC System U-Factor Certification (NFRC 700)
- l. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (NFRC or Calculations)
- m. Condensation Resistance Factor (AAMA 1503)
- n. Air Leakage (ASTM E 283)
- o. Structural Performance (ASTM E 330)
- p. Water Penetration (ASTM E 331)
- q. Class A Roof Covering Burning Brand (ASTM E 108)
- r. LEED Credits

- F. Daylight Autonomy Submit current documentation indicating regular, independent quality control monitoring under a nationally recognized building code review and listing program.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Qualifications:
  - 2. Material and products shall be manufactured by a company continuously and regularly employed in the manufacture of specified materials for a period of at least ten consecutive years and which can show evidence of those materials being satisfactorily used on at least six projects of similar size, scope and location. At least three of the projects shall have been in successful use for ten years or longer.
  - 3. Panel system must be listed by an ANSI accredited Evaluation Service, which requires quality control inspections and fire, structural and water infiltration testing of sandwich panel systems by an accredited agency.
  - 4. Quality control inspections shall be conducted at least once each year and shall include manufacturing facilities, sandwich panel components and production sandwich panels for conformance with AC177 "Translucent Fiberglass Reinforced Plastic (FRP) Faced Panel Wall, Roof and Skylight Systems" as issued by the ICC-ES.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by an experienced installer, which has been in the business of installing specified skylight systems for at least five (5) consecutive years and can show evidence of satisfactory completion of projects of similar size, scope and type.
- C. Performance Requirements: The manufacturer shall be responsible for the configuration and fabrication of the complete skylight panel system.
  - 1. Include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 2. Include daylight autonomy performed by the manufacturer for this specific project showing light levels for normal usage days required by the usage of the facility.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver wall system, components and materials in manufacturer's standard protective packaging.
- B. Store panels on the long edge, several inches above the ground, blocked and under cover in accordance with manufacturer's storage and handling instructions.



1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Submit manufacturer's and installer's written warranty agreeing to repair or replace skylight system work which fails in materials or workmanship within one (1) year of the date of delivery. Failure of materials or workmanship shall include leakage, excessive deflection, and deterioration of finish on metal in excess of normal weathering and defects in accessories, insulated translucent sandwich panels and other components of the work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TRANSLUCENT STRUCTURAL SKYLIGHT

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
1. Kalwall Corporation.
  2. Major Industries
  3. Structures Unlimited, Inc.

2.2 PANEL COMPONENTS

A. Face Sheets:

1. Translucent faces: Manufactured from glass fiber reinforced thermoset resins, formulated specifically for architectural use.
  - a. Thermoplastic (e.g. polycarbonate, acrylic) faces are not acceptable.
2. Flammability of Interior Face Sheets:
  - a. Flamespread: Underwriters Laboratories (UL) listed, which requires periodic unannounced retesting, with flamespread rating no greater than 50 and smoke developed no greater than 250 when tested in accordance with UL 723.
  - b. Burn extent by ASTM D-635 shall be no greater than 1".
  - c. Face sheets shall not deform, deflect or drip when subjected to fire or flame.
  - d. Face sheets shall not delaminate when exposed to 200° F for 30 minutes per IBC and NBC (300° F for 25 minutes per UBC and SBC).
3. Weatherability of Exterior Face Sheets:
  - a. Color Stability: Full thickness of the exterior face sheet shall not change color more than 3.0 CIE Units DELTA E by ASTM D-2244 after 5 years outdoor South Florida weathering at 5 degrees facing south, determined by the average of at least three (3) white samples with and without a protective film or coating to ensure long-term color stability. Color stability shall be unaffected by abrasion or scratching.
  - b. Erosion Barrier: Exterior face shall have a permanent glass erosion barrier embedded beneath the surface to provide long-term resistance to reinforcing fiber exposure. Exterior face surface loss shall not exceed .7 mils and 40 mgs when tested in accordance with ASTM D-4060 employing CS17 abrasive wheels at a head load of 500 grams for 1000 cycles. Sacrificial surface films or coatings are not acceptable erosion barriers.
4. Appearance:
  - a. Exterior Face Sheets: Smooth, 0.070" thick and crystal in color.
  - b. Interior Face Sheets: Smooth, 0.045" thick and White in color.

- c. Face sheets shall not vary more than +/- 10% in thickness and be uniform in color.
  5. Strength: Exterior face sheet shall be uniform in strength, impenetrable by hand held pencil and repel an impact equal to 70 ft. lbs. without fracture or tear when impacted by a 3-1/4" diameter, 5 lb. free-falling ball per UL 972.
- B. Grid Core:
1. Thermally broken I-beam grid core shall be of 6063-T6 or 60005-T5 alloy and temper with provisions for mechanical interlocking of muntin-mullion and perimeter. Width of I-beam shall be no less than 7/16". The I-beam grid shall be machined to tolerances of not greater than +/- .002".
  2. Thermal break: Minimum 1".
- C. Laminate Adhesive:
1. Heat and pressure resin type adhesive engineered for structural sandwich panel use, with minimum 25-years field use. Adhesive shall pass testing requirements specified by the International code Council "Acceptance Criteria for Sandwich Panel Adhesives".
  2. Minimum tensile strength of 750 PSI when the panel assembly is tested by ASTM C 297 after two exposures to six cycles each of the aging conditions prescribed by ASTM D 1037.
  3. Minimum shear strength of the panel adhesive by ASTM D 1002 after exposure to four separate conditions:
    - a. 50% Relative Humidity at 68° F: 540 PSI
    - b. 182° F: 100 PSI
    - c. Accelerated Aging by ASTM D 1037 at room temperature: 800 PSI
    - d. Accelerated Aging by ASTM D 1037 at 182° F: 250 PSI

## 2.3 PANEL CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide sandwich panels of flat fiberglass reinforced translucent face sheets laminated to a grid core of mechanically interlocking thermally broken (aluminum) I-beams. The adhesive bonding line shall be straight, cover the entire width of the I-beam and have a neat, sharp edge.
1. Thickness: 2-3/4".
  2. Light Transmission: 20%.
  3. Solar heat gain coefficient: .25.
  4. U-factor by NFRC certified laboratory: .23.
    - a. Complete insulated panel system with grids shall have NFRC certified U-factor of .29.
- B. Panels shall deflect no more than 1.9" at 30 psf in 10'-0" span without a supporting frame by ASTM E-72.
- C. Panels shall withstand 1200°F fire for minimum one (1) hour without collapse or exterior flaming.
- D. Thermally broken panels:
1. Minimum Condensation Resistance Factor of 80 by AAMA 1053 measured on the bond line.
  2. Minimum CRF of 90 at center of grid cell.

## 2.4 BATTENS AND PERIMETER CLOSURE SYSTEMS

- A. Closure System: Extruded aluminum 6063-T6 and 6063-T5 alloy and temper clamp-tite screw type closure system.
- B. Sealing Tape: Manufacturer's standard, pre-applied to closure system at the factory under controlled conditions.
- C. Fasteners: 300 series stainless steel screw for aluminum closures, excluding final fasteners to the building.
- D. Finish: Exposed aluminum to be manufacturer's factory applied finish that meets the performance requirements of AAMA 2604/5.
  - 1. Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, supporting structure and installation conditions. Do not proceed with skylight erection until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Metal Protection:
  - 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint or method recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Where aluminum will contact pressure-treated wood, separate dissimilar materials by methods recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install the skylight system in accordance with the manufacturer's installation recommendations and approved shop drawings.
  - 1. Anchor component parts securely in place by permanent mechanical attachment system.
  - 2. Accommodate thermal and mechanical movements.
  - 3. Set sill and curb members in a full bed of sealant compound, or with joint fillers or gaskets to provide weather-tight construction.
- B. Install joint sealants at perimeter joints and within the skylight system in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean the skylight system inside and outside, immediately after installation, according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 08 4523

SECTION 08 7100 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware
2. Electronic access control system components

B. Section excludes:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories
5. Overhead doors

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 "General Requirements" sections for Allowances, Alternates, Owner Furnished Contractor Installed, Project Management and Coordination.
2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry"
3. Division 06 Section "Finish Carpentry"
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to threshold installation specified in this section.
5. Division 08 Sections:
  - a. "Metal Doors and Frames"
  - b. "Flush Wood Doors"
  - c. "Interior Aluminum Doors and Frames"
6. Division 26 "Electrical" sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.
7. Division 28 "Electronic Safety and Security" sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system and fire alarm system.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. UL LLC

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware

B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute

1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
3. Keying Systems and Nomenclature
4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware

C. NFPA – National Fire Protection Association

1. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code
2. NFPA 80 – 2016 Edition – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives
3. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
4. NFPA 105 – Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies
5. NFPA 252 – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

D. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

1. ANSI A117.1 – 2017 Edition – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
2. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties
3. ANSI/BHMA A156.28 - Recommended Practices for Keying Systems
4. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A - Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors
5. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Standard Steel Doors and Frames

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 Submittal Procedures.
2. Prior to forwarding submittal:
  - a. Review drawings and Sections from related trades to verify compatibility with specified hardware.
  - b. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals: deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Submit technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.
2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:
  - a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
    - 1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
    - 2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
    - 3) Point-to-point wiring.
    - 4) Risers.
3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample of requested door hardware unit in finish indicated and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.
  - a. Samples will be returned to supplier. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.
4. Door Hardware Schedule:
  - a. Submit concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work critical in Project construction schedule.

- b. Submit under direct supervision of a Door Hardware Institute (DHI) certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule published by DHI.
  - c. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each opening, include:
    - 1) Door Index: door number, heading number, and Architect's hardware set number.
    - 2) Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
    - 3) Name and manufacturer of each item.
    - 4) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
    - 5) Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
    - 6) Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
    - 7) Mounting locations for hardware.
    - 8) Door and frame sizes and materials.
    - 9) Degree of door swing and handing.
    - 10) Operational Description of openings with electrified hardware covering egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.
5. Key Schedule:
- a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule that includes levels of keying, explanations of key system's function, key symbols used, and door numbers controlled.
  - b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 "Recommended Practices for Keying Systems" as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
  - c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
  - d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
  - e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion. Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.
  - f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner's final keying instructions for locks.
- C. Informational Submittals:
1. Provide Qualification Data for Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
  2. Provide Product Data:
    - a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.
    - b. Include warranties for specified door hardware.
- D. Closeout Submittals:
1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:
    - a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
    - b. Catalog pages for each product.
    - c. Final approved hardware schedule edited to reflect conditions as installed.
    - d. Final keying schedule
    - e. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.
    - f. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.

E. Inspection and Testing:

1. Submit written reports to the Owner and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) of the results of functional testing and inspection for:
  - a. Fire door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 80.
  - b. Required egress door assemblies, in compliance with NFPA 101.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications and Responsibilities:

1. Supplier: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with a minimum of 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project. Supplier to be recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturer of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in the Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff, a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) or Door Hardware Consultant (DHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.
2. Installer: Qualified tradesperson skilled in the application of commercial grade hardware with experience installing door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality as indicated for this Project.
3. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:
  - a. For door hardware: DHI certified AHC or DHC.
  - b. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
  - c. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
  - d. Capable of producing wiring diagram and coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.
4. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

B. Certifications:

1. Fire-Rated Door Openings:
  - a. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by UL LLC, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.
2. Smoke and Draft Control Door Assemblies:
  - a. Provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105
  - b. Comply with the maximum air leakage of 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. (3 cu. m per minute/sq. m) at tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg (75 Pa) of water.
3. Electrified Door Hardware
  - a. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Accessibility Requirements:
  - a. Comply with governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article 087100, 1.02.D3 herein for door hardware on doors in an accessible route. This project must comply with all Federal Americans with Disability Act regulations and all Local Accessibility Regulations.

C. Pre-Installation Meetings

1. Keying Conference
  - a. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:
    - 1) Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
    - 2) Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
    - 3) Requirements for key control system.
    - 4) Requirements for access control.
    - 5) Address for delivery of keys.
2. Pre-installation Conference
  - a. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - b. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - c. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
  - d. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
  - e. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.
  - f. Review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.
3. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference:
  - a. Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.
- C. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
- D. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.
- E. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.
- F. Deliver keys to manufacturer of key control system for subsequent delivery to Owner.



## 1.06 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete.
- B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.
- D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within published warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Beginning from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated in manufacturer's published listings.
    - a. Mechanical Warranty
      - 1) Locks
        - a) Schlage L Series: 10 years
        - b) Schlage ND Series: 10 years
      - 2) Exit Devices
        - a) Von Duprin: 10 years
      - 3) Closers
        - a) LCN 4000 Series: 30 years
      - 4) Automatic Operators
        - a) LCN: 2 years
    - b. Electrical Warranty
      - 1) Locks
        - a) Schlage: 3 years
      - 2) Exit Devices
        - a) Von Duprin: 3 years
      - 3) Closers
        - a) LCN: 2 years

## 1.08 MAINTENANCE

- A. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.
- B. Turn over unused materials to Owner for maintenance purposes.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. The Owner requires use of certain products for their unique characteristics and project suitability to ensure continuity of existing and future performance and maintenance standards. After investigating available product offerings, the Awarding Authority has elected to prepare proprietary specifications. These products are specified with the notation: "No Substitute."
  - 1. Where "No Substitute" is noted, submittals and substitution requests for other products will not be considered.
- B. Approval of alternate manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category are only to be considered by official substitution request in accordance with section 01 25 00.
- C. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.
- D. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

## 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Fabrication
  - 1. Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. provide screws according to manufacturer's recognized installation standards for application intended.
  - 2. Finish exposed screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
  - 3. Provide concealed fasteners wherever possible for hardware units exposed when door is closed. Coordinate with "Metal Doors and Frames", "Flush Wood Doors", "Stile and Rail Wood Doors" to ensure proper reinforcements. Advise the Architect where visible fasteners, such as thru bolts, are required.
- B. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.
  - 1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.
- C. Cable and Connectors:
  - 1. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
  - 2. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices.
  - 3. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

## 2.03 CONTINUOUS HINGES

- A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
    - a. Ives
  2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Per architect's approval
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
  2. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
  3. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
  4. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
  5. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
  6. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires enough to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
  7. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

#### 2.04 MORTISE LOCKS

- A. Manufacturers and Products:
1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
    - a. Schlage L9000 series
  2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - a. No Substitute (Owner 's Standard)
- B. Requirements:
1. Provide mortise locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
  2. Indicators: Where specified, provide indicator window measuring a minimum 2-3/5-inch x 3/5 inch with 180-degree visibility. Provide messages color-coded using ANSI Z535 Safety Red with full text and/or symbols, as scheduled, for easy visibility. When applicable allows for lock status indication on both sides of the door.
  3. Provide locks manufactured from heavy gauge steel, containing components of steel with a zinc dichromate plating for corrosion resistance.
  4. Provide lock case that is multi-function and field reversible for handing without opening case. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
  5. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset with full 3/4 inch (19 mm) throw stainless steel mechanical anti-friction latchbolt. Provide deadbolt with full 1-inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of stainless steel.
  6. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Where scheduled, provide switches and sensors integrated into the locks and latches.
  7. Provide motor based electrified locksets that comply with the following requirements:
    - a. Universal input voltage – single chassis accepts 12 or 24VDC to allow for changes in the field without changing lock chassis.

- b. Fail Safe/Fail Secure – changing mode between electrically locked (fail safe) and electrically unlocked (fail secure) is field selectable without opening the lock case.
  - c. Low maximum current draw – maximum 0.4 amps to allow for multiple locks on a single power supply.
  - d. Low holding current – maximum 0.01 amps to produce minimal heat, eliminate “hot levers” in electrically locked applications, and to provide reliable operation in wood doors that provide minimal ventilation and air flow.
  - e. Connections – provide quick-connect Molex system standard.
8. Lever Trim: Solid brass, bronze, or stainless steel, cast or forged in design specified, with wrought roses and external lever spring cages. Provide thru-bolted levers with 2-piece spindles.
- a. Provide levers that return to within 1/2 inch (13 mm) of door face.
  - b. Vandlgard: Provide levers with vandal resistant technology for use at heavy traffic or abusive applications.
  - c. Lever Design: 06 (RHODES)

## 2.05 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 1

### A. Manufacturers and Products:

- 1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Schlage ND series
- 2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. No Substitute (Owner 's Standard)

### B. Requirements:

- 1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3-hour fire doors.
- 2. Indicators: Where specified, provide escutcheon with lock status indicator window on top of lockset rose:
  - a. Escutcheon height (including rose) 6.05 inches high by 3.68 inches wide.
  - b. Indicator window measuring a minimum 3.52-inch by .60 inch with 1.92 square-inches of front facing viewing area and 180-degree visibility with a total of .236 square-inches of total viewable area.
  - c. Provide snap-in serviceable window to prevent tampering. Lock must function if indicator is compromised.
  - d. Provide messages color-coded with full text and symbol, as scheduled, for easy visibility.
  - e. Unlocked and Unoccupied message will display on white background, and Locked and Occupied message will display on red background.
- 3. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
- 4. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2-inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
- 5. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
- 6. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
- 7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
- 8. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
- 9. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts and wrought roses on both sides.
  - a. Vandlgard: Provide levers with vandal resistant technology for use at heavy traffic or abusive applications.
  - b. Lever Design: Schlage Rhodes.

## 2.06 EXIT DEVICES

### A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Von Duprin 98 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. No Substitute (Owner 's Standard)

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide smooth touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide exit devices with weather resistant components that can withstand harsh conditions of various climates and corrosive cleaners used in outdoor pool environments.
7. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
8. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
9. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
10. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.
11. Provide cylinder or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
12. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
13. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
14. Provide electrified options as scheduled.
15. Top latch mounting: double- or single-tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
16. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

## 2.07 CYLINDERS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. Match existing Schlage "F" keyway
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. No Substitute (Owner 's Standard)

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylinders/cores to match Owner's existing key system, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.

## 2.08 KEYING

### A. Scheduled System:

1. Existing factory registered system:
  - a. Provide cylinders/cores keyed into Owner's existing factory registered keying system. Comply with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

### B. Requirements:

1. Construction Keying:
  - a. Temporary Construction Cylinder Keying.
    - 1) Provide construction cores that permit voiding construction keys without cylinder removal, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
      - a) Split Key or Lost Ball Construction Keying System.
      - b) 3 construction control keys, and extractor tools or keys as required to void construction keying.
      - c) 12 construction change (day) keys.
    - 2) Owner or Owner's Representative will void operation of temporary construction keys.
2. Permanent Keying:
  - a. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.
    - 1) Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.
  - b. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
  - c. Provide keys with the following features:
    - 1) Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
    - 2) Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s).
  - d. Identification:
    - 1) Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
    - 2) Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
    - 3) Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
    - 4) Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
    - 5) Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.
  - e. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.
    - 1) Master Keys: 6.
    - 2) Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core that is keyed differently
    - 3) Key Blanks: Quantity as determined in the keying meeting.

## 2.09 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. LCN 4040XP series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. No Substitute (Owner 's Standard)

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2-inch (38 mm) diameter piston with 5/8-inch (16 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal. QR code with a direct link to maintenance instructions.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards. Provide snap-on cover clip, with plastic covers, that secures cover to spring tube.
6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck. Provide graphically labelled instructions on the closer body adjacent to each adjustment valve. Provide positive stop on reg valve that prevents reg screw from being backed out.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).
10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

## 2.10 ELECTRO-HYDRAULIC AUTOMATIC OPERATORS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product:
  - a. LCN 4600 series
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
  - a. Per Architect's Approval

B. Requirements:

1. Provide low energy automatic operator units with hydraulic closer complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.
2. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
3. Provide units with conventional door closer opening and closing forces unless power operator motor is activated. Provide door closer assembly with adjustable spring size, back-check, and opening and closing speed adjustment valves to control door

4. Provide units with on/off switch for manual operation, motor start up delay, vestibule interface delay, electric lock delay, and door hold open delay.
5. Provide drop plates, brackets, and adapters for arms as required for details.
6. Provide actuator switches and receivers for operation as specified.
7. Provide weather-resistant actuators at exterior applications.
8. Provide key switches with LED's, recommended and approved by manufacturer of automatic operator as required for function described in operation description of hardware group below. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
9. Provide complete assemblies of controls, switches, power supplies, relays, and parts/material recommended and approved by manufacturer of automatic operator for each individual leaf. Actuators control both doors simultaneously at pairs. Sequence operation of exterior and vestibule doors with automatic operators to allow ingress or egress through both sets of openings as directed by Architect. Locate actuators, key switches, and other controls as directed by Architect.
10. Provide units with vestibule inputs that allow sequencing operation of two units, and SPDT relay for interfacing with latching or locking devices.

## 2.11 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers:
  - a. Glynn-Johnson
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Per Architect's Approval

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide overhead stop at any door where conditions do not allow for a wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.

## 2.12 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

### A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer:
  - a. Zero International
2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Per architect's approval

### B. Requirements:

1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping, and gasketing systems as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.
4. Size thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by 5 inches (127 mm) wide by door width unless otherwise specified in the hardware sets or detailed in the drawings.

## 2.13 FINISHES



- A. FINISH: BHMA 626/652 (US26D); EXCEPT:
  - 1. Aluminum Geared Continuous Hinges: Match door/frame. Specified finish is for estimating purpose only
  - 2. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
  - 3. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
  - 4. Weatherstripping: Match door/frame
  - 5. Removable Mullion: Match door/frame. Specified finish is for estimating purpose only

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance. Verify doors, frames, and walls have been properly reinforced for hardware installation.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Submit a list of deficiencies in writing and proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  - 3. Interior Architectural Wood Flush Doors: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A
  - 4. Installation Guide for Doors and Hardware: DHI TDH-007-20
- B. Install door hardware in accordance with NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and provide post-install inspection, testing as specified in section 1.03.E unless otherwise required to comply with governing regulations.
- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.
- D. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.
- E. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.
- F. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
- G. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.

- H. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated.
- I. Lock Cylinders:
  - 1. Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
  - 2. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying section.
  - 3. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
- J. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL and Division 28 ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY sections for:
  - 1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
  - 2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.
  - 3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
  - 4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.
  - 5. Connections to panel interface modules, controllers, and gateways.
  - 6. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.
- K. Key Control System: Tag keys and place them on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
- L. Continuous Hinges: Re-locate the door and frame fire rating labels where they will remain visible so that the hinge does not cover the label once installed.
- M. Door Closers & Auto Operators: Mount closers/operators on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers/operators so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.
- N. Overhead Stops/holders: Mount overhead stops/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.
- O. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.
- P. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- Q. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.
- R. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
- S. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.
- T. Door Bottoms and Sweeps: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
  - 1. Spring Hinges: Adjust to achieve positive latching when door can close freely from an open position of 30 degrees.
  - 2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
  - 3. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors and door hardware.

### 3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- B. Clean operating items per manufacturer's instructions to restore proper function and finish.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.05 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.
- B. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware, and missing items are to be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application.
- C. Hardware items are referenced in the following hardware schedule. Refer to the above specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.
- D. Hardware Sets:

| Abbreviation | Name                        |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| GLY          | Glynn-Johnson Corp          |
| HES          | Hes Inc                     |
| IVE          | H.B. Ives                   |
| LCN          | LCN Commercial Division     |
| SCE          | Schlage Electronic Security |
| SCH          | Schlage Lock Company        |
| VON          | Von Duprin                  |
| ZER          | Zero International Inc      |















116863 OPT0383699 Version 1

**HW SET: 01**

For use on Door #(s):

100A                      100C                      100D                      100F

Each to have:

|   |    |                    |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|--------------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 6 | EA | HINGE              | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |    | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | REMOVABLE MULLION  | 4854B STAB             |    | SP28  | VON |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE     | 98-DT                  |    | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE     | 98-EO                  |    | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER       | 20-021                 |    | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | ELECTRIC STRIKE    | 9600 FSE 12/24VDC      |   | ⚡ 630 | HES |
| 2 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER     | 4040XP SCUSH           |  | 689   | LCN |
| 2 | EA | KICK PLATE         | 8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | RAIN DRIP          | 142AA                  |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | GASKETING          | 429AA-S                |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | MULLION SEAL       | 8780NBK PSA            |  | BK    | ZER |
| 2 | EA | DOOR SWEEP         | 39A                    |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD          | 655A-223               |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | CREDENTIAL READER  | BY DIVISION 28.        |   | ⚡     |     |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER. | BY DIVISION 28         |   | ⚡     |     |
| 2 | EA | DOOR CONTACT       | 679-05HM               |  | ⚡ BLK | SCE |

**OPERATION:**

DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED.

ENTRY BY CREDENTIAL READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER.

DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED BY SECURITY SYSTEM












EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE.

**HW SET: 02**

For use on Door #(s):

100G                      112B

Each to have:

|   |    |                    |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|--------------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE              | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE     | 98-NL                  |  | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER       | 20-021                 |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | ELECTRIC STRIKE    | 9600 FSE 12/24VDC      |  | ✎ 630 | HES |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER     | 4040XP SCUSH           |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE         | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | RAIN DRIP          | 142AA                  |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | GASKETING          | 429AA-S                |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | DOOR SWEEP         | 39A                    |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD          | 655A-223               |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | CREDENTIAL READER  | BY DIVISION 28.        |   | ✎     |     |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER. | BY DIVISION 28         |   | ✎     |     |
| 1 | EA | DOOR CONTACT       | 679-05HM               |  | ✎ BLK | SCE |

**OPERATION:**

DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED.

ENTRY BY CREDENTIAL READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER.

DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED BY SECURITY SYSTEM












EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE.

**HW SET: 03**

For use on Door #(s):

114

Each to have:

|   |    |                      |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|----------------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE                | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | VANDL STOREROOM LOCK | ND96P6D RHO            |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | ELECTRIC STRIKE      | 8000C 12/24 VDC        |  | ↗ 630 | HES |
| 1 | EA | LOCK GUARD           | LG14                   |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER       | 4040XP SCUSH           |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE           | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | RAIN DRIP            | 142AA                  |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | GASKETING            | 429AA-S                |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | DOOR SWEEP           | 39A                    |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD            | 655A-223               |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | CREDENTIAL READER    | BY DIVISION 28.        |   | ↗     |     |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER.   | BY DIVISION 28         |   | ↗     |     |
| 1 | EA | DOOR CONTACT         | 679-05HM               |  | ↗ BLK | SCE |

OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED.

ENTRY BY CREDENTIAL READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER.

DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED BY SECURITY SYSTEM











EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY INSIDE LEVER.

**HW SET: 04**

For use on Door #(s):

100H

Each to have:

|   |    |                |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE | 98-NL                  |  | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER   | 20-021                 |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4040XP SCUSH           |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | RAIN DRIP      | 142AA                  |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | GASKETING      | 429AA-S                |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | DOOR SWEEP     | 39A                    |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD      | 655A-223               |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | DOOR CONTACT   | 679-05HM               |  | ↗ BLK | SCE |

PREP FOR FUTURE ACCESS CONTROL COMPONENTS (SIM TO 100G)










DOOR POSITION MONITORED BY SECURITY SYSTEM

**HW SET: 05**

For use on Door #(s):

110

Each to have:

|   |    |                      |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|----------------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE                | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | VANDL STOREROOM LOCK | ND96P6D RHO            |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER       | 4040XP SCUSH           |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE           | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | RAIN DRIP            | 142AA                  |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | GASKETING            | 429AA-S                |  | AA    | ZER |
| 1 | EA | DOOR SWEEP           | 39A                    |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD            | 655A-223               |  | A     | ZER |
| 1 | EA | DOOR CONTACT         | 679-05HM               |  | ⚡ BLK | SCE |












DOOR POSITION MONITORED BY SECURITY SYSTEM

**HW SET: 06**

For use on Door #(s):

100J                      101B                      112C                      112D

Each to have:

|   |    |                    |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|--------------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 6 | EA | HINGE              | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |   | 652   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | REMOVABLE MULLION  | 4854B STAB             |  | SP28  | VON |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE     | CD-98-DT               |  | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE     | CD-98-NL               |  | 626   | VON |
| 2 | EA | MORTISE CYLINDER   | 20-001                 |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER       | 20-021                 |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | ELECTRIC STRIKE    | 9600 FSE 12/24VDC      |  | ⚡ 630 | HES |
| 2 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER     | 4040XP EDA             |  | 689   | LCN |
| 2 | EA | KICK PLATE         | 8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | FLOOR STOP         | FS18S                  |  | BLK   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | SILENCER           | SR64                   |  | GRY   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | CREDENTIAL READER  | BY DIVISION 28.        |   | ⚡     |     |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER. | BY DIVISION 28         |   | ⚡     |     |

OPERATION:

DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED.

ENTRY BY CREDENTIAL READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER.

EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY EXIT DEVICE.










DOORS MAY BE DOGGED OPEN BY KEYED CYLINDER

**HW SET: 07**

For use on Door #(s):

203A                      206

Each to have:

|   |    |                     |                                 |   |       |     |
|---|----|---------------------|---------------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 6 | EA | HINGE               | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP            |  | 630   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | POWER TRANSFER      | EPT10 CON                       |  | ✓ 689 | VON |
| 1 | EA | ELEC PANIC HARDWARE | 9850WDC-L-BE-M996-06-FS-LBL-SNB |  | ✓ 626 | VON |
| 1 | EA | ELEC PANIC HARDWARE | 9850WDC-L-M996-06-FS-SNB        |  | ✓ 626 | VON |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER        | 20-021                          |  | 626   | SCH |
| 2 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER      | 4040XP EDA                      |  | 689   | LCN |
| 2 | EA | KICK PLATE          | 8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS          |  | 630   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | MAGNET              | SEM7850 12V/24V/120V            |  | ✓ 689 | LCN |
| 2 | EA | SILENCER            | SR64                            |  | GRY   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | WIRE HARNESS        | CON-P X REQ. LENGTH             |   | ✓     | SCH |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER.  | BY DIVISION 28                  |   | ✓     |     |

OPERATION:











DOORS NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED  
ENTRY BY KEY OR BY LEVER TRIM WHEN UNLOCKED BY ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM  
DOORS MAY BE LOCKED/ UNLOCKED ON A SCHEDULE  
DOORS MAY BE HELD OPEN ON WALL MAGNETS  
EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY PANIC HARDWARE

**HW SET: 08**

For use on Door #(s):

201B

Each to have:

|   |    |                     |                                    |   |       |     |
|---|----|---------------------|------------------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 6 | EA | HINGE               | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP               |  | 630   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | POWER TRANSFER      | EPT10 CON                          |  | ✓ 689 | VON |
| 1 | EA | ELEC PANIC HARDWARE | 9850WDC-L-BE-M996-06-FS-LBL-SNB    |  | ✓ 626 | VON |
| 1 | EA | ELEC PANIC HARDWARE | 9850WDC-L-M996-06-FS-SNB           |  | ✓ 626 | VON |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER        | 20-021                             |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | FIRE/LIFE CLOSER    | 4040SE TBWMS 24V/120V AC/DC AS REQ |  | ✓ 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER      | 4040XP EDA                         |  | 689   | LCN |
| 2 | EA | KICK PLATE          | 8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS             |  | 630   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | MAGNET              | SEM7850 12V/24V/120V               |  | ✓ 689 | LCN |
| 2 | EA | SILENCER            | SR64                               |  | GRY   | IVE |
| 2 | EA | WIRE HARNESS        | CON-P X REQ. LENGTH                |   | ✓     | SCH |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER.  | BY DIVISION 28                     |   | ✓     |     |

OPERATION:

DOORS NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED  
ENTRY BY KEY OR BY LEVER TRIM WHEN UNLOCKED BY ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM  
DOORS MAY BE LOCKED/ UNLOCKED ON A SCHEDULE  
DOORS MAY BE HELD OPEN ON WALL MAGNET / ELECTRIFIED CLOSER  
EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY PANIC HARDWARE










**HW SET: 09**

For use on Door #(s):

201A

Each to have:

|   |    |                     |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|---------------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE               | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP   |  | 652   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | POWER TRANSFER      | EPT10 CON              |  | ↗ 689 | VON |
| 1 | EA | ELEC PANIC HARDWARE | 98-L-M996-06-FSE       |  | ↗ 626 | VON |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER      | 4040XP EDA             |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE          | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP           | WS406/407CCV           |  | 630   | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER            | SR64                   |  | GRY   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WIRE HARNESS        | CON-P X REQ. LENGTH    |   | ↗     | SCH |
| 1 | EA | CREDENTIAL READER   | BY DIVISION 28.        |   | ↗     |     |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER.  | BY DIVISION 28         |   | ↗     |     |

OPERATION:








DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED  
ENTRY BY KEY /CREDENTIAL READER TO TEMPORARILY UNLOCK LEVER TRIM  
EGRESS AT ALL TIMES B Y PANIC HARDWARE

**HW SET: 10**

For use on Door #(s):

113

Each to have:

|   |    |                 |                        |   |       |     |
|---|----|-----------------|------------------------|---|-------|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE           | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5         |  | 652   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK  | ND80P6D RHO            |  | 626   | SCH |
| 1 | EA | ELECTRIC STRIKE | 8000C 12/24 VDC        |  | ↗ 630 | HES |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER  | 4040XP RW/PA           |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE      | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP       | WS406/407CCV           |  | 630   | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER        | SR64                   |  | GRY   | IVE |

OPERATION:







DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED.  
ENTRY BY CARD READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE THE ELECTRIC STRIKE, USER OPENS DOOR TO ENTER.  
EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY INSIDE LEVER.

**HW SET: 11**

For use on Door #(s):

101E2                    115                    207G                    208

Each to have:







|   |    |                |                        |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5         |  | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | ND80P6D RHO            |  | 626 | SCH |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4040XP RW/PA           |  | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP      | WS406/407CCV           |  | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64                   |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: 12**

For use on Door #(s):

107                    203B

Each to have:





|   |    |                |                        |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5         |    | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | STOREROOM LOCK | ND80P6D RHO            |    | 626 | SCH |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4040XP HW/PA           |    | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |    | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP      | WS406/407CCV           |    | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64                   |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: 13**

For use on Door #(s):

207A                    207B                    207C                    207D

Each to have:






|   |    |                |                |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|----------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 |  | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | CLASSROOM LOCK | ND70P6D RHO    |  | 626 | SCH |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP      | WS406/407CCV   |  | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64           |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: 14**

For use on Door #(s):

100K                    109A                    207E                    207H

Each to have:







|   |    |                |                        |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5         |  | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | CLASSROOM LOCK | ND70P6D RHO            |  | 626 | SCH |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP      | WS406/407CCV           |  | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64                   |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: 15**

For use on Door #(s):

104

Each to have:

|   |    |                |                        |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5         |  | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | CLASSROOM LOCK | ND70P6D RHO            |  | 626 | SCH |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4040XP CUSH            |  | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP      | WS406/407CCV           |  | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64                   |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: 16**

For use on Door #(s):

102

103







109B

204

205

207F

Each to have:

|   |    |                      |                             |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------------|-----------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE                | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5            |    | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | KEYED PRIVACY W/ IND | L9456P6 06A L583-363 OS-OCC |    | 626 | SCH |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER       | 4040XP EDA                  |    | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE           | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS      |    | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP            | WS406/407CCV                |   | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER             | SR64                        |  | GRY | IVE |








**HW SET: 17**

For use on Door #(s):

106

108

Each to have:








|   |    |                |                        |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 3 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1 4.5 X 4.5         |  | 652 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | PUSH PLATE     | 8200 6" X 16"          |  | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | PULL PLATE     | 8305 8" 4" X 16"       |  | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4040XP EDA             |  | 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS |  | 630 | IVE |
| 1 | EA | WALL STOP      | WS406/407CCV           |  | 630 | IVE |
| 3 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64                   |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: 18**

For use on Door #(s):

112F                      112H

Each to have:


|   |    |                |                        |   |     |     |
|---|----|----------------|------------------------|---|-----|-----|
| 6 | EA | HINGE          | 5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5       |  | 652 | IVE |
| 2 | EA | PUSH PLATE     | 8200 6" X 16"          |  | 630 | IVE |
| 2 | EA | PULL PLATE     | 8305 8" 4" X 16"       |  | 630 | IVE |
| 2 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER | 4040XP EDA             |  | 689 | LCN |
| 2 | EA | KICK PLATE     | 8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS |  | 630 | IVE |
| 2 | EA | FLOOR STOP     | FS18S                  |  | BLK | IVE |
| 2 | EA | SILENCER       | SR64                   |  | GRY | IVE |

**HW SET: A1**

For use on Door #(s):

101F

Each to have:

|   |    |                     |   |   |       |     |
|---|----|---------------------|---|---|-------|-----|
| 2 | EA | CONT. HINGE         | 112XY                                   |    | 628   | IVE |
| 1 | EA | REMOVABLE MULLION   | 4854B STAB                              |    | SP28  | VON |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE      | 98-DT                                   |    | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | PANIC HARDWARE      | 98-NL                                   |   | 626   | VON |
| 1 | EA | RIM CYLINDER        | 20-021                                  |  | 626   | SCH |
| 2 | EA | ELECTRIC STRIKE     | 9600 FSE 12/24VDC                       |  | ↗ 630 | HES |
| 2 | EA | OH STOP             | 100S ADJ                                |  | 630   | GLY |
| 1 | EA | SURFACE CLOSER      | 4040XP EDAW/62G                         |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | SURF. AUTO OPERATOR | 4642 TBWMS 120 VAC                      |  | ↗ 689 | LCN |
| 1 | EA | PA MOUNTING PLATE   | 4040XP-18PA                             |  | 689   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | 5TH SCREW SUPPORT   | 4040XP-30                               |  | 689   | LCN |
| 2 | EA | ACTUATOR, TOUCHLESS | 8310-813                                |  | BLK   | LCN |
| 2 | EA | ACTUATOR, TOUCHLESS | 8310-813J                               |  | BLK   | LCN |
| 1 | EA | WEATHERSTRIPPING    | BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME<br>MANUFACTURER. |   |       |     |
| 1 | EA | THRESHOLD           | BY ALUMINUM DOOR/FRAME<br>MANUFACTURER. |   |       |     |
| 1 | EA | CREDENTIAL READER   | BY DIVISION 28.                         |   | ↗     |     |
| 1 | EA | LOW VOLTAGE POWER.  | BY DIVISION 28                          |   | ↗     |     |
| 2 | EA | DOOR CONTACT        | 679-05HM                                |  | ↗ BLK | SCE |

**OPERATION:**

DOORS NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED.

ENTRY BY KEY OR CREDENTIAL READER TO TEMPORARILY RELEASE ELECTRIC STRIKES, USER PULLS DOOR TO OPEN.

OUTSIDE ACTUATOR IS ACTIVE WHEN STRIKES ARE UNLOCKED, INSIDE ACTUATOR ALWAYS ACTIVE.

DOOR POSITION IS MONITORED BY SECURITY SYSTEM

EGRESS AT ALL TIMES BY INSIDE LEVER.

DOOR MAY BE PROGRAMMED TO LOCK / UNLOCK ON A SCHEDULE

**HW SET: E1**

For use on Door #(s):  
101E1                      200B

Each to have:

EA      NOTE

ALL HARDWARE BY ELEVATOR MFG

**HW SET: R1**

For use on Door #(s):  
100B                      100E                      112A                      112E                      112G

Each to have:

EA      NOTE

ALL HARDWARE BY ROLL-UP  
/OVERHEAD DOOR  
SUPPLIER/MANUFACTURER

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 08 8000 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
  - 1. Windows.
  - 2. Doors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 08 1113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames".
  - 2. Section 08 1416 "Flush Wood Doors"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Manufacturers of Glass Products: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit that contains dehydrated air or a specified gas.
- D. Deterioration of Coated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in metallic coating.
- E. Deterioration of Insulating Glass: Failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
- F. Deterioration of Laminated Glass: Defects developed from normal use that are attributed to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide glazing systems capable of withstanding normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation; failure of sealants or gaskets

to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

- B. Glass Design: Glass thickness designations indicated are minimums and are for detailing only. Confirm glass thicknesses by analyzing Project loads and in-service conditions. Provide glass lites in the thickness designations indicated for various size openings, but not less than thicknesses and in strengths (annealed or heat treated) required to meet or exceed the following criteria:
1. Glass Thicknesses: Select minimum glass thicknesses to comply with ASTM E 1300, according to the following requirements:
    - a. Specified Design Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Probability of Breakage for Vertical Glazing: 8 lites per 1000 for lites set vertically or not more than 15 degrees off vertical and under wind action.
      - 1) Load Duration: 3 seconds.
  - C. Thermal Movements: Provide glazing that allows for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures acting on glass framing members and glazing components. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
    1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
  - D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
    1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
    2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
    3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
    4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
    5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
    6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Product Test Listings: From a qualified testing agency indicating fire-rated glass complies with requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current product.
- C. Samples: For the following products, in the form of 12-inch square Samples for glass.
  1. Insulating glass for each designation indicated.
  2. For each color (except black) of exposed glazing sealant indicated.
  3. Digitally printed glass.
  4. Acid etched glass.
- D. Glazing Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings for glazed openings in preparing a schedule listing glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location.

- E. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
  - 1. For solar-control low-e-coated glass, provide documentation demonstrating that manufacturer of coated glass is certified by coating manufacturer.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in glass installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain the following through one source from a single manufacturer for each glass type: clear float glass, laminated glass and insulating glass.
- D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain glazing accessories through one source from a single manufacturer for each product and installation method indicated.
- E. Safety Glazing Products: Comply with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201. No wire glass allowed.
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, obtain safety glazing products permanently marked with certification label of the manufacturer acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- F. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
  - 1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Glazing Manual" and "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual."
  - 2. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units."
- G. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the following testing and inspecting agency:
  - 1. Insulating Glass Certification Council.
  - 2. Associated Laboratories, Inc.
- H. NFRC Certificate: Provide NFRC label certificate in compliance with 2009 IECC.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.



- B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing to avoid hermetic seal ruptures.
- C. Maintain minimum and maximum temperature limits as recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  - 1. Do not install liquid glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of manufacture.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. factory.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of manufacturer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Basis of Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide specified products or comparable products of a listed manufacturer.
  - 2. Substitutions: In accordance with Instructions to Bidders and Division 01 Section "Substitution Requirements."

### 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3; of class indicated.

- B. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Roll Wave Maximum Distortion Tolerance: .003 inch target with .005 inch maximum peak to valley measurement.
  3. Bow and Warp Maximum Tolerance: 50 percent of the maximum allowed in ASTM C 1048.
- C. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Roll Wave Maximum Distortion Tolerance: .003 inch target with .005 inch maximum peak to valley measurement.
  3. Bow and Warp Maximum Tolerance: 50 percent of the maximum allowed in ASTM C 1048
- D. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with other requirements specified and with the following:
1. Interlayer: Polyvinyl butyral of thickness indicated with a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after laminating glass lites and installation.
    - a. For polyvinyl butyral interlayers, laminate lites in autoclave with heat plus pressure.
  2. Laminating Process: Fabricate laminated glass to produce glass free of foreign substances and air or glass pockets.
- E. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.
1. Fabrication Process: All insulating glass shall be manufactured on a vertical insulating glass production line.
  2. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass in place of annealed glass where needed to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading of individual glass lites and to comply with glass design requirements specified in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
  3. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) glass lites where safety glass is indicated.
  4. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated for insulating-glass units are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
  5. Sealing System: Dual seal, with primary and secondary sealants as follows:
    - a. Polyisobutylene and silicone.
  6. Spacer Material: thermally-broken aluminum.
  7. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
  8. Edge Deletion: Delete low-E coating prior to fabrication of insulating units according to coated glass manufacturer's instructions.

- F. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition B (spandrel glass, one surface ceramic coated), Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3, and complying with other requirements specified.

## 2.3 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Compatibility: Select glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  - 3. VOC Content: For sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 4. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: One part non-acidic moisture curing neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920 Class A, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790
    - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 890
    - d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 1
  - 2. Applications: High movement joints at metal-to metal and glass to metal.
- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 795
    - b. GE Advanced Materials -Silicones; SilPruf NB SCS9000 or SilPruf SCS2000
    - c. Pecora Corporation; 864
    - d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 2
  - 2. Applications: General applications in glazing installation subject to high movement including perimeter; use non-staining formula at absorbent perimeter applications.
- D. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 799
    - b. GE AdvancedMaterials-Silicones; UltraGlaze SSG4000 or UltraGlaze SSG4000AC
    - c. Tremco Incorporated; Proglaze SSG or Tremsil 600

2. Applications: General applications in glazing installation including perimeter; use non-staining formula at absorbent perimeter applications.

#### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

#### 2.5 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements. All insulating glass shall be manufactured on a vertical insulating glass production line.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites in a manner that produces square edges with slight kerfs at junctions with outdoor and indoor faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

#### 2.6 MONOLITHIC FLOAT-GLASS UNITS

- A. Glass Type MG#1: Clear annealed float glass.
  1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  2. Application: Glass units not subject to occupant contact.
- B. Glass Type MG#2: Clear fully tempered float glass.
  1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  2. Safety glazing label required.
  3. Application: Interior glazing units unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.7 INSULATING-GLASS UNITS

- A. Glass Type IG#1: High performance, low-E-coated, clear insulating glass.
  1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.

2. Outdoor Lite: Clear heat-strengthened float glass, and fully tempered float glass where safety glass is indicated.
    - a. Minimum Thickness of Outdoor Glass Lite: 6 mm.
    - b. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
    - c. Basis of Design Product: Guardian Industries, Inc., SunGuard SNX 62/27 on Clear.
      - 1) Comparable Product: Vitro., Solarban 70 on Clear.
      - 2) Comparable Product: Viracon, VNE 63 on Clear.
  3. Interspace Content: Air.
  4. Indoor Lite: Clear heat-strengthened float glass, and fully tempered float glass where safety glass is indicated.
    - a. Minimum Thickness of Indoor Glass Lite: 6 mm.
  5. Winter Nighttime U-Value: 0.28-0.29.
  6. Summer Daytime U-Value: 0.26-0.27.
  7. Visible Light Transmittance: 61%-64%.
  8. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): 0.27-0.29.
  9. Outdoor Visible Light Reflectance: 10%-12%.
  10. Light to Solar Gain (LSG): 2.11-2.32.
  11. Safety glazing label where required.
- B. Glass Type IG#1S: High performance, low-E-coated, clear insulating spandrel glass.
1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
  2. Outdoor Lite: Clear heat-strengthened float glass, and fully tempered float glass where safety glass is indicated.
    - a. Minimum Thickness of Outdoor Glass Lite: 6 mm.
    - b. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
    - c. Basis of Design Product: Guardian Industries, Inc., SunGuard SNX 62/27 on Clear.
      - 1) Comparable Product: Vitro Architectural Glass, Solarban 70 on Clear.
      - 2) Comparable Product: Viracon, VNE 63 on Clear.
  3. Interspace Content: Air.
  4. Indoor Lite: Clear heat-strengthened float glass, and fully tempered float glass where safety glass is indicated.
    - a. Minimum Thickness of Indoor Glass Lite: 6 mm.
    - b. Opaque Coating: Ceramic coating on fourth surface
    - c. Basis of Design: Guardian, SunGuard Spandrel HT.
      - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
  5. Winter Nighttime U-Value: 0.28-0.29.
  6. Safety glazing label where required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing glazing, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.

C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction sealant-substrate testing.

E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm) as follows:

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width.

H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

J. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape where fixed stop is indicated for exterior glazing.

### 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations, including weld splatter. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 08 8000



SECTION 08 8300 - MIRRORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following types of silvered flat glass mirrors.
  - 1. Annealed monolithic glass mirrors.
  - 2. Laminated glass mirrors qualifying as safety glazing.
  - 3. Refer to Finishes Schedule for additional mirrors required.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Deterioration of Mirrors: Defects developed from normal use that are attributable to the manufacturing process and not to causes other than glass breakage and practices for maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to mirror manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide mirrors that will not fail under normal usage. Failure includes glass breakage and deterioration attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, and installation.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Mirrors. Include description of materials and process used to produce each type of silvered flat glass mirror specified that indicates sources of glass, glass coating components, edge sealer, and quality-control provisions.
  - 2. Mirror mastic.
  - 3. Mirror hardware.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of mirror product required, in the form indicated below:
  - 1. Mirrors: 12" x 12".
  - 2. Mirror trim: 12 inches (300 mm) long, (J-Channel).
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of mirror, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test Reports: From mirror manufacturer indicating that mirror mastic was tested for compatibility and adhesion with mirror backing paint and substrates on which mirrors are installed.
- F. Warranty: Five (5) years.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed mirror glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project; whose work has resulted in mirror installations with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations for Mirrors: Obtain mirrors from one source for each type of mirror indicated.
- C. Source Limitations for Mirror Glazing Accessories: Obtain mirror glazing accessories from one source for each type of accessory indicated.
- D. Glazing Publications: Comply with the following published recommendations:
  - 1. GANA Mirror Division's "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."
- E. Safety Glazing Products: For laminated mirrors, provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
- F. Preconstruction Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test: Submit mirror mastic products to mirror manufacturer for testing to determine compatibility of mastic with mirror backing paint and substrates on which mirrors are installed.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mirrors according to mirror manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to mirrors from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling mirrors as needed to prevent deterioration of silvering, damage to edges, and abrasion of glass surfaces and applied coatings. Store indoors, protected from moisture including condensation.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install mirrors until ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels indicated for final occupancy.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by mirror manufacturer agreeing to replace mirrors that deteriorate as defined in "Definitions" Article, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below:
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide mirrors by one of the following:
  - 1. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
  - 2. Gardner Glass Products.
  - 3. Guardian Industries Corp.

4. Independent Mirror Industries, Inc.
5. Northwestern Industries, Inc.

## 2.2 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRROR MATERIALS

- A. Clear Glass Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality.
  1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.
- B. Annealed Float Glass for Inner Lite of Laminated Mirrors: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent flat glass), Quality-Q3; Class 1 (clear).
- C. Laminated Mirror consisting of 6 mm clear mirror, .030PVB 3 mm clear glass.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- B. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, produced specifically for setting mirrors and certified by both mirror manufacturer and mastic manufacturer as compatible with glass coating and substrates on which mirrors will be installed.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Gunther Mirror Mastics.
    - b. Palmer Products Corporation.
  2. VOC Content: Not more than 70 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Fasteners: Fabricated of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal and matching it in finished color and texture where fasteners are exposed.
- D. Anchors and Inserts: Provide devices as required for mirror hardware installation. Provide toothed or lead-shield expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Provide galvanized anchors and inserts for applications on inside face of exterior walls and where indicated.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Mirror Sizes: To suit Project conditions, cut mirrors to final sizes and shapes as indicated on drawings.
- B. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.
- C. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat polished edge. (Drama Dressing Rooms - provide metal trim.)
- D. Laminated Safety Mirrors: Provide laminated mirrors fabricated to produce units complying with ASTM C 1172, Kind LM, and the following:
  1. Glass Lites: Inner lite of mirror glass with silver coating on third surface and outer lite of clear float glass.

2. Interlayer Material: Mirror manufacturer's standard 0.030-inch thick, polyvinyl-butylal interlayer with a proven record of showing no tendency to delaminate from, or cause damage to, silver coating.
3. Laminating Process: Laminate glass using laminator's standard heat-plus-pressure process to produce glass free from foreign substances, air or glass pockets, and other defects.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, over which mirrors are to be mounted, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances, substrate preparation, and other conditions affecting performance.
  1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility of mirror mastic with existing finishes or primers.
  2. Proceed with mirror installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with mastic manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparation of substrates, including coating surfaces with mastic manufacturer's special bond coating where applicable.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
- B. For wall-mounted mirrors, install mirrors with mastic and mirror hardware.
  1. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.
  2. For mirror hardware in the form of continuous J-channels at bottom, provide setting blocks 1/8 inch thick by 4 inches long at quarter points. To prevent trapping water, provide, between setting blocks, 2 slotted weeps not less than 1/4 inch wide by 3/8 inch long.
  3. For mirror hardware in the form of a continuous J-channel at bottom and continuous top trim at top, fasten J-channel directly to wall and attach top trim to continuous cleat fastened directly to wall.
  4. For metal or plastic clips, place a felt or plastic pad between mirror and each clip to prevent spalling of mirror edges.
  5. Where indicated, install mirror hardware in the form of J-channels that are fabricated in single lengths to fit and cover top and bottom edges of mirrors.
  6. Install mastic as follows:
    - a. Apply barrier coat to mirror backing where approved in writing by manufacturers of mirrors and backing material.
    - b. Apply mastic to comply with mastic manufacturer's written instructions for coverage and to allow air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
    - c. After mastic is applied, align mirrors and press into place while maintaining a minimum air space of 1/8 inch (3 mm) between back of mirrors and mounting surface.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect mirrors from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
- B. Do not permit edges of mirrors to be exposed to standing water.
- C. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent mirrors from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.

END OF SECTION 08 8300

**DIVISION 09 – FINISHES**

|         |                                |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| 09 2216 | NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING   |
| 09 2900 | GYPSUM BOARD                   |
| 09 3013 | CERAMIC TILING                 |
| 09 5113 | ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING       |
| 09 6513 | RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES |
| 09 6519 | RESILIENT TILE FLOORING (LVT)  |
| 09 6566 | RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING    |
| 09 6813 | TILE CARPETING                 |
| 09 9113 | EXTERIOR PAINTING              |
| 09 9124 | INTERIOR PAINTING              |
| 09 9623 | GRAFFITI-RESISTANCE COATINGS   |

## SECTION 09 2216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
  - 2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.
  - 3. Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 4000 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs and floor joists.

#### 1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For embossed, high-strength steel studs and tracks firestop tracks, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Notify manufacturer of damaged materials received prior to installation.
- B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- C. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI S202, "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. Design framing systems in accordance with AISI S220, "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Nonstructural Members," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Design Loads: As indicated on architectural Drawings or **5 lbf/sq. ft.** minimum as required by the IBC.

#### 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with AISI S220 for conditions indicated.
  - 1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with AISI S220 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated

2. Protective Coating: Comply with AISI S220; ASTM A653/A653M, G40; or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.
  - a. Coating demonstrates equivalent corrosion resistance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  
- B. Studs and Track: AISI S220.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
    - b. ClarkDietrich.
    - c. Jaimes Industries.
    - d. MBA Building Supplies.
    - e. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
  3. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
  1. Single Long-Leg Track System: ASTM C645 top track with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top track and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
  2. Double-Track System: ASTM C645 top outer tracks, inside track with 2-inch- deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer track sized to friction-fit over inner track.
  3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
      - 2) ClarkDietrich.
      - 3) MBA Building Supplies.
      - 4) SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top track manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
    - b. ClarkDietrich.
    - c. Fire Trak Corp.
    - d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    - d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
  
- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges.



1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  2. Depth: **1-1/2 inches**.
  3. Clip Angle: Not less than **1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-** thick, galvanized steel.
- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. Jaimes Industries.
    - c. MBA Building Supplies.
    - d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  2. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: **0.0329 inch**.
  3. Depth: **7/8 inch**.
- H. Resilient Furring Channels: **1/2-inch-** deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
  2. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- I. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: **0.053-inch** uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum **1/2-inch-** wide flanges.
1. Depth: **3/4 inch**.
  2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of **0.0329 inch**.
  3. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, **0.062-inch-** diameter wire, or double strand of **0.048-inch-** diameter wire.
- J. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of **1-1/4 inches**, wall attachment flange of **7/8 inch**, minimum uncoated-steel thickness of **0.0179 inch**, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ClarkDietrich.
    - b. MBA Building Supplies.
    - c. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
- 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS
- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, **0.062-inch-** diameter wire, or double strand of **0.048-inch-** diameter wire.
  - B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, **0.16 inch** in diameter.
  - C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, **1 by 3/16 inch** by length indicated.
  - D. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of **0.0538 inch** and minimum **1/2-inch-** wide flanges.

1. Depth: 2 inches.
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
  2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645, 7/8 inch deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0329 inch.
  4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical hat shaped.
- F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Rockfon; ROCKWOOL International.
    - d. USG Corporation.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
1. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling tracks to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor

plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.

2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.
  1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C841 that apply to framing installation.
  2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C1063 that apply to framing installation.
  3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C844 that apply to framing installation.
  4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.
- C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
  1. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multilayer Application: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Tile Backing Panels: 16 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.
  1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.

3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
- E. Direct Furring:
1. Screw to wood framing.
  2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced **24 inches** o.c.
- F. Z-Shaped Furring Members:
1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced **24 inches** o.c.
  2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced **24 inches** o.c.
  3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than **12 inches** from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than **1/8 inch** from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
1. Hangers: **48 inches** o.c.
  2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): **48 inches** o.c.
  3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): **16 inches** o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for

- structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within **1/8 inch in 12 feet** measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 09 2216

## SECTION 09 2900 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Interior gypsum board.
  - 2. Tile backing panels.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 09 2216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
  - 2. Section 09 3013 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Gypsum board, Type X.
  - 2. Abuse-resistant gypsum board.
  - 3. Impact-resistant gypsum board.
  - 4. Mold-resistant gypsum board.
  - 5. Gypsum board, Type C.
  - 6. Glass-mat, water-resistant backing board.
  - 7. Cementitious backer units.
  - 8. Water-resistant gypsum backing board.
  - 9. Interior trim.
  - 10. Exterior trim.
  - 11. Aluminum trim.
  - 12. Joint treatment materials.
  - 13. Laminating adhesive.
  - 14. Textured finishes.
- B. Samples: For the following products:
  - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in **12-inch-** long length for each trim accessory indicated.

#### 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet, or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain each type of gypsum panel and joint finishing material from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. American Gypsum.
    - b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - d. National Gypsum Company.
    - e. USG Corporation.
  2. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.

### 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C1178/C1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
    - c. National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  2. Core: **5/8-inch**, Type X.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    - b. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.
    - c. National Gypsum Company.
    - d. USG Corporation.
  2. Thickness: **5/8-inch**.
  3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

### 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - e. Expansion (control) joint.
    - f. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fry Reglet Corporation.
    - b. Gordon Inc.
    - c. Pittcon Industries.
    - d. Tamlyn.
  2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of **ASTM B221**, Alloy 6063-T5.
  3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
  2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
  3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping compound.
    - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
  3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
  2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.
  3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.



- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from **0.033 to 0.112 inch** thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 07 9219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."
- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 2100 "Thermal Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 2600 "Vapor Retarders."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than **1/16 inch** of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than **8 sq. ft.** in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.

3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow **1/4- to 3/8-inch-** wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch-** wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- K. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  1. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Type C: As indicated on Drawings.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
  1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
    - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
  4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multilayer Application:
  1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, **16 inches** minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless

otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with **1/4-inch** gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.
- C. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install where indicated with **1/4-inch** gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- D. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  3. L-Bead: Use where indicated on Drawings.
  4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
  5. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.6 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
  1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
  3. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet, or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 2900

## SECTION 09 3013 – CERAMIC TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Porcelain tile.
  - 2. Glazed ceramic tile.
  - 3. Thresholds.
  - 4. Waterproof membranes.
  - 5. Crack isolation membranes.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
  - 2. Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board" for glass-mat, water-resistant backer board.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
  - 2. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
  - 3. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

- C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.
- D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
  - 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.
  - 2. Build 18" x 18" mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.
  - 1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.

2. Obtain waterproof membrane crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:
  1. Stone thresholds.
  2. Waterproof membrane.
  3. Crack isolation membrane.
  4. Cementitious backer units.

## 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
  1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

## 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Porcelain Floor Tile Type: Unglazed.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Refer to Finish Schedule.
  2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
  3. Face Size: **See Finish Schedule.**
  4. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
  5. Thickness: **See Finish Schedule.**
  6. Face: Plain with square or cushion edges.
  7. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  8. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: **See Finish Schedule.**
  9. Grout Color: **See Finish Schedule.**
  10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
    - a. Base Cap: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile.
    - b. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide reduction in thickness from **1/2 to 1/4 inch** across nominal **4-inch** dimension.
- B. Porcelain Floor Tile Type: Glazed Porcelain.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Refer to Finish Schedule.
  2. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
  3. Face Size: **See Finish Schedule.**
  4. Face Size Variation: Rectified.

5. Thickness: **See Finish Schedule.**
6. Face: Plain with square or cushion edges.
7. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
8. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: **See Finish Schedule.**
9. Grout Color: **See Finish Schedule.**
10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
  - a. Base Cap: Surface bullnose, module size same as adjoining flat tile.
  - b. Tapered Transition Tile: Shape designed to effect transition between thickness of tile floor and adjoining floor finishes of different thickness, tapered to provide reduction in thickness from **1/2 to 1/4 inch** across nominal **4-inch** dimension.

C. Glazed Wall Tile Type: Glazed Ceramic

1. **Manufacturers:** Refer to Finish Schedule.
2. Module Size: **See Finish Schedule.**
3. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
4. Thickness: **See Finish Schedule.**
5. Face: Plain with modified square edges or cushion edges.
6. Finish: Bright, opaque Mat, opaque Semimat, opaque glaze.
7. Tile Color and Pattern: **See Finish Schedule.**
8. Grout Color: **See Finish Schedule.**
9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
  - a. External Corners for Portland Cement Mortar Installations: Bullnose shape with radius of at least **3/4 inch** unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. External Corners for Thinset Mortar Installations: Surface bullnose, same size as adjoining flat tile.
  - c. Internal Corners: Field-buttet square corners. For coved base and cap use angle pieces designed to fit with stretcher shapes.

## 2.4 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
  1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to **1/16 inch** above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to **1/2 inch** or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Metal Thresholds: Refer to architectural drawings for metal trim.

## 2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Waterproof Membrane, Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bostik; Arkema.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.



- e. Schonox HPS North America, Inc.

## 2.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.12 for high performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Crack Isolation Membrane, Fluid-Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Bostik; Arkema.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
    - e. Sika Corporation.

## 2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
  - 1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, **4.0 mils** thick.
  - 2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded-wire fabric, **2 by 2 inches** by **0.062-inch** diameter; comply with ASTM A185/A185M and ASTM A82/A82M, except for minimum wire size.
  - 3. Expanded Metal Lath: Diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C847.
    - a. Base Metal and Finish for Interior Applications: Uncoated or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, with uncoated steel sheet painted after fabrication into lath.
    - b. Base Metal and Finish for Exterior Applications: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.
    - c. Configuration over Studs and Furring: Flat.
    - d. Configuration over Solid Surfaces: Self-furring.
    - e. Weight: **3.4 lb/sq. yd.**
  - 4. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
- B. Water-Cleanable, Tile-Setting Epoxy: ANSI A118.3.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ARDEX Americas.
    - b. Bostik; Arkema.
    - c. Custom Building Products.
    - d. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - e. MAPEI Corporation.
    - f. Parex USA, Inc.
    - g. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.
  - 2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to **140 and 212 deg F**, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

## 2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.

- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ARDEX Americas.
    - b. Custom Building Products.
    - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - d. MAPEI Corporation.
    - e. Sika Corporation.
  
- C. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ARDEX Americas.
    - b. Bostik; Arkema.
    - c. Custom Building Products.
    - d. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - e. MAPEI Corporation.
  - 2. Polymer Type:
    - a. Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
    - b. Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
  
- D. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ARDEX Americas.
    - b. Bostik; Arkema.
    - c. Custom Building Products.
    - d. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - e. MAPEI Corporation.
  - 2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to **140 and 212 deg F**, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.
  
- E. Grout for PregROUTED Tile Sheets: Same product used in factory to pregrout tile sheets.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
  
- B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; nickel silver exposed-edge material.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Blanke Corporation.
    - b. Ceramic Tool Company, Inc.
    - c. Schluter Systems L.P.
  
- C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

- D. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.
  - 1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Building Products.
    - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
    - c. Sakrete; CRH Americas, Oldcastle APG.

## 2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with bonded mortar bed or thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped **1/4 inch per foot** toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from

other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
  - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    - a. Tile floors in wet areas.
    - b. Tile floors consisting of tiles **8 by 8 inches** or larger.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
  - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
  - 1. Ceramic Mosaic Tile: **1/16 inch**.
  - 2. Glazed Wall Tile: **1/16 inch**.
  - 3. Porcelain Tile: **1/16 inch**.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
  - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- J. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.

- K. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to cementitious grout joints according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

### 3.8 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
  - 1. TCNA F111 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1C: Cement mortar bed (thickset) with cleavage membrane.
  - 2. TCNA F115: Thinset mortar; epoxy grout.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Standard dry-set Modified dry-set Improved modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  - 3. TCNA F125-Partial: Thinset mortar on crack isolation membrane.

- a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set Medium-bed, modified dry-set Improved modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  4. TCNA F132: Water-cleanable, tile-setting epoxy on cured cement mortar bed; epoxy grout.
    - a. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
  1. TCNA W221 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1C: Cement mortar bed (thickset) on solid backing.
    - a. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  2. TCNA W222 and ANSI A108.1A ANSI A108.1C: One-coat cement mortar bed (thickset) on solid backing.
    - a. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Standard dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  3. TCNA W245 or TCNA W248: Thinset mortar on glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set Improved modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
- C. Shower Receptor and Wall Installations:
  1. TCNA B415: Thinset mortar on waterproof membrane over cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Standard dry-set Modified dry-set Improved modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
  2. TCNA B420 : Thinset mortar on.
    - a. Thinset Mortar: Modified dry-set Improved modified dry-set mortar.
    - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.

END OF SECTION 09 3013

## SECTION 09 5113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical ceiling panels.
2. Exposed grid suspension system.
3. Wire hangers, fasteners, main runners, cross tees, and wall angle moldings.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board".
2. Division 23 - Heating Ventilating and Air Conditioning.
3. Division 26 - Electrical.

##### C. Alternates:

1. Prior Approval: Unless otherwise provided for in the Contract documents, proposed product substitutions may be submitted no later than TEN (10) working days prior to the date established for receipt of bids. Acceptability of a proposed substitution is contingent upon the Architect's review of the proposal for acceptability and approved products will be set forth by the Addenda. If included in a Bid are substitute products which have not been approved by Addenda, the specified products shall be provided without additional compensation.
2. Submittals which do not provide adequate data for the product evaluation will not be considered. The proposed substitution must meet all requirements of this section, including but not necessarily limited to, the following: Single source materials suppliers (if specified in Section 1.5); Underwriters' Laboratories Classified Acoustical performance; Panel design, size, composition, color, and finish; Suspension system component profiles and sizes; Compliance with the referenced standards.

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

##### A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. ASTM A 1008 Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability.
2. ASTM A 641 Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire.
3. ASTM A 653 Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process.
4. ASTM C 423 Sound Absorption and Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method.
5. ASTM C 635 Standard Specification for Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings.
6. ASTM C 636 Recommended Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels.

7. ASTM E 84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
8. ASTM E 1414 Standard Test Method for Airborne Sound Attenuation Between Rooms Sharing a Common Ceiling Plenum.
9. ASTM E 1111 Standard Test Method for Measuring the Interzone Attenuation of Ceilings Systems.
10. ASTM E 1264 Classification for Acoustical Ceiling Products.
11. ASTM E 1477 Standard Test Method for Luminous Reflectance Factor of Acoustical Materials by Use of Integrating-Sphere Reflectometers.
12. ASTM D 3273 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Growth of Mold on the Surface of Interior Coatings in an Environmental Chamber.
13. ASTM E 119 Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Material.
14. ASHRAE Standard 62.1-2004, "Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality".

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of acoustical ceiling unit and suspension system required.
- B. Samples: Minimum 6 inch x 6 inch samples of specified acoustical panel; 8 inch long samples of exposed wall molding and suspension system, including main runner and 4 foot cross tees.
- C. Shop Drawings: Layout and details of acoustical ceilings. Show locations of items which are to be coordinated with, or supported by the ceilings.
- D. Certifications: Manufacturer's certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards. For acoustical performance, each carton of material must carry an approved independent laboratory classification of NRC, CAC, and AC.
- E. If the material supplied by the acoustical subcontractor does not have an Underwriter's Laboratory classification of acoustical performance on every carton, subcontractor shall be required to send material from every production run appearing on the job to an independent or NVLAP approved laboratory for testing, at the architect's or owner's discretion. All products not conforming to manufacturer's current published values must be removed, disposed of and replaced with complying product at the expense of the Contractor performing the work.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide acoustical panel units and grid components by a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire Performance Characteristics: Identify acoustical ceiling components with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting organization.
- C. Surface Burning Characteristics: As follows, tested per ASTM E 84 and complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A products.
  1. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke Developed: 50 or less.
- D. Fire Resistance Ratings: As indicated by reference to design designations in UL Fire Resistance Directory, for types of assemblies in which acoustical ceilings function as a fire protective membrane and tested per ASTM E 119.



1. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for rated assembly.
- E. Seismic Standard (if required): Provide acoustical panel ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E 580.
  2. CISCA's Guidelines for Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with CISCA's "Guidelines for Seismic Restraint of Direct-Hung Suspended Ceiling Assemblies.
  3. C635/C635M-07 Standard Specification for the Manufacture, Performance, and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings.
  4. C636/C636M-06 Standard Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels.
  5. E1264-98(2005) Standard Classifications for Acoustical Ceiling Products.
  6. International Building Code (IBC), most current edition.
- F. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical ceiling units to project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical ceiling units, permit them to reach room temperature and stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical ceiling units carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Space Enclosure:
  1. Prior to installation, the ceiling product must be kept clean and dry, in an environment that is between 32oF (0o C) and 120oF (49o C) and not subject to Abnormal Conditions. Abnormal conditions include exposure to chemical fumes, vibrations, moisture from conditions such as building leaks or condensation, excessive humidity, or excessive dirt or dust buildup.
  2. HumiGuard Plus Ceilings: Installation of the products shall be carried out where the temperature is between 32°F (0° C) and 120°F (49° C). It is not necessary for the area to be enclosed or for HVAC systems to be functioning. All wet work (plastering, concrete, etc) must be complete and dry.
  3. The ceilings must be maintained to avoid excessive dirt or dust buildup that would provide a medium for microbial growth on ceiling panels. Microbial protection does not extend beyond the treated surface as received from the factory, and does not protect other materials that contact the treated surface such as supported insulation materials.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Acoustical Panel: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace acoustical panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to:

1. Acoustical Panels: Sagging and warping as a result of defects in materials or factory workmanship.
2. Grid System: Rusting and manufacturer's defects.
3. Acoustical Panels with BioBlock Plus or designated as inherently resistive to the growth of micro-organisms installed with Armstrong suspension systems: Visible sag and will resist the growth of mold/mildew and gram positive and gram negative odor and stain causing bacteria.

B. Warranty Period Humiguard:

1. Acoustical panels: Ten (10) years from date of substantial completion.
2. Grid: Ten (10) years from date of substantial completion.
3. Acoustical panels and grid systems with HumiGuard Plus or HumiGuard Max performance supplied by one source manufacturer is thirty (30) years from date of substantial completion.

C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract Documents.

1.9 MAINTENANCE

- A. Extra Materials: Deliver extra materials to Owner. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed. Packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with appropriate labels.
- B. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Furnish quality of full-size units equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.
- C. Exposed Suspension System Components: Furnish quantity of each exposed suspension component equal to 2.0 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Ceiling Panels:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. USG Interiors, Inc.
3. CertainTeed Corp. (Celotex)

B. Suspension Systems:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. Chicago Metallic.
3. CertainTeed Corp.
4. USG Interiors, Inc.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL CEILING UNITS

A. Acoustical Panels (Type A):

1. Surface Texture: Medium.
2. Composition: Mineral Fiber.
3. Color: White.

4. Size: 2' X 4' X 3/4".
5. Edge Profile: Square Lay-In for interface with Prelude XL 15/16" Exposed Tee.
6. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423; Classified with UL label on product carton, 0.75 Minimum.
7. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): ASTM C 1414; Classified with UL label on product carton, 35 CAC Minimum.
8. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264; Class A (UL).
9. Light Reflectance (LR): ASTM E 1477; White Panel: Light Reflectance: 0.87 Minimum.
10. Basis-of-Design-Product: "ULTIMA", as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.

B. Acoustical Panels (Type B):

1. Surface Texture: Medium.
2. Composition: Mineral Fiber.
3. Color: White.
4. Size: 2' X 2' X 3/4".
5. Edge Profile: Square Lay-In for interface with Prelude XL 15/16" Exposed Tee.
6. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423; Classified with UL label on product carton, 0.75 Minimum.
7. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): ASTM C 1414; Classified with UL label on product carton, 35 CAC Minimum.
8. Flame Spread: ASTM E 1264; Class A (UL).
9. Light Reflectance (LR): ASTM E 1477; White Panel: Light Reflectance: 0.87 Minimum.
10. Basis-of-Design-Product: "ULTIMA", as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Components: All main beams and cross tees shall be commercial quality hot-dipped galvanized steel as per ASTM A 653. Main beams and cross tees are double-web steel construction with type 15/16-inch exposed flange design. Exposed surfaces chemically cleansed, capping pre-finished galvanized steel in baked polyester paint. Main beams and cross tees shall have rotary stitching.

1. In accordance with ASCE 7-05/10 and ASTM E580.

- B. Structural Classification: ASTM C 635, Heavy Duty.

- C. Color: White and match the actual color of the selected ceiling tile, unless noted otherwise.

- D. Suspension System: Prelude XL 15/16" as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

- E. Attachment Devices: In accordance with ASCE 7-05/10 and ASTM E580.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wire for Hangers and Ties: In accordance with ASCE 7-05/10 and ASTM E580.

- B. Perimeter Moldings: Same material and finish as grid.

1. Nominal 7/8-inch x 7/8-inch hemmed, pre-finished angle molding with seismic clip for mounting at same elevation as face of grid.

- a. Product: BERC2 Seismic Clip by Armstrong.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not proceed with installation until all wet work such as concrete, terrazzo, plastering and painting has been completed and thoroughly dried out, unless expressly permitted by manufacturer's printed recommendations. (Exception: HumiGuard Max Ceilings).

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical units to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid use of less than half width units at borders, and comply with reflected ceiling plans. Coordinate panel layout with mechanical and electrical fixtures.
- B. Coordination: Furnish layouts for preset inserts, clips, and other ceiling anchors whose installation is specified in other sections.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and similar devices to other trades for installation well in advance of time needed for coordination of other work.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install suspension system and panels in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, and in compliance with ASTM C 636 and with the authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Suspend main beam from overhead construction with hanger wires spaced 4'-0" on center along the length of the main runner. Install hanger wires plumb and straight.
- C. Install wall moldings at intersection of suspended ceiling and vertical surfaces. Miter corners where wall moldings intersect or install corner caps.
- D. For reveal edge panels: Cut and reveal or rabbet edges of ceiling panels at border areas and vertical surfaces.
- E. Install acoustical panels in coordination with suspended system, with edges resting on flanges of main runner and cross tees. Cut and fit panels neatly against abutting surfaces. Support edges by wall moldings.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Replace damaged and broken panels.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension members. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for cleaning and touch up of minor finish damage. Remove and replace work that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 5113

## SECTION 09 6513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Thermoplastic-rubber base.
  - 2. Rubber stair accessories.
  - 3. Rubber molding accessories.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than **12 inches** long.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated and for each color, texture, and pattern required in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than **12 inches** long.
- E. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Furnish not less than **10 linear feet** for every **500 linear feet** or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **50 deg F** or more than **90 deg F**.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **70 deg F** or more than **95 deg F**, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than **55 deg F** or more than **95 deg F**.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Mannington Commercial
  - 2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Flexco.
  - 4. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
  - 5. Nora by Interface.
  - 6. Roppe Corporation.
- B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  - 1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
  - 2. Style and Location:
    - a. Style A, Straight: Provide in areas with carpet.
    - b. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient floor coverings.
- C. Thickness: **0.125 inch**.
- D. Height: **6 inches**.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Preformed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed or preformed.

2.2 RUBBER STAIR ACCESSORIES

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Basis-of-Design: Integrated Rubber Stair Tread as manufactured by Roppe Corporation.
  2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  3. Johnsonite; a Tarkett company.
- C. Stair Treads: ASTM F 2169.
  1. Type: TP (rubber, thermoplastic).
  2. Class: 2 (pattern; embossed, grooved, or ribbed).
  3. Group: 1 (embedded abrasive strips).
  4. Nosing Style: Square, adjustable to cover angles between 60 and 90 degrees.
  5. Nosing Height: 1-1/2 inches.
  6. Thickness: 1/4 inch and tapered to back edge.
  7. Size: Lengths and depths to fit each stair tread in one piece one piece or, for treads exceeding maximum lengths manufactured, in equal-length units.
  8. Integral Risers: Smooth, flat; in height that fully covers substrate.
- D. Landing Tile: Matching treads; produced by same manufacturer as treads and recommended by manufacturer for installation with treads.
- E. Locations: Provide rubber stair accessories in areas indicated.

### 2.3 RUBBER MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Roppe Corporation.
  2. VPI Corporation.
  3. Mannington Commercial.
- B. Description: Rubber stair-tread nosing reducer strip for resilient floor covering.
- C. Profile and Dimensions: As indicated.
- D. Locations: Provide rubber molding accessories in areas indicated.

### 2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
  1. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 50 Insert value> g/L or less and 60 g/L or less for rubber stair treads.
- C. Stair-Tread Nose Filler: Two-part epoxy compound recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.

- D. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish, nominal 2 inches wide, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.
- E. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft. , and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.



- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.
- H. Job-Formed Corners:
  - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than **3 inches** in length.
    - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
  - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than **3 inches** in length.
    - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
  - 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
  - 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
  - 3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.

3. Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from resilient stair treads before applying liquid floor polish.
  1. Apply two coat(s).
- E. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 6513

## SECTION 09 6519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Solid vinyl floor tile.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient floor tile.
  - 1. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
  - 2. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples: Full-size units of each color, texture, and pattern of floor tile required.
- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.
- E. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.
  - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:
  - 1. 48 hours before installation.
  - 2. During installation.
  - 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2.2 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE

- A. **Manufacturers:** Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide JJ Flooring "Step by Step." or comparable product with Architects approval by one of the following:
  - 1. Mohawk Group
  - 2. Tandus Flooring.
  - 3. Shaw.
  - 4. Patcraft.
  - 5. Alternate submissions must be approved ten (10) business days prior to bid date by Architect and Owner. All products submitted must be from the manufacturer's standard product line.
- A. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.
  - 1. Class: Class III, Printed film vinyl plank.
  - 2. Type: B, Embossed Surface.
- B. Thickness: 3 mm.
- C. Wear Layer: 20 mil. (0.5mm)
- D. Size: 18" x 36".
- E. Finishg: Enhanced UV urethane with ceramic bead.
- F. Pattern & Color: Refer to Finish Schedule.
- G. Warranty: 10 year

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed **1000 sq. ft.** and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of **3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft.** in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
  - 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
  - 1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
  - 1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Resilient Terrazzo Accessories: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 6519

## SECTION 09 6566 - RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Rubber Floor Tile.
    - a. Type F1 - Locker and Training Rooms, Restrooms.
    - b. Type F2 - Weight Rooms and Corridors.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 09 3013 "Ceramic Tiling" for coordination between differing floorings.
  - 2. Section 09 6513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for wall base and accessories installed with flooring, and for coordination between differing floorings.
  - 3. Section 09 6519 "Resilient Tile Flooring" for coordination between differing floorings.
  - 4. Section 12 4813 "Entrance Floor Tile" for coordination between differing floorings.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details and locations of the following:
  - 1. Border tiles.
  - 2. Floor patterns.
  - 3. Locations of floor inserts for athletic equipment installed through flooring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of flooring indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type, color, and pattern of flooring indicated, 12" x 12" square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.
- E. Qualification Data: For qualified flooring Installer.
- F. Maintenance Data: For flooring to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storing.
- B. Store materials to prevent deterioration. Store tiles on flat surfaces.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Adhesively Applied Products:

1. Maintain temperatures during installation within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 65 deg F or more than 75 deg F, in spaces to receive flooring 48 hours before installation, during installation, and 48 hours after installation unless longer period is recommended in writing by manufacturer.
2. After postinstallation period, maintain temperatures within range recommended in writing by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F.
3. Close spaces to traffic during flooring installation.
4. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after flooring installation unless manufacturer recommends longer period in writing.

B. Install flooring after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturer's standard warranty.

#### 1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials, before installation begins, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Tile: Furnish no fewer than 1 box for each 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of floor tile installed.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 RUBBER WEIGHT ROOM FLOOR (Type F1 – Rubber Flooring Type 1)

A. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mondo "Ramflex" Sports Rubber Flooring, or comparable product by one of the following with architects' approval prior to bidding:

1. Robbins Sports Surfaces.
2. Tarkett Sports

B. Description: Athletic flooring consisting of 100% vulcanized rubber sheets.

C. Material: Vulcanized Rubber.

D. Traffic-Surface Texture: Hammered.

E. Sheet width: 6'-1" (1.86 m).

F. Thickness: 15/64" (6 mm).

G. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

H. Performance of the manufactured Product to conform to the following criteria:

| Performance Criterion                                    | Test Method | Requirement | Result*     |
|--|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Elongation at Break                                      | ASTM D412   | ≥100%       | ≥180%       |
| Tensile Strength   | ASTM D412   | ≥300 psi    | ≥650 psi    |
| Static Coefficient of Friction (neolite & leather heels) | ASTM D2047  | ≥0.50 (dry) | ≥0.80 (dry) |
| Hardness of Top Layer (Shore A)                          | ASTM D2240  | 75 ± 5      | 80          |
| Hardness of Bottom Layer (Shore A)                       | ASTM D2240  | 60 ± 10     | 70          |



| Performance Criterion                                | Test Method   | Requirement                        | Result*                           |
|--|---------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Abrasion Resistance (H18 wheel, 1000 g, 1000 cycles) | ASTM D3389    | ≤1.0 g                             | ≤0.4 g                            |
| Critical Radiant Flux                                | ASTM E648     | ≥0.22 W/cm <sup>2</sup> (Class 2)  | ≥0.45 W/cm <sup>2</sup> (Class 1) |
| Reduction of Bacterial Activity - MRSA (ATC 43300)   | ASTM E2180    | -                                  | ≥99,99% reduction                 |
| Thickness  | ASTM F386     | 6 mm (±0.2 mm)<br>0.236" (±0.008") | Compliant                         |
| Resistance to Chemicals                              | ASTM F925     | ≤Slight Change                     | Compliant **                      |
| Static Loading (Tested at 250psi)                    | ASTM F970     | ≤0.005 in                          | 0.002 in                          |
| Heat Resistance                                      | ASTM F1514    | ΔE ≤8.0                            | Compliant                         |
| Light Resistance                                     | ASTM F1515    | ΔE ≤8.0                            | Compliant                         |
| Reduction of Bacterial Activity - MRSA (ATC 43300)   | ISO 22196     | -                                  | ≥99,999% reduction                |
| <b>Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Certifications</b>       |               |                                    |                                   |
| CA Section 01350                                     | CA: V1.1-2010 | -                                  | Compliant                         |
| Greenguard Gold                                      | Greenguard    | -                                  | Compliant                         |
| Greenguard Certification                             | Greenguard    | -                                  | Compliant                         |
| French Decree № 2011-321                             | ISO 16000-9   | -                                  | Compliant (Class A+)              |

## 2.2 RUBBER WEIGHT ROOM FLOOR (Type F2 – Rubber Flooring Type 2)

- A. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mondo "Sport Impact" Resilient Athletic Flooring, or comparable product by one of the following with architects' approval prior to bidding:
1. Robbins Sports Flooring.
  2. Connor Sports Flooring.
- B. Description: Athletic flooring consisting of double-layered vulcanized rubber flooring that can resist wear from heavy weights and the most intense sports activities.
- C. Material: Calendered and vulcanized with base of natural and synthetic rubber.
- D. Traffic-Surface Texture: Sealskin.
- E. Sheet width: 6'-1" (1.86 m).
- F. Thickness: 10 mm total (3 mm wear layer).
- G. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
- H. Performance of the manufactured Product to conform to the following criteria:

| Performance Criterion                               | Test Method | Requirement                       | Result*                           |
|---|-------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Elongation at Break                                 | ASTM D412   | ≥100%                             | ≥120%                             |
| Tensile Strength                                    | ASTM D412   | ≥300 psi                          | ≥550 psi                          |
| Static Coefficient of Friction (neolite heel)       | ASTM D2047  | ≥0.50 (dry)                       | ≥0.80 (dry)                       |
| Hardness of Top Layer (Shore A)                     | ASTM D2240  | 80 ± 5                            | 80                                |
| Hardness of Bottom Layer (Shore A)                  | ASTM D2240  | 70 ± 8                            | 75                                |
| Abrasion Resistance (H18 wheel, 1000g, 1000 cycles) | ASTM D3389  | ≤1.0 g                            | ≤0.4 g                            |
| Impact Insulation Class                             | ASTM E492   | -                                 | ≈ 59 dB (IIC)                     |
| Critical Radiant Flux                               | ASTM E648   | ≥0.22 W/cm <sup>2</sup> (Class 2) | ≥0.45 W/cm <sup>2</sup> (Class 1) |

|   |               |                                     |                      |
|---|---------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Reduction of Bacterial Activity - <i>MRSA (ATC 43300)</i> | ASTM E2180    | -                                   | ≥99,99% reduction    |
| Thickness   | ASTM F386     | 10 mm (±0.2 mm)<br>0.394" (±0.008") | Compliant            |
| Resistance to Chemicals                                   | ASTM F925     | ≤Slight Change                      | Compliant **         |
| Static Loading (Tested at 250psi)                         | ASTM F970     | ≤0.008 in                           | 0.002 in             |
| Heat Resistance   | ASTM F1514    | ΔE ≤8.0                             | Compliant            |
| Light Resistance  | ASTM F1515    | ΔE ≤8.0                             | Compliant            |
| Reduction of Bacterial Activity - <i>MRSA (ATC 43300)</i> | ISO 22196     | -                                   | ≥99,999% reduction   |
| <b>Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Certifications</b>            |               |                                     |                      |
| CA Section 01350  | CA: V1.1-2010 | -                                   | Compliant            |
| Greenguard Gold   | Greenguard    | -                                   | Compliant            |
| Greenguard Certification                                  | Greenguard    | -                                   | Compliant            |
| French Decree № 2011-321                                  | ISO 16000-9   | -                                   | Compliant (Class A+) |

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compound: As recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Certified by manufacturer, recommended in writing by manufacturer for substrate and conditions indicated.
  - 1. Product: Mondo PU 105 (polyurethane).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations to ensure adhesion of flooring.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compound to fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates.
- C. Move flooring and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation unless manufacturer recommends a longer period in writing.
  - 1. Do not install flooring until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
- D. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by flooring immediately before installation. After cleaning, examine substrates for moisture, alkaline salts, carbonation, and dust.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.3 SHEET FLOOR COVERING INSTALLATION

- A. Unroll sheet floor coverings and allow them to stabilize before cutting and fitting.
- B. Lay out sheet floor coverings as follows:
  - 1. Maintain uniformity of floor covering direction.
  - 2. Minimize number of seams; place seams in inconspicuous and low-traffic areas, at least 6 inches (152 mm) away from parallel joints in floor covering substrates.
  - 3. Match edges of floor coverings for color shading at seams.
  - 4. Avoid cross seams.
- C. Seams: Prepare and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining floor covering surfaces.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after completing flooring installation:
  - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from flooring surfaces.
  - 2. Sweep and vacuum flooring thoroughly.
  - 3. Damp-mop flooring to remove marks and soil after time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- B. Protect flooring from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period. Use protection methods recommended in writing by manufacturer.
  - 1. Do not move heavy and sharp objects directly over flooring. Protect flooring with craft paper to prevent damage from storing or moving objects over flooring.

END OF SECTION 09 6566

## SECTION 09 6813 - TILE CARPETING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes modular carpet tile.
- B. Related Sections Include the Following:
  - 1. Section 09 3013 "Ceramic Tiling" for coordination between tile and tile carpeting.
  - 2. Section 09 6513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet tile installation including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
    - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
    - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
  - 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
  - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
  - 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
  - 3. Type of subfloor.
  - 4. Type of installation.
  - 5. Pattern of installation.
  - 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
  - 7. Pile direction.
  - 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
  - 9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  - 10. Transition details to other flooring materials.

- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
  - 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
  - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size units equal to 5 percent of amount installed for each type indicated, but not less than 10 sq. yd. (8.3 sq. m).

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association or who can demonstrate compliance with certification.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, provide carpet tile identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response according to NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups at locations and in sizes shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI 104.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.

- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weather-tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CARPET TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Patcraft "Organic Interruption" or comparable product with Architects approval by one of the following:
  - 1. Mohawk Group
  - 2. Tandus Flooring.
  - 3. Shaw.
  - 4. Alternate submissions must be approved ten (10) business days prior to bid date by Architect and Owner. All products submitted must be from the manufacturer's standard product line.
- B. Product Specifications:
  - 1. Color: Refer to Finish Schedule.
  - 2. Fiber Type: Solution Q Extreme Nylon.
  - 3. Construction: Tufted.
  - 4. Tufted Yarn Weight: 19 oz/yd. sq.
  - 5. Dye Method: Solution Dyed.
  - 6. Gauge: 1/12.
  - 7. Primary Backing: EcoWorx.
  - 8. Size: 18" x 36" tile.
  - 9. Installation Method: Refer to Plans and Finish Schedule.
  - 10. Warranty: Lifetime commercial limited.

#### 2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, non-staining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
  - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesives shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
  1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
  3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Clean metal substrates of grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if directed by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.

- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - C. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
  - D. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - E. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
  - F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.
  - G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
    - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
    - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
    - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
  - B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
  - C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 09 6813



## SECTION 09 9113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
  - 1. Steel.
  - 2. Galvanized metal.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 07 7200 "Roof Accessories".
  - 3. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for painting of sealant.
  - 4. Division 08 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
  - 5. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. MPI Standards:
  - 1. Products: Complying with MPI Standards.

- B. VOC Requirements:
  - 1. Products: Complying with VOC Requirements.
- C. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 2 – Products.
    - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
    - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
  - 2. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
    - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (All paint materials are based on Kwal and Sherwin-Williams).
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
  - 3. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
  - 4. ICI Paints/PPG.
  - 5. Insl-x.
  - 6. Iowa Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 7. Kwal Paint.
  - 8. Miller Paint.
  - 9. Porter Paints.
  - 10. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

### A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

### B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

1. Primer: One Coat, unless otherwise specified.
2. Finish: Two Finish Coats.

## 2.3 PAINT, MATERIALS

### A. All Structural and Miscellaneous Steel Shall Receive:

1. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B66-310 Series Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.
2. 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams B66W01151Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating.

### B. All Steel Tube Outriggers Shall Receive:

1. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B66-310 Series Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.
2. 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams B66W01151Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating.

### C. All Galvanized Metal, Exposed Mechanical Units on Roof, Exposed Mechanical Vent Hoods, Sheet Metal Flashing, and Coated Sheet Metal Shall Receive:

(All galvanized metal should be wiped down with galva-prep like product.)

1. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B66-310 Series Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.
2. 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams B66W01151Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating.

### D. All Hollow Metal Frames and Doors (Factory Primed) Shall Receive:

1. Touch-up factory primer.
2. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B66-310 Series Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
  1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
  - 2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and re-prime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.

2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of paint materials with product requirements.
3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 9113

## SECTION 09 9123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
  - 1. Steel.
  - 2. Galvanized metal.
  - 3. Gypsum board.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Section 05 5100 "Metal Stairs" for paint on railings and handrails.
  - 3. Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants" for painting of sealant.
  - 4. Division 08 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
  - 5. Section 09 2900 "Gypsum Board" for painting of gypsum board.
  - 6. Section 09 9113 "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
  - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
  - 3. Label each coat of each Sample.
  - 4. Label each Sample for location and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. MPI Standards:
  - 1. Products: Complying with MPI Standards.

- B. VOC Requirements:
  - 1. Products: Complying with VOC Requirements.
- C. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 2 - Products.
    - a. Exposed CMU: Provide 100 sq. ft. sample for approval by Owner and Architect.
    - b. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide sample draw down of 11" x 12".
    - c. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
  - 2. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated.
  - 3. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
    - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: (All paint materials are based on Comex, Gemini, and Sherwin-Williams).
  - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  - 2. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
  - 3. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
  - 4. Gemini.
  - 5. ICI Paints/PPG.
  - 6. Insl-x.
  - 7. Iowa Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 8. Kwal Paint.
  - 9. Miller Paint.
  - 10. Porter Paints.

11. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

### A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

### B. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide topcoat paints and anti-corrosive and anti-rust paints applied to ferrous metals that comply with the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to paints and coatings that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:

1. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
2. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
  - a. Acrolein.
  - b. Acrylonitrile.
  - c. Antimony.
  - d. Benzene.
  - e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.
  - f. Cadmium.
  - g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
  - h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.
  - i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.
  - j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
  - k. Diethyl phthalate.
  - l. Dimethyl phthalate.
  - m. Ethylbenzene.
  - n. Formaldehyde.
  - o. Hexavalent chromium.
  - p. Isophorone.
  - q. Lead.
  - r. Mercury.
  - s. Methyl ethyl ketone.
  - t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.
  - u. Methylene chloride.
  - v. Naphthalene.
  - w. Toluene (methylbenzene).
  - x. 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
  - y. Vinyl chloride.

### C. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

1. Primer: One Coat, unless otherwise specified.
2. Finish: Two Coats of paint.
3. Paint Color Selection:
  - a. Field – One color.
  - b. Accent – Five colors.



## 2.3 PAINT, MATERIALS

- A. All Gypsum Board and Exposed Concrete (Other Than Those Receiving Epoxy Paint) Shall Receive:
1. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B28W08000 PVA Interior Latex Primer & Sealer.
  2. 2 Coats Comex C102 UltraTech Interior Latex Satin Enamel.
- B. Exposed Ceilings, Miscellaneous Steel or Metal, Exposed Structure, Exposed Conduit/Piping, and Exposed Ductwork Shall Receive:
1. 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams B42W1 Pro Industrial Waterborne Acrylic Dryfall Flat.
- C. Electrical Panel Boards Covers and Wall Mounted Registers or Grilles Shall Receive:
1. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B66-310 Series Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.
  2. 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams B66W01151 Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating.
- D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components. Primer needs to be applied to surface embedded in concrete or masonry. Do not apply finish coat to surface embedded in concrete masonry.
1. Railings:
    - a. Primer: 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams Macropoxy® 646.
    - b. Finish Coat: 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams Water-Based Acrolon 100 Urethane.
      - 1) Stripe paint corner cervices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  2. Handrails:
    - a. Primer: 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams Macropoxy® 646.
    - b. Finish Coat: 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams Water-Based Acrolon 100 Urethane.
- E. All Hollow Metal Doors and Frames Shall Receive:
1. Touch-up factory primer.
  2. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B66-310 Series Pro Industrial Pro-Cryl Universal Primer.
  3. 2 Coats Sherwin-Williams B66W01151 Pro Industrial DTM Acrylic Semi-Gloss Coating.
- F. Gypsum Board at all wet areas (Epoxy Paint) Shall Receive:
1. 1 Coat Sherwin-Williams B28W08000 PVA Interior Latex Primer & Sealer.  
2 Coats Comex C145 UltraTech Pre-Catalyzed Water-Based Epoxy Semi-Gloss.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
  1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
  2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  1. Remove incompatible primers and re-prime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- H. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Mechanical and Electrical Work: Paint items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Mechanical Work:
    - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - e. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
    - f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
    - g. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
  2. Electrical Work:
    - a. Switchgear.
    - b. Panelboards.
    - c. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied:
1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 9123

## SECTION 09 9623 - GRAFFITI-RESISTANT COATINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### SUMMARY

Section Includes: Permanent anti-graffiti coating system.

Related Sections:

Section 04 2000 – Unit Masonry: Substrate for application of Anti-Graffiti Coating.

#### 1.1 QUALITY ASSURANCE

Contractor Qualifications: Installer shall be a firm with not less than three years of successful experience in application of coatings of type required on substrates similar to those of this project. The firm shall be approved by the manufacturer of the coating for installation of their product.

Manufacturer's representative shall inspect substrate conditions including alkalinity and moisture content. Obtain written approval from representative before proceeding with work.

Meets ASTM-D7089 with Cleanability at least Level 2.

Meets ASTM-D6578 with Cleanability at least Level 9.

#### SUBMITTALS

Submit in accordance with Section 01 3300.

Instructions: Provide instructions bearing manufacturer's name, coating type, and recommended installation procedures. Provide methods and material instruction for graffiti removal. Include adhesive-backed graffiti removal instruction label suitable for application to interior surface.

Submit proof of purchase (Invoice of materials purchased) and proof of delivery of coating materials.

Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit one copy of manufacturer's warranty for specified materials.

Field Sample: Apply graffiti resistant coating to field mock-up sample representing exterior wall surface to be coated. Apply coating system over a minimum 3 ft x 3 ft test area and test removal of applied spray paint in presence of Construction Manager for approval using removal methods recommended by the manufacturer.

#### EXTRA MATERIALS

Furnish the following to building owner upon completion of the Project.

Provide four containers of removal products as recommended by the manufacturer accompanied by removal instructions.

#### DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements: Transport, handle, store, and protect products.

Paint orders to the manufacturer or supplier shall identify the store number, location, and address of project. Contractor shall require a record keeping account be established and maintained by the paint supplier which records graffiti resistant paint type, brand, and quantity purchased, for the specific project.

Deliver coating materials in sealed original labeled containers, bearing manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and/or reducing.

Store materials at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F in ventilated area and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

Prevent fire hazards and spontaneous combustion.

## WARRANTY

Provide manufacturers written warranty guaranteeing effective graffiti removal for not less than 5 years and warrant that treated surfaces can be effectively and repeatedly cleaned of graffiti without damage or loss of effectiveness of the graffiti resistant coating. Manufacturer shall, for the duration of the warranty period, guarantee replacement of product and labor to remove graffiti and replace graffiti resistant coating where graffiti removal has shown to be ineffective.

## PROJECT CONDITIONS

Environmental Requirements: Follow manufacturer's recommendations for temperature range in which coating may be applied.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GRAFFITI RESISTANT COATING

Graffiti resistant coating shall be a clear, non-sacrificial graffiti resistant coating which provides protection for exterior vertical surfaces from permanent graffiti staining and damage caused by spray paint and marking pens. Coating shall be suitable for application to painted and unpainted surfaces including masonry, concrete and metals. Product shall be of type such that recoating with the underlying paint is possible without removal of the graffiti resistant coating. Product shall be a coating that dries clear, non-yellowing, with a low luster.

Manufacturer: Dunn-Edwards – Ultrashield Aliphatic Polyurethane Enamel Clear. Product # IP631.

Provide two-coat application.

Graffiti Remover: VandlClean Super graffiti remover by Rainguard International, Newport Beach, CA 888-765-7070.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

Verify all surfaces are ready to receive coating in accordance with manufacturer's printed requirements. Beginning of installation indicates acceptance of substrate.

Unpainted Concrete and Masonry: Verify water repellent has been applied to new or non-painted concrete and masonry surfaces prior to the application of the anti-graffiti coating.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

Surface shall be free of dirt, dust, contaminants such as curing compounds, hardeners, bond breakers, and form release. Allow painted surfaces to cure properly. Do not water blast painted surfaces. Assure surfaces are clean and dry.

Mask or otherwise protect adjacent surfaces not scheduled to receive coating. If applied on un-scheduled surfaces such as glass, remove immediately, by approved method.

Protect landscaping, property, and vehicles from overspray and drift.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

Apply coating in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

Application Rate: Apply each coat at the manufacturers published application rate.

### 3.4 SURFACES TO BE COATED

Apply graffiti resistant coating to all exterior exposed building surfaces to 8'-0" from the ground level, including concrete, masonry, metal doors and frames, sheet metal items, downspouts, stucco, wood, painted metal bollards, and metal railing. Apply coating to painted and unpainted surfaces. Exclude horizontal surfaces subject to wheel or foot traffic.

Apply to exterior non-building vertical surfaces (all exposes sides, ends etc.) including solid or semi-solid fencing, concrete retaining walls, and masonry screening as applicable.

### 3.5 MAINTENANCE

Deliver cleaning products to Owner for storage and subsequent use for graffiti removal. Apply cleaning instructions label to interior wall location as directed by the Construction Manager.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL:

Verify application rate by periodic on-site inspection and calculation of area covered compared to consumption of coating material used. Document inspections showing total area covered and number and volume of coating containers used.

END OF SECTION 09 9623

**DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES**

|            |  |
|------------|--|
| 10 1100    | VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS                     |
| 10 1200    | DISPLAY CASES                            |
| 10 1423    | PANEL SIGNAGE                            |
| 10 2113    | PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS        |
| 10 2600    | WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION                 |
| 10 2623.11 | DECORATIVE PROTECTION PANELS             |
| 10 2800    | TOILET, BATH AND LOCKER ROOM ACCESSORIES |
| 10 4413    | FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS               |
| 10 4416    | FIRE EXTINGUISHER                        |
| 10 5113    | METAL LOCKERS                            |



## SECTION 10 1100 - VISUAL DISPLAY UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Markerboards.
  - 2. Tackboards.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for solid blocking.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For visual display surfaces. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Show locations of panel joints.
  - 2. Include sections of typical trim members.
  - 3. Show installation details.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for surface-burning characteristics of fabrics.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For visual display surface units to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer shall be a firm engaged in the manufacturer of visual display boards in the United States, making the types and sizes required, and whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for a minimum of 10-years.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed: 10 or less.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Storage and Protection:
1. Store factory-framed units vertically with packing materials between each unit to prevent damage.
  2. Store materials in dry areas at temperatures above 55 degrees F.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements: Install units only when the building is enclosed and interior air and substrate temperatures are stable and approximate design conditions.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
    - b. Surfaces lose gloss variance or color consistency under normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: As long as the product is installed and in use, or forever, whichever comes first.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MARKERBOARDS

- A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: ASTM A 424, enameling-grade steel, uncoated thickness indicated; with exposed face and edges coated with primer, 1.7-to-2.5-mil- (0.043-to-0.064-mm-) thick ground coat, and color cover coat; and with concealed face coated with primer and 1.7-to-2.5-mil- (0.043-to-0.064-mm-) thick ground coat.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
    - a. PolyVision Corporation, a Steelcase company; E3 Environmental *Ceramicsteel*® Markerboard.
    - b. Products manufactured by the following companies will be acceptable, provided all requirements of this specification are adhered to:
      - 1) Claridge
      - 2) ADP Lemco, Inc.
      - 3) Best-Rite Manufacturing.
      - 4) Inwest Manufacturing.
      - 5) Magna-Visual
      - 6) Or approved equal by Architect/Owner prior to bidding.
  2. Face sheet: Enameling grade cold rolled steel: 0.016" thick for boards without joints, 0.025" thick for boards with spline joints.
    - a. Facing Sheet: e<sup>3</sup> CeramicSteel Markerboard,
      - 1) Surface: "Satin Gloss". Markerboards will also be used as a projection surface for short throw projectors.

- b. Color: "White".
  3. Core: 1/2-inch-thick particleboard.
  4. Moisture backer: 0.015-inch-thick aluminum foil, laminated to core.
  5. Provide staff lines at Band, Choir and Orchestra markerboards.
  6. Provide court marking at Locker Room markerboards
- B. Tackboards:
  1. Core: 1/4-inch fiberboard and 1/4-inch natural cork.
  2. Covering: 15 ounce per linear yard PolyVision Type I Vinyl.
    - a. Color(s): As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's range of standard colors.
- C. Trim:
  1. (100 Series) All trim shall be Type 6063 alloy grade aluminum with T5 tempering treatment and shall receive Type 201-R1 satin anodized finish. Type C-4, 3/4-inch extruded aluminum, and CRC-2B, 2-3/4 inch blade type tray with 3/4 inch radius safety corners.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Map Rail:
  1. Height: 2 inches.
  2. Natural cork, 1/4 inch thick, 15 pounds per cubic foot density, minimum.
- B. Attachment Devices: As recommended by the manufacturer for the board(s) specified.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: In accordance with PEI-1002.
- B. Lamination: Use factory machines only and use environmentally friendly adhesives formulated for machine lamination.
- C. Shop/Factory Finishing of Facing Sheet:
  1. Both surfaces of continuously coiled pre-cleaned and treated enameling grade steel base metal shall receive a ground coat of porcelain enamel which shall be fused to the metal in a firing operation used exclusively for ground coat application. A color cover coat of porcelain enamel shall be applied to one surface of the ground coat and fused by a firing operation used exclusively for color coat application. All e<sup>3</sup> CeramicSteel Markerboard "slip" shall be machine-applied with automatic spray or roll-coat equipment.
  2. Ground Coat: 1.7 to 2.5 mils enamel, minimum.
  3. Cover (Color) Coat for Markerboards: 3.0 to 4.0 mils enamel, minimum.
  4. Ground Coat on Back of Facing: 1.7 to 2.5 mils enamel, minimum.
  5. Firing Temperatures:
    - a. Markerboards: 1475 to 1500 degrees F, minimum.

- D. Trim:
1. Factory notch and bend perimeter trim to form wrapped corners without seams and hairline miters along face of the visual display board.
  2. Fasten factory applied trim at rear of visual display board to conceal all trim fasteners.
  3. Ship marker trays loose for field installation. Install trays prior to installation of visual display boards, concealing all fasteners.
  4. Finish shall be thoroughly and uniformly applied, covering all surfaces and edges. Unacceptable trim shall be replaced prior to Owner acceptance.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Prepare surfaces to achieve a smooth, dry, clean surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, defects, projections, depressions, and substances that will impair bond between visual display surfaces and wall surfaces.
- B. Install visual display surfaces, as recommended by the manufacturer, in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
1. Markerboards: Not less than 30" above floor; not more than 72" above floor.
- C. Verify moisture and temperature levels of substrate and environment have stabilized.
- D. Visual Display Boards: Attach visual display boards to wall surfaces with egg-size adhesive gobs at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. horizontally and vertically.
- E. Visual Display Boards: Attach concealed clips, hangers, and grounds to wall surfaces and to visual display boards with fasteners at not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Secure both top and bottom of boards to walls.
- F. Clean visual display surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach one cleaning label to visual display surface in each room. Cover and protect visual display surfaces.

#### 3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect boards from damage until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 10 1100

## SECTION 10 1200 - DISPLAY CASES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Display Case.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 26 Sections for lighting, wiring and other electrical work associated for illumination of display case.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Display Case: Glazed cabinet with adjustable shelves.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For display case. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated.

- 1. Visual Display Surface: Not less than 8-1/2 by 11 inches, mounted on substrate indicated for final Work. Include one panel for each type, color, and texture required.

- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for surface-burning characteristics of fabric.

- D. Maintenance Data: For visual display surfaces, operating hardware, and illuminated units to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain display case and bulletin board through one source from single manufacturer.

- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install display case until spaces are enclosed and weather tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings for display case by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DISPLAY CASE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Claridge 370 Series (model #376) Recessed Display Case or comparable by one of the following:
  - 1. Aarco Products Inc.
  - 2. ADP Lemco.
  - 3. Inwest Manufacturing (Model #DSP 5969 Wall Insert with TWS – DSP Flush Mount Display Case Shelving System).
- B. Fabrication: Recessed case of heavy-duty plywood box of birch veneer interior. All exposed aluminum trim shall be clear anodized aluminum 6063-T5. Unit includes shelf standards, brackets, and tackable surface at the back wall of the case.
  - 1. Doors: 3/16" tempered sliding glass with ground finger pulls and lock.
  - 2. Shelves: 1/4" tempered glass with polished edges.
  - 3. Tackable Surface: Cork.
  - 4. Lights: Included and specified under Division 26 Electrical.
  - 5. Lock: Provide cylinder lock.
- C. Width: 8'-0".
- D. Height: 48 inches.
- E. Depth: 20 inches.
- F. Doors: (3) doors.
- G. Mounting Height: 3'-4" A.F.F.
- H. Mounting: Surface mounted.

### 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate bulletin boards and display cases to requirements indicated for dimensions, design, and thickness and finish of materials.
- B. Use metals and shapes of thickness and reinforcing to produce flat surfaces, free of oil-canning, and to impart strength for size, design, and application indicated.
- C. Fabricate cabinets and door frames with reinforced corners, mitered to a hairline fit, with no exposed fasteners.

- D. Fabricate exterior units with vents to permit evaporation of moisture trapped inside.
- E. Fabricate shelf standards plumb and at heights to align shelf brackets for level shelves.

### 2.3 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Finish designations prefixed AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- E. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, surface conditions of wall, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power system to verify actual locations of connections before installation of illuminated units.
- C. Examine walls and partitions for proper backing for display case.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for display case as required by type and size of unit.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install units in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
- B. Install display case shelving level and straight.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors to operate smoothly without warp or bind and so contact points meet accurately. Lubricate operating hardware as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 10 1200



## SECTION 10 1423 – PANEL SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Panel signs.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 01 5000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary Project identification signs and for temporary information and directional signs.
  - 2. Section 22 0548 "Identification for Plumbing Pipes and Equipment" for labels, tags, and nameplates for plumbing systems and equipment.
  - 3. Division 23 Sections for labels, tags, and nameplates for HVAC systems and equipment.
  - 4. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections for illuminated signs.
  - 5. Division 26 Section for labels, tags, and nameplates for electrical equipment.
  - 6. Division 26 Section "Interior Lighting" for illuminated Exit signs.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
  - 1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, accessories and installation details.
  - 2. Provide message schedule, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille layout for each sign and sign type.
- C. Samples for selection of color, pattern, and texture: Manufacturer's sample cuts of material sections including standard colors from a standard color chart, Pantone, Matthews Color System, Sherwin Williams, etc., will be used for color selection:
  - 1. Aluminum sheet.
  - 2. Castings.
  - 3. Photo-polymer sheet.
  - 4. Acrylic sheet.
  - 5. Polycarbonate sheet.
- D. Sign Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

- E. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance and sufficient production capacity to produce signs without causing delay in the work.
- C. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY AND HANDLING

- A. Delivery: Provide protective covering or crating as recommended by the manufacturer to protect sign components and surfaces against damage during transportation and delivery.
- B. Handling: Handle signs carefully to prevent breakage, surface abrasion, denting, soiling, and other defects. Comply with the manufacturer's written handling instructions for unloading components subject to damage.
  - 1. Inspect sign components for damage on delivery.
  - 2. Do not install damaged sign components.
  - 3. Repair minor damage to signs, provided the finished repair is equal in all respects to the original work and is approved by Architect; otherwise, remove and replace damaged sign components.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when weather conditions permit installation of signs in exterior locations to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delay.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Deterioration of metal and polymer finishes beyond normal weathering.
  - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image colors and sign lamination.
2. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 6063-T5.
- D. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), Type UVA (UV absorbing).
- E. Polycarbonate Sheet: Of thickness indicated, manufactured by extrusion process, coated on both surfaces with abrasion-resistant coating:
  1. Impact Resistance: 16 ft-lbf/in. (854 J/m) per ASTM D 256, Method A.
  2. Tensile Strength: 9000 lbf/sq. in. (62 MPa) per ASTM D 638.
  3. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 340,000 lbf/sq. in. (2345 MPa) per ASTM D 790.
  4. Heat Deflection: 265 deg F (129 deg C) at 264 lbf/sq. in. (1.82 MPa) per ASTM D 648.
  5. Abrasion Resistance: 1.5 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions of a Taber abraser with a load of 500 g per ASTM D 1044.
- F. Raised Graphics and Tactile Signs: Provide photopolymer material for the entire sign face to be fabricated from one solid piece. Text and Braille panels to comply with requirements indicated for materials, thickness, colors, designs, shapes sized and details of construction.
  1. Panel signs shall comply with applicable provisions of the ADA Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG) and ICC/ANSI A177.1/98 including 0.0312" raised tactile characters, 4.0" pictograms, 0.625" upper case text, sans serif type styles and Grade II Braille shall be positioned directly beneath the text and layout to be consistent with ADA specifications.
- G. Cast Acrylic Sheet: Provide cast (not extruded or continuous cast) methyl methacrylate monomer plastic sheet, in sizes and thicknesses indicated, with a minimum flexural strength of 16,000 psi when tested according to ASTM D 790, with a minimum allowable continuous service temperature of 176 deg F (80 deg C) and of the following general types:
  1. Opaque Sheet: Where sheet materials is indicated as "opaque", provide colored opaque acrylic sheet in colors and finishes as selected from the manufacturer's standards.

### 2.2 PANEL SIGNS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Allotech
  2. Andco Industries
  3. ASI Sign Systems, Inc.
  4. Scott Sign System
  5. Vomar Products, Inc.
  6. 2/90 Sign Systems
- B. General: Provide panel signs that comply with requirements indicated for materials, thicknesses, finishes, colors, designs, shapes, sizes and details for construction.
1. Product clear photopolymer with smooth panel sign surfaces constructed for flexibility under installed conditions within tolerance of plus or minus 1/16" (1.5 mm) measured diagonally.
  2. Clear photopolymer to have raised graphics that are embossed to a 70% contrasting color from the background color.
- C. Materials:
1. Acrylic: Non-glare acrylic sheet, continuously processed with a matte finish that complies with ANS Z97.1-1984 Safety Glazing requirements.
  2. Vinyl: 3M Scotchcal film Series 220/Series 225 precision plotted in sizes and colors indicated.
  3. Photopolymer: Non-glare sheet with a processed matte finish that complies with ADA specifications and finishes. Material to be a thickness of .080 clear sign base material with .032 photopolymer layer.
- D. Aluminum Framed Panel Signs: Fabricate signs with edges mechanically and smoothly finished to comply with the following requirements:
1. Edge Condition: Rounded with slot for sign insert.
  2. Corner Condition: Square.
  3. Depth: 0.062" thick extruded aluminum.
  4. Panel Finish: To be selected by Architect.
  5. Color: Anodized or Custom painted as per Architect's direction.
  6. Surface Texture: Extruded mill finish aluminum.
  7. Style: Curved face with insert slots on sides.
  8. Installation: Concealed mechanical fasteners attaching sign frame to building substrate.
  9. Caps: Black or Silver as Architect directs with tamper proof screws.
- E. Graphic Content and Style: Provide sign copy that complies with requirements indicated in the Sign Schedule for size, style, spacing, content, mounting height and location, material, finishes, and colors of signage.
1. Provide signage indicating handicap entry at each set of entry doors into facility.
  2. Provide one wall mounted sign per door or set of doors throughout building.
    - a. Provide signs with cutouts and removable inserts (one (1) per sign) with permanent ADA text for office personnel, teacher rooms, and flexible office spaces as required.
  3. Provide maximum occupancy load signs in assembly rooms as required by code.
  4. Permanent Room Signs: To be determined by Owner during construction.
- F. Tactile and Braille Copy: Manufacturer's standard process for producing copy complying with ADA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square cut edges free from burrs and cut marks

using a Photopolymer etching process only. Braille shall be Grade 2 "Domed" meeting current ADA guideline referenced in paragraph 1.4 - DEFINITIONS. Flat-topped Braille does not meet current ADA guidelines.

1. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32" (0.8mm).
  2. Room number, divider bars, and ADA pictograms to be raised photopolymer on one-piece sheet.
  3. Raised text to be colored "Black".
- G. Changeable Message Inserts: Fabricate signs to allow message inserts to be replaced by removing tamper proof screws from ends caps, sliding one-piece sign face from frame, and removing message insert.
1. School District to provide a list of signs and approve the final list.
  2. Sign Contractor to provide and install the initial set of message inserts printed on cardstock material of commercial quality including background color, changeable text, room name, teacher name, and one logo as provided by the Owner.
  3. Sign Contractor to supply to Owner a digital file of sign layouts in an Adobe format for Owner to copy and print future message inserts.
- H. Colored Coatings: For changeable copy and background colors, provide Pantone Matching System (PMS) colored coatings, including inks recommended by printing manufacturers for optimum adherence to cardstock material, non-fading for application intended.
1. Background color of message inserts to be selected by Architect.
  2. Teacher's names, logo, and room name to be printed "black" on the message cardstock in contrast to the background color. Color as selected by Architect.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide anchoring devices as recommended by the manufacturer for the substrates encountered.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
1. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  2. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
  3. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.
  4. Conceal fasteners in pre-drilled holes in sign face, if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

## 2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 clear anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, over a satin (directionally textured) mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.
- B. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-M4xC12C42R1x (Mechanical Finish: Manufacturer's standard, other non-directional textured; Chemical Finish: Chemical conversion coating, acid chromate-fluoride-phosphate pre-treatment; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel in compliance with paint manufacturer's specifications for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
  - 1. Organic Coating: Thermosetting-modified acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 603.8 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils, medium gloss.
    - a. Color: As selected by the Architect from the Pantone color chart standard colors or equal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where required by ADA specifications for height, spacing and location. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3" (75 mm) of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
- B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
  - 1. Mechanical Fasteners: Use concealed mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes in sign frame. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended by sign manufacturer.
  - 2. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide matching opaque plate on opposite side of glass to conceal mounting materials.
- C. Bracket-Mounted Signs: Provide manufacturer's standard brackets, fittings, and hardware for mounting signs that project at right angles from walls and ceilings. Attach brackets and fittings

securely to walls and ceilings with concealed fasteners and anchoring devices to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 10 1423

## SECTION 10 2113.17 - PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Phenolic-core toilet compartments (ultimate privacy).
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for supports that attach floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments and post-to-ceiling screens to overhead structural system.
  - 2. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
  - 3. Section 10 2800 "Toilet, Bath, and Custodial Accessories" for installation of toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartment and custodial accessories.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 3. Show ceiling-mounted items, and overhead support or bracing locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.
  - 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on **6-inch**- square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
  - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.
- E. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Door Hinges: Two hinge(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 2. Latch and Keeper: Two latch(es) and keeper(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 3. Door Bumper: Two door bumper(s) with associated fasteners.



4. Door Pull: Two door pull(s) with associated fasteners.
5. Fasteners: 20 fasteners of each size and type.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PHENOLIC-CORE TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. ASI Global Partitions.
  2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  3. Bradley Corporation.
  4. Flush Metal Partitions.
  5. Knickerbocker Partition Corporation.
  6. Partition Systems International of South Carolina (PSISC); Columbia Systems International of South Carolina LLC.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Ceiling anchored.
- C. Privacy: ultimate privacy with no sight privacy strips.
- D. Urinal-Screen Style: Post to ceiling.
- E. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Solid phenolic-core panel material with melamine facing on both sides fused to substrate during panel manufacture (not separately laminated), and with eased and polished edges. Provide minimum **3/4-inch-** thick doors and pilasters and minimum **1/2-inch-** thick panels.
- F. Urinal-Screen Construction: Matching panel construction.
- G. Pilaster Shoes: Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than **0.031-inch** nominal thickness and **3 inches** high, finished to match hardware.
- H. Pilaster Sleeves (Caps): Formed from stainless steel sheet, not less than **0.031-inch** nominal thickness and **3 inches** high, finished to match hardware.
- I. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of material matching the thickness and construction of pilasters; with shoe and sleeve (cap) matching that on the pilaster.
- J. Brackets (Fittings):
  1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- K. Phenolic-Panel Finish:
  1. Facing Sheet Finish: One color and pattern in each room.
  2. Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, with manufacturer's standard dark color core.
  3. Edge Color: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.2 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturer's Heavy-Duty Operating Hardware and Accessories:
1. Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum **0.062-inch-** thick stainless steel continuous, spring-loaded type, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through-bolts.
  2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty surface-mounted cast-stainless steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
  3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts.
  4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty rubber-tipped cast-stainless steel bumper at out-swinging doors. Mount with through-bolts.
  5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast-stainless steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- B. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A743/A743M.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Ceiling-Hung Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- C. Urinal-Screen Posts: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of posts.
- D. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide **24-inch-** wide in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and **36-inch-** wide out-swinging doors with a minimum **32-inch-** wide clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## SECTION 10 2600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Stainless-Steel wall panels
  - 2. Corner guards.
  - 3. End-wall guards.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel angle corner guards.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.
  - 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Wall Guards: **12 inches** long. Include examples of joinery, corners, end caps, top caps, and field splices.
  - 2. Corner and End-Wall Guards: **12 inches** long. Include example top caps.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.

1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Wall-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, **96-inch-** long units.
  2. Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, **48-inch-** long units.
  3. Mounting and Accessory Components: Amounts proportional to the quantities of extra materials. Package mounting and accessory components with each extra material.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than **70 deg F** during the period plastic materials are stored.
  2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
  3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of **70 deg F**.
    - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.
    - b. Store wall-guard covers in a horizontal position.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.

2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1.

### 2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL WALL PANELS

- a. Stainless-Steel Plate: Type 304, minimum **0.0625 inch**. ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- b. Adhesive: As recommended by impact-resistant plastic wall protection manufacturer and with a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- c. Pattern: Diamond Pattern.

### 2.4 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - b. inpro Corporation.
  - c. Koroseal Interior Products, LLC.
  - d. WallGuard.com.
  - e. Wallprotex.
2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum **0.100-inch** wall thickness; as follows:
  - a. Profile: Nominal **3-inch**- long leg and **1/4-inch** corner radius.
  - b. Height: **4 feet**.
  - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Continuous Retainer: Minimum **0.060-inch**- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

### 2.5 END-WALL GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover, End-Wall Guard: Manufacturer's standard, PVC-free assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over continuous retainer at each corner, with end of wall covered by semirigid, abuse-resistant wall covering; including mounting hardware.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Floor Products Company, Inc.
  - b. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - c. inpro Corporation.
2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum **0.100-inch** wall thickness; as follows:
  - a. Profile: Nominal **3-inch**- long leg and **1/4-inch** corner radius.
  - b. Height: 48 inches.
  - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range Match corner guards.
3. Retainer: Minimum **0.060-inch**- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Polycarbonate Plastic Sheet: ASTM D 6098, S-PC01, Class 1 or Class 2, abrasion resistant; with a minimum impact-resistance rating of **15 ft.-lbf/in.** of notch when tested according to ASTM D 256, Test Method A.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

## 2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Curved Panels: Preform curved semirigid, abuse-resistant sheet wall covering in factory for radius and sheet thickness as follows:
  - 1. Sheet Thickness of **0.040 Inch: 24-inch** radius.
  - 2. Sheet Thickness of **0.060 Inch: 36-inch** radius.
- C. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- D. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.
- E. Wood Handrails: Miter corners and ends of wood handrails for returns.

## 2.8 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.

1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.

B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.

B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings. If not indicated on Drawings, install at heights indicated below:

C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.

1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
2. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than **20 feet**, splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than **12 inches** apart.
3. Adjust end and top caps as required to ensure tight seams.

D. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.

E. Door-Frame Protectors: Install on both door jams.

F. Fire Doors: Install protection according to the listing of each item.

### 3.4 CLEANING

A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.

B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 10 2600

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: **1/2 inch.**
    - b. Panels and Walls: **1 inch.**
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 10 2113.17



## SECTION 10 2623.11 – DECORATIVE PROTECTION PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Decorative protection panels.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Reference Standards: In addition to requirements, comply with applicable provisions of following for design, materials, fabrication, and installation of component parts:
1. ANSI / NEMA LD-3: High Pressure Decorative Laminates.
  2. ASTM E 84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  3. Class 1/A Fire-rated (UL723/ASTM E-84).
  4. SEFA 8.1 approved.
  5. ASTM G 22 Bacterial Growth Resistance.
  6. ASTM E 162: Standard Test Method for Surface Flammability of Materials Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source.
  7. IMO FTP: International Code for Application of Fire Test Procedures.
  8. IMO FTP Code Part 2: Smoke and Density Test.
  9. IMO FTP Code Part 5: Test for Surface Flammability.
  10. ISO: International Organization for Standardization.
  11. ISO 9001: Quality Management Systems.
  12. NFPA 101: Life Safety Code.
  13. Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
1. Product data for each specified product. Include manufacturer's technical data sheets and published instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Each installation.
1. Anchorages to other construction, including requirements for concealed supports.
  2. Use same unit designations used on Drawings.

- C. Verification Samples: Not less than 5 by 7 inches (127 by 177.8 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish. Provide actual color samples. Electronic color samples will not be accepted.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator and installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For the following:
  - 1. Decorative protection panels.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Manufacturer's written maintenance instructions.
- B. Manufacturer warranties transferrable to Owner.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating and installing decorative plastic laminate finished work with a minimum 3 years' experience.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance with a minimum 3 years' experience.

C. Mock-Ups:

- 1. Build mockups to verify selections made under submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects, set quality for materials and construction, set quality standard for fabrication and installation.
- 2. Acceptable mock-ups may remain as part of the Work if undamaged at time of Substantial Completion.
- 3. Acceptable mock-ups shall be comparison standard for remaining Work.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package and ready materials according to manufacturer's instructions.

B. Do not deliver components until Project is fully enclosed.

C. Store products inside building protected from light, heat and moisture and never store in contact with floor or outside wall surfaces. Do not expose to continuous direct sunlight.

- 1. Store horizontally.
- 2. Sheets must be handled by two people.
- 3. Stored at a temperature per Formica Corporation technical guide requirements.

D. Provide protective coverings of suitable material. Take special precautions at corners.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of cut-outs and other related Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior laminate construction can be supported and installed as indicated.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide decorative protection panels with the following surface burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain decorative protection panels materials through one source from a single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 MANUFACTURER

A. Manufacturer:

1. Basis of Design: Formica Corporation; HardStop Decorative Protection Panels.
  - a. Contact: <http://www.formica.com/en/us>

B. Decorative Protection Panels

1. Description: Decorative protection panels.
  - a. Impact resistant panels.
2. Panel Core Material: Treated fiberglass core. Class A Fire-rated.
3. Laminate Grade:
  - a. Grade H1, 0.0677 Inches - 0.0827 Inches (1.72mm-2.1mm).
4. Laminate Color(s):
  - a. As indicated on Drawings.
5. Laminate Finish:
  - a. As indicated on Drawings.
6. Laminate Application(s):
  - a. Wall panels.

#### 2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Trim Profiles for Seam Treatments:

- 1) Thicknesses:
  - a) All trims 0.055-inch.
  - b) Corner guard trim 0.065-inch.

- B. Adhesives:
  - 1) Bonding Laminate: Franklin Advanced Polymer adhesive recommended. See Formica technical guide for recommended adhesive by substrate type.
- c. Sealant:
  - 1) Color Coordinated Sealant: 100% silicone caulk material by Color-Rite Incorporated as recommended by Formica Corporation.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

A. Conform to Formica Corporation standard practices, procedures, conditions including preconditioning, material recommendations, machining, equipment and workmanship.

B. Router base should be clean and free of burrs and debris. Table saws should be clean, flat, and free of burrs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install decorative protection panels in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions, approved submittals.

B. Provide templates and rough-in measurements.

C. Accessory Materials: Install in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

### 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Cleaning:

1. Clean decorative protection panels and aluminum trims in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Protection:

1. Do not permit construction near unprotected surfaces.

END OF SECTION 10 2623

## SECTION 10 4413 - FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fire protection cabinets for the following:
    - a. Portable fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting" for field painting fire protection cabinets.
  - 2. See drawings for directional signage to out-of-sight fire extinguishers and cabinets.
  - 3. Section 10 4416 "Fire Extinguishers."

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire protection cabinets.
  - 1. Fire Protection Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.
  - 2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of fire protection cabinet indicated.
- D. Product Schedule: For fire protection cabinets. Coordinate final fire protection cabinet schedule with fire extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.
- E. Maintenance Data: For fire protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated, Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire hoses, hose valves, and hose racks indicated are accommodated.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

1.6 SEQUENCING

- A. Apply decals or vinyl lettering on field-painted, fire protection cabinets after painting is complete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- B. Break Glass: Clear annealed float glass, ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 1.5 mm thick, single strength.

2.2 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher, hose, valve or rack.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following
    - a. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
    - b. J. L. Industries, Inc.
    - c. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division, Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
    - d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - e. Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.
    - f. Potter Roemer LLC.
    - g. Watrous Division, American Specialties, Inc.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Provide fire rated cabinets if the wall in which the cabinet is to be installed is a fire wall. Match the rating of the cabinet to the rating of the wall.
  - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0428-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick, fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- C. Cabinet Material: Steel sheet.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.
- E. Semirecessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend). Provide where

walls are of insufficient depth for recessed cabinets but are of sufficient depth to accommodate semirecessed cabinet installation.

- F. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim. Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for semirecessed cabinet installation.
- G. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel Sheet
- H. Door Material: Steel Sheet
- I. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame
- J. Door Glazing: Clear float glass
- K. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1. Provide lever handle with cam-action latch.
  - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- L. Accessories:
  - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2. Break-Glass Strike: Manufacturer's standard metal strike, complete with chain and mounting clip, secured to cabinet.
  - 3. Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
  - 4. Door Lock: Cylinder lock, keyed alike to other cabinets.
  - 5. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
    - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"
      - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing
      - 2) Application Process: Decals or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
      - 3) Lettering Color: Red
      - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
- M. Finishes:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel paint for the following:
    - a. Exterior of cabinet door, and trim except for those surfaces indicated to receive another finish.
    - b. Interior of cabinet and door.
  - 2. Steel: Baked enamel or powder coat.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
  - 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
  - 2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
  - 3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
  - 4. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
  - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
  - 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
  - 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.4 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.5 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Factory Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
  - 1. Color and Gloss: Manufacturer's standard white

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for hose valve and rack cabinets to verify actual locations of piping connections before cabinet installation.



- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where cabinets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for fire protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights indicated below:
  - 1. Fire Protection Cabinets: 54 inches (1372 mm) above finished floor to top of cabinet.
- B. Fire Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
  - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire protection cabinets. If wall thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire protection cabinets.
  - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
  - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire protection cabinets, square and plumb.
  - 4. Fire-Rated, hose and valve Cabinets:
    - a. Install cabinet with not more than 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) tolerance between pipe OD and knockout OD. Center pipe within knockout.
    - b. Seal through penetrations with firestopping sealant as specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- C. Identification: Apply decals or vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 4413

## SECTION 10 4416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable fire extinguishers and wall mounting brackets.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.
- C. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by Underwriter's Laboratory.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Amerex Corporation.
  - b. Ansul Incorporated; Tyco International Ltd.
  - c. Badger Fire Protection; a Kidde company.
  - d. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
  - e. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
  - f. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
  - g. Potter Roemer LLC.
2. Valves: Nickel-plated, polished brass body.
  3. Handles and Levers: Stainless steel.
  4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B and bar coding for documenting fire extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Wet-Chemical Type (Use in Kitchen, Foods, Science Rooms, and Life Skills locations): UL-rated 2-A:1-B:C:K, 2.5-gal. (9.5-L) nominal capacity, with potassium acetate based chemical in stainless-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.
- C. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 4-A:60-B:C, 10-lb (4.5-kg) nominal capacity, with mono-ammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
- D. Clean-Agent Type in Steel Container (Use in Network Rooms, Communication, and Electrical): UL-rated 2-A: 10-B:C, 14-lb. (6.4-kg) nominal capacity, with HFC blend agent and inert material in enameled-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

## 2.2 MOUNTING BRACKETS

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Amerex Corporation.
    - b. Ansul Incorporated; Tyco International Ltd.
    - c. Badger Fire Protection; a Kidde company.
    - d. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
    - e. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
    - f. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
    - g. Potter Roemer LLC.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Mounting Brackets: 54 inches (1372 mm) above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 10 4416

## SECTION 10 5113 – METAL LOCKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Heavy duty All Welded lockers.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry".

#### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ADAAG – Americans with Disabilities Act, Accessibility Guidelines.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 3300 "Submittal Procedures".

- B. Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:

- 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
- 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
- 3. Installation methods.

- C. Shop Drawings: Show the following:

- 1. Dimensioned drawings including plans, elevations, and sections to show locker locations and interfaces with adjacent substrates.
- 2. Details of assembly, erection, anchorage and clearance requirements.

- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and finishes.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures.
- b. Faulty operation of latches and other door hardware.

2. Damage from deliberate destruction and vandalism is excluded.
3. Warranty Period for All-Welded Metal Lockers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  1. Penco Products, Inc. [www.pencoproducts.com](http://www.pencoproducts.com)
  2. Lyon Work Space Products, LLC.
  3. List Industries Inc (Classmate Unibody All-Welded Locker).
  4. Elite Storage Products, LLC.
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 016000.
- C. Provide all metal lockers from a single manufacturer.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Prime grade mild cold-rolled sheet steel free from surface imperfection, capable of taking a high-grade enamel finish.
- B. Hooks: Zinc plated forged steel, ball ends.
- C. Bolts and Nuts: Zinc plated truss fin head bolts and hex nuts.

### 2.3 HEAVY DUTY LOCKERS

- A. Heavy Duty Lockers: All locker body components made of cold rolled steel specially formed for added strength and rigidity and to ensure tight joints at fastening points. All-Welded lockers.
  1. Lockers:
    - a. Single-Tier: 15" wide x 15" deep x 48" high with sloped top, no legs.
    - b. Two-Tier: 15" wide x 15" deep x 72" (2 at 36") high with sloped top, no legs, manufacturer's base.
    - c. All Lockers to have hooks on each side of locker interior.
  - B. Locker Body: All-Welded Lockers.
    1. Sides, Bottoms, Tops, and Shelves:
      - a. 16-gauge steel.
    2. Backs: Solid 18-gauge steel.
    3. Doors:
      - a. 14-gauge steel.
    4. Sides: Vertical frames and sides.

- a. Intermediate Vertical Side Frames: Another frame channel securely welded to side frame.
5. Tops: Notched and formed sheet; one continuous flat top for each group of lockers.
6. Bottoms: Notched and formed sheet; one continuous bottom for each group of lockers, suitable for anchoring to wood or concrete bases.
7. Shelves: Flanged four sides with additional return flange on front edge to increase strength.
8. Door Frames: 16 gauge formed in a channel shape with continuous vertical door strikes.

## 2.4 INTERIOR EQUIPMENT

### A. ADA-Compliant Lockers (Recessed Handles with Multi-Point Latch):

1. Single Tier Lockers: Hat shelf 48 inches (1.219 m) off the floor.
2. Locker Bottom: Minimum of 9 inches (230 mm) off the floor, or an extra shelf placed 9 inches (230 mm) off the floor.
3. Handicapped symbol attached to door.
4. Hooks and rods as specified for other lockers.
5. Provide ADA Compliant Built-In Lock for Lockers compatible with standard recessed handle with 2- or 3-point latching.

### B. All Welded Lockers:

1. Single Tier: Hat shelf located approximately 9 inches (228 mm) below top of locker.
2. Openings 20 inches (0.508 m) or higher and 12 (305 mm) or 15 inches (380 mm) Wide: Two single-prong wall hooks and one double-prong ceiling hook.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. Number Plates: Provide each locker with a polished aluminum number plate, 2-1/4 inches (57 mm) wide by 1 inch (25 mm) high, with black numerals not less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) high; attach to face of door with aluminum rivets.

B. Front Fillers: 20-gauge steel formed in an angle shape, with:

1. 20 gauge slip joint angles formed in an angle shape with double bend on one leg forming a pocket to provide adjustable mating with angle filler.
2. Attachment by means of concealed fasteners.
3. Finish to match lockers.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

A. Lockers: Finish: Powder Coat Paint Finish.

1. Powder Coat – Dry Thickness: 1 to 1.2 mils (.025 to 0.03 mm).
2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

A. Do not begin installations until substrates and bases have been properly prepared.

B. If substrate and bases are the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.1 INSTALLATION

- C. Install metal lockers and accessories at locations shown in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install lockers plumb, level, and square.
- E. Anchor lockers to floor and wall at 48-inches (1.219 m) or less, as recommended by the manufacturer.
- F. Bolt adjoining locker units together to provide rigid installation.
- G. Install sloping tops and metal fillers using concealed fasteners. Provide flush hairline joints against adjacent surfaces.

2.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors and latches to operate without binding. Verify that latches are operating satisfactorily.
- B. Touch-up with factory-supplies paint and repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

2.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.

END OF SECTION 10 5113



**DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT**

|            |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|
| 11 5213    | PROJECTION SCREENS        |
| 11 6623    | GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT       |
| 11 6833    | FIXED INDOOR NETTING      |
| 11 6833.33 | RETRACTABLE BATTING CAGES |

## SECTION 11 5213 - PROJECTION SCREENS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Electrically operated, ceiling recessed, front projection screen.
2. Front projection screen controls.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for metal support framing for projection screens.
2. Section 06 1000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood backing for screen installation.
3. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections including device boxes for switches and conduit, where required, for low-voltage control wiring.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gain of Front-Projection Screens: Ratio of light reflected from screen material to that reflected perpendicularly from a magnesium carbonate surface as determined per SMPTE RP 94.
- B. Half-Gain Angle: The angle, measured from the axis of the screen surface to the most central position on a perpendicular plane through the horizontal centerline of the screen where the gain is half of the peak gain.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For projection screens. Show layouts and types of projection screens. Include the following:
  1. For electrically operated projection screens and controls:
    - a. Location of screen centerline relative to ends of screen case.
    - b. Location of wiring connections for electrically operated units.
    - c. Location of seams in viewing surfaces.
    - d. Drop lengths.
    - e. Anchorage details, including connection to supporting structure for suspended units.
    - f. Details of juncture of exposed surfaces with adjacent finishes.
    - g. Accessories.
    - h. Wiring diagrams.
- C. Maintenance Data: For projection screens to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Projection Screens: Obtain accessories from screen manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Electrically Operated Projection Screens: It is the responsibility of the electrically operated projection screen supplier to include the installation of the screens in their contract. Electrically operated projection screens are to be installed by the supplier of the screen.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install projection screens until spaces are enclosed and weather-tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of projection screens with adjacent construction, including ceiling suspension systems, light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partitions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. MOTORIZED CEILING RECESSED, FRONT PROJECTION SCREENS

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard units consisting of case, screen, motor, controls, mounting accessories, and other components necessary for a complete installation. Provide units that are listed and labeled as an assembly by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1) Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide DA-LITE or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Professional Electrol.
    - b. Stewart Filmscreen Corporation.
    - c. Draper Inc.
  - 2. Provide one (2) screens: (HDTV 16:9 wide format). Black masking borders standard.
    - a. Basis-of-Design: DA-LITE Tensioned Contour Electrol.
      - 1) SKU: 37612L.
      - b) Viewing Area H x W: HDTV Format (16:9). Black masking borders standard.
        - 1. 87 inches x 139 inches.
        - 2. 120 inches x 192 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

1.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

- B. Verify rough-in openings are properly prepared.
- C. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

#### 1.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

#### 1.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install front projection screens with screen cases in position and relationship to adjoining construction as indicated, securely anchored to supporting substrate, and in manner that produces a smoothly operating screen with plumb and straight vertical edges and plumb and flat viewing surfaces when screen is lowered.
- C. Test electrically operated units to verify that screen, controls, limit switches, closure and other operating components are in optimum functioning condition.

#### 1.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 11 5213

## SECTION 11 6623 - GYMNASIUM EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following gymnasium equipment:
  - 1. Safety Pads.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NCAA: The National Collegiate Athletic Association.
- B. NFHS: The National Federation of State High School Associations.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gymnasium equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Pad Fabric: Not less than 3 inches square, with specified treatments applied. Mark face of material.
- D. Warranty: Manufacturer's standard.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Made without urea formaldehyde.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install gymnasium equipment until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify position and elevation of floor inserts and layout for gymnasium equipment.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of gymnasium equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One (1) year from date of Substantial Completion or Manufacturer's Standard warranty whichever is longer.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Performance Sports Systems" or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. ADP Lemco Inc.
  - 2. Draper
  - 3. Jaypro

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - 1. Extruded Bars, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
  - 2. Cast Aluminum: ASTM B 179.
- B. Steel: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 2. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500 or ASTM A 513, cold formed.
- C. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, exterior.
- D. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1
- E. Equipment Wall-Mounting Board: Wood, transparent finish, size, and quantity as required to mount gymnasium equipment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Anchors, Fasteners, Fittings and Hardware: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant or noncorrodible units.
- G. Grout: Nonshrink, nonmetallic, premixed, factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107 with minimum strength recommended in writing by gymnasium equipment manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for play court layout, alignment of mounting substrates, installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.
  - 1. Verify critical dimensions.

2. Examine wall assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors and fasteners, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked. Locate reinforcements and mark locations.
3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and competition rules indicated for each type of gymnasium equipment. Complete equipment field assembly, where required.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, install gymnasium equipment after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- C. Anchoring to In-Place Construction: Use anchors and fasteners where necessary for securing built-in and permanently placed gymnasium equipment to structural support and for properly transferring load to in-place construction.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust movable components of gymnasium equipment to operate safely, smoothly, easily, and quietly, free from binding, warp, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. After completing gymnasium equipment installation, inspect components. Remove spots, dirt, and debris and touch up damaged shop-applied finishes according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Replace gymnasium equipment and finishes that cannot be cleaned and repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 11 6623

FNIPF – Indoor Fixed Perimeter Netting

SECTION 11 6833 Athletic Field Equipment  
SECTION 11 6833.33 Baseball Field Equipment

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide all equipment and materials, and do all work necessary to furnish and install the athletic equipment, as indicated on the drawings and as specified herein. Athletic equipment shall include, but not be limited to:

1. FNIPF – Indoor Fixed Perimeter Netting

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Examine contract documents for requirements that affect work of this section. Other specification divisions and sections that directly relate to the work of this section include, but are not limited to:

1. 04 0000 – Masonry
2. 05 0000 – Metals
3. 09 0000 – Finishes
4. 26 0000 – Electrical

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Comply with applicable requirements of the following standards. Where these standards conflict with other specified requirements, the most restrictive requirements shall govern.

1. National Federation of State High School Associations (NFHS)
2. National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA)
3. Minor League Baseball (MiLB)
4. Major League Baseball (MLB)
5. International Association of Athletics Federations (IAAF)
6. American Sports Builders Association (ASBA) Requirements
7. Manufacturers Data and Recommended Installation Requirements

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers Product Data

1. Provide manufacturers product data prior to actual field installation work, for Architects or Owners representatives review.

B. Shop Drawings

1. Provide drawings of the manufacturers recommended installation requirements prior to actual field installation work, for Architects or Owners representatives review.



1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturers warranties shall pass to the Owner and certification made that the product materials meet all applicable grade trademarks or conform to industry standards and inspection requirements.

1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Materials delivered to the site shall be examined for damage or defects in shipping. Any defects shall be noted and reported to the Owners representative. Replacements, if necessary, shall be immediately re- ordered, so as to minimize any conflict with the construction schedule. Sound materials shall be stored above ground under protective cover or indoors so as to provide proper protection.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.01 FNIPF – Indoor Fixed Perimeter Netting

- A. BASE: FNIPF – Indoor Fixed Perimeter Netting as Manufactured and Supplied by:

Sportsfield Specialties, Inc.  
P.O. Box 231  
41155 State Highway 10  
Delhi, NY 13753  
p. 888-975-3343  
[www.sportsfield.com](http://www.sportsfield.com)

- B. COMPONENTS:

1. Indoor Fixed Perimeter Netting:

- a. Project-Specific Building Connections
  - i. Wall Mounts or Ceiling Drop-Down Extension Arms Provided as Required
  - ii. Super Durable Powder Coated Finish (Various Colors Available)
  - iii. Note: Main Building Support Structure by Others
- b. Tension Cable Support Structure
  - i. Galvanized Aircraft Cable and Hardware Assembly Sized as Required
  - ii. (2) Stacked Cables at Divider Locations Only to Allow for Horizontal Retractability
  - iii. 3/16" Stainless Steel Spring Clip Attachment every 12" o.c.
- c. Fixed Perimeter Netting
  - i. Fixed Perimeter and Ceiling Netting
    1. Quantity and Size as Required
      - a. 1' of Excess Net at Bottom to Reduce Deflection
    2. #36 Black Nylon 1-3/4" Square Mesh Net
      - a. #36 Twisted Knotted Netting
      - b. 100% Nylon Construction
      - c. 2.6mm (0.1023") Diameter Twine
      - d. 87% Open Mesh Area (See-Through Visibility)
      - e. 13,363 psi Minimum Breaking Strength
      - f. 1-3/4" (44mm) Maximum Square Mesh Size
      - g. 0.0425 lbs. per Square Foot
      - h. Black Multi-Filament Polypropylene Solid Braid Derby Rope Sewn Binding on Perimeter Edges – 1/4" Diameter, 530 lb. Minimum Breaking Strength
      - i. UV and Weather Treated
  - d. Optional Accessories:

- i. Weighted Rope Bottom Deadweights
  - 1. Factory-Sewn / Integrated into Batting Tunnel
  - 2. Samson Rope Dura Oceanmaster Weighted Rope®
    - a. Flexible / Easy to Handles
    - b. Surface Yarns on Cover Designed to Lash to Netting
    - c. 2,000 lbs. Average Strength
    - d. 250 lbs. per 100 Fathoms Material Weight (0.42 lbs/ft)
- ii. Doorway Entrances/Exits
  - 1. Quantity and Size as Required
    - a. Openings with Curtain Style Exterior Overlap Flaps
    - b. Wall Mounted Fixed Extension Arms 2' offset from main structure
- iii. Divider Nets or Walkway Entry to Allow for Horizontal Retractability

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. All Fixed Perimeter Netting shall be installed as recommended per manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on the drawings. Concrete anchoring foundations to be determined by others based on local soil conditions and building codes. Installer should have a minimum of five (5) baseball/softball equipment installations or similar experience in the previous three (3) years.

END OF SECTION 11 6833.

BTIVRB – Indoor Vertically Retractable Batting Tunnel; Baseball

SECTION 11 68 33 Athletic Field Equipment  
SECTION 11 68 33.33 Baseball Field Equipment

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 WORK INCLUDED

A. Provide all equipment and materials, and do all work necessary to furnish and install the athletic equipment, as indicated on the drawings and as specified herein. Athletic equipment shall include, but not be limited to:

1. BTIVRB – Indoor Vertically Retractable Batting Tunnel; Baseball

1.02 RELATED WORK

A. Examine contract documents for requirements that affect work of this section. Other specification divisions and sections that directly relate to the work of this section include, but are not limited to:

1. 04 0000 – Masonry
2. 05 0000 – Metals
3. 09 0000 – Finishes
4. 26 0000 – Electrical

1.03 REFERENCES

A. Comply with applicable requirements of the following standards. Where these standards conflict with other specified requirements, the most restrictive requirements shall govern.

1. National Federation of State High School Associations (NFHS)
2. National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA)
3. Minor League Baseball (MiLB)
4. Major League Baseball (MLB)
5. International Association of Athletics Federations (IAAF)
6. American Sports Builders Association (ASBA)
7. Manufacturers Data and Recommended Installation Requirements

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers Product Data

1. Provide manufacturers product data prior to actual field installation work, for Architects or Owners representatives review.

B. Shop Drawings

1. Provide drawings of the manufacturers recommended installation requirements prior to actual field installation work, for Architects or Owners representatives review.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers warranties shall pass to the Owner and certification made that the product materials meet all applicable grade trademarks or conform to industry standards and inspection requirements.

1.06 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Materials delivered to the site shall be examined for damage or defects in shipping. Any defects shall be noted and reported to the Owners representative. Replacements, if necessary, shall be immediately re- ordered, so as to minimize any conflict with the construction schedule. Sound materials shall be stored above ground under protective cover or indoors so as to provide proper protection.

PART 2- PRODUCTS

2.01 BTIVRB – Indoor Vertically Retractable Batting Tunnel; Baseball

A. BASE: BTIVRB – Indoor Vertically Retractable Batting Tunnel; Baseball as Manufactured and Supplied by:

Sportsfield Specialties, Inc.  
P.O. Box 231  
41155 State Highway 10  
Delhi, NY 13753  
p. 888-975-3343  
[www.sportsfield.com](http://www.sportsfield.com)

B. COMPONENTS:

1. Indoor Vertically Retractable Batting Tunnel:
  - a. Project-Specific Supplementary Support Structure
    - i. Includes Building Connections, Overhead Supports and 1.900" O.D. x 0.145" Wall Steel Drive Pipe Assembly
    - ii. Super Durable Powder Coated Finish (Various Colors Available)
    - iii. Note: Main Building Support Structure by Others
  - b. LynRus CW3 Motorized Lift Winch
    - i. ¾ Horsepower (Electric)
    - ii. 110/115 V Single Phase
    - iii. Voltage: 120 AC
    - iv. Current: 11.5 FLA
    - v. Frequency: 60 HZ
    - vi. 1,000 lbs. Vertical Lift Capacity
    - vii. 9.5 ft/min Pull Speed
    - viii. Instant Reversing
    - ix. Weight: 56 lbs.
    - x. Includes 5' Power Cord with Twist Lock Plug, Toggle Key Switch and Electrical Box
    - xi. Note: Electrical by Others
  - c. Netting Support Frame
    - i. 1-3/4" Sq. x 14 Gauge Wall Steel Tubing
    - ii. Bolted Connections
    - iii. Powder Coated Black
  - d. Batting Tunnel Net
    - i. 13'H x 14'W x 75'L Baseball Standard #60 Black Nylon Net, 1-3/4" Square Mesh with Rope Bound Perimeter

1. #60 Twisted Knotted Netting
  2. 100% Nylon Construction
  3. 2.95mm (0.116") Diameter Twine
  4. 84% Open Mesh Area (See-Through Visibility)
  5. 560 lb. Minimum Breaking Strength
  6. 1-7/8" (48mm) Maximum Square Mesh Size
  7. 0.067 lbs. per Square Foot
  8. Black Multi-Filament Polypropylene Solid Braid Derby Rope Sewn Binding on Perimeter Edges – ¼" Diameter, 530 lb. Minimum Breaking Strength
  9. UV and Weather Treated
- ii. (2) 4'W x Full Height Openings with Curtain Style Exterior Overlap Flaps
  - iii. Netting Sits on Frame in "Up" Position

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT

- A. All Indoor Vertically Retractable Batting Tunnels shall be installed as recommended per manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on the drawings. Concrete anchoring foundations to be determined by others based on local soil conditions and building codes. Installer should have a minimum of five (5) baseball/softball equipment installations or similar experience in the previous three (3) years.

END OF SECTION

**DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS**

|            |                                |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| 12 2413    | ROLLER WINDOW SHADES           |
| 12 3661.16 | SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS    |
| 12 3661.19 | QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS |
| 12 3663    | SOLID SURFACING WINDOWSILLS    |
| 12 4813    | ENTRANCE FLOOR TILES           |

## SECTION 12 2413 – ROLLER WINDOW SHADE

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Manually operated roller shades.
  - 1. Sunscreen roller shade.

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 3300 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include:
  - 1. Styles, material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components, profiles, features, finishes and operating instructions.
  - 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations, mounting details and installation methods.
  - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
- C. Shop Drawings: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including: location and extent of roller shades. Include elevations, sections, details, and dimensions not shown in Product Data. Show installation details, mountings, attachments to other work, operational clearances, and relationship to adjoining work.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Shade mounting assembly and attachment.
  - 2. Size and location of access to shade operator and adjustable components.
  - 3. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- E. Samples for Verification:
  - 1. For the following products:
    - a. Shade Material: Not less than 12-inch- square section of fabric, from dye lot used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat. Mark top and face of material.
    - b. Valance: Full-size unit, not less than 12 inches long.
- F. Window Treatment Schedule: For roller shades using same designations indicated on Drawings and include opening sizes and key to typical mounting details.
- G. Maintenance Data: Include methods for maintaining roller shades, precautions regarding cleaning materials and methods, instructions for operating hardware and controls, in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Obtain roller shades through one source from a single manufacturer with a minimum of five years' experience in manufacturing products comparable to those specified in this section.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Installer trained and certified by the manufacturer with a minimum of five years' experience installing products comparable to those specified in this section.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Passes NFPA 701 small and large-scale vertical burn. Materials tested shall be identical to products proposed for use.
- D. Product Standard: Provide roller shades complying with WCMA A 100.1.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer and product name, fire-test-response characteristics, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings and in a window treatment schedule.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and wet and dirty finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operable glazed units' operation hardware throughout the entire operating range. Notify Contracting Officer of discrepancies. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Roller Shade Hardware, Chain and Shadecloth: Manufacturer's standard non-depreciating twenty-five year limited warranty.1.
- B. Roller Shade Installation: One year from date of Substantial Completion, not including scaffolding, lifts or other means to reach inaccessible areas.

### PART 2 – PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manually Operated Single-Roller Shades:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design:
    - a. Hunter Douglas Architectural.
  - 2. Acceptable manufacturers pending conformance to basis of Design requirements:
    - a. Draper Inc.; [www.draperinc.com](http://www.draperinc.com).
    - b. MechoShade Systems, Inc.; [www.mechoshade.com](http://www.mechoshade.com).
    - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

#### 2.2 COMPONENTS

- A. Shade Band Material: Fiberglass and acrylic blend.
  - 1. Fabric Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Pattern: Mesh
  - 3. Series: Sheerweave Infinity2
    - a. 3% or equivalent.
  - 4. Colors: as selected by architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
  - 5. Material Solar-Optical Properties: Exterior reflective
  - 6. Material Openness Factor:
    - a. 3 percent
  - 7. Material Thickness: 0.031".
  - 8. Material UV Blockage: 85 percent.
  - 9. Bottom Hem: Straight.



- B. Rollers:
  - 1. Electrogalvanized or epoxy primed steel or extruded-aluminum tube of diameter and wall thickness required to support and fit internal components of operating system and the weight and width of shade band material without sagging.
  - 2. Designed to be easily removable from support brackets.
  - 3. Removable spline fitting integral channel in tube manufacturer's standard method for attaching shade material.
  - 4. Provide capacity for one roller shade band(s) per roller, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Installations with a single row of aligned rollers are either regular or reverse roll. Installations with a double row of queued or overlapping rollers can be same roll or opposite. Coordinate direction of roll with fascia and pocket design.
  - 6. Direction of Roll: Regular, from back of roller.
- C. Mounting Brackets (exposed to view and in ceiling pocket):
  - 1. Fascia end caps, fabricated from steel finished to match fascia or headbox.
- D. Standard Headbox Installation at Leasing Office:
  - 1. Fascia: L-shaped, formed-steel sheet or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled; continuous panel concealing front and bottom of shade roller, brackets, and operating hardware and operators; length as indicated on Drawings; removable design for access.
  - 2. Bottom Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum, with plastic or metal capped ends. Provide exposed-to-view, external-type bottom bar with concealed weight bar as required for smooth, properly balanced shade operation.
- F. Retain, revise, or delete paragraph and subparagraphs below as required for Project and product. If retaining below but not all shades are audiovisual light-blocking shades, differentiate between shades on Drawings, in a schedule, or by designation in article title and copying and editing content for each type of shade.
- G. Mounting: As indicated on Drawings, mounting permitting easy removal and replacement without damaging roller shade or adjacent surfaces and finishes.
- H. Shade Operation: Manual; with continuous-loop bead-chain, clutch, and cord tensioner and bracket lift operator.
  - 1. Position of Clutch Operator: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Position of Clutch Operator: Left side of roller, as determined by hand of user facing shade from inside, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Clutch: Capacity to lift size and weight of shade; sized to fit roller or provide adaptor.
  - 4. Lift-Assist Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard spring assist for balancing roller shade weight and lifting heavy roller shades.
  - 5. Loop Length: Length required to make operation convenient from floor level.
  - 6. Bead Chain: Stainless steel.
  - 7. Cord Tensioner Mounting: Wall.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Product Description: Roller shade consisting of a roller, a means of supporting the roller, a flexible sheet or band of material carried by the roller, a means of attaching the material to the roller, a bottom bar, and an operating mechanism that lifts and lowers the shade.
- B. Concealed Components: Noncorrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
  - 1. Lifting Mechanism: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- C. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
  - 1. Shade Units Installed between (Inside) Jambs: Edge of shade not more than 1/4 inch from face of jamb. Length equal to head to sill dimension of opening in which each shade is installed.

2. Delete subparagraph above or below if not applicable. Revise subparagraph above if heat-strengthened glass is not specified and if compliance with recommendations in GANA's "Glazing Manual" for clearances between top, bottom, and sides of opening and shade suits Project. Coordinate requirements for perimeter clearances with distance between shades and glass, glass type, and placement of heating/cooling air supplies to avoid heat buildup and possible damage to glass.
  3. Shade Units Installed Outside Jambs: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- D. Installation Brackets: Designed for easy removal and reinstallation of shade, for supporting fascia, roller, and operating hardware and for hardware position and shade mounting method indicated.
  - E. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal noncorrosive to shade hardware and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting shades and accessories under conditions of normal use.
  - F. Finish: Color-Coat metal components exposed to view. Apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
  - G. Colors of Metal and Plastic Components Exposed to View: Matching or coordinating with shade band color, unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that openings are ready to receive the work.
- B. Ensure structural blocking and supports are correctly placed.
- C. Examine conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.
- D. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.
- E. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### 3.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate requirements for distance between roller shades and glass with clearances between shade perimeter and surrounding construction, glass type, and placement of heating/cooling air supplies to avoid heat buildup and possible damage to glass.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Install shades in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units, and located so shade band is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass and allow clearances for window operation hardware.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- C. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 12 2413

## SECTION 12 3661.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Solid surface material countertops.
2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
3. Solid surface material end splashes.
4. Solid surface material apron fronts.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For countertop material.

##### B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

##### C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

##### B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

##### C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.

1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Refer to Finish Legend for manufacturer, pattern, color or texture.
    - b. Adhesives: Seaming compounds and adhesives for bonding to substrates as recommended by sheet manufacturer.
  2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
  3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Verify products are made without added urea formaldehyde.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Countertops:
1. 1/2-inch (12 mm) thick, solid surface material.
- C. Cutouts and Holes:
1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
    - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting **3/16 inch** into fixture opening.
  2. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.
  3. Counter-Mounted Cooktops: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for cooktops. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.

- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch** maximum. Do not exceed **1/64-inch** difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- D. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- E. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- F. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 12 3661.16

## SECTION 12 3661.19 - QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Quartz agglomerate countertops.
- 2. Quartz agglomerate backsplashes.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 06 4114 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Architectural Cabinets".

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.

- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

- 1. Show locations and details of joints.
- 2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.

- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

- 1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For quartz agglomerate countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of countertops.

- C. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 QUARTZ AGGLOMERATE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Quartz Agglomerate: Solid sheets consisting of quartz aggregates bound together with a matrix of filled plastic resin and complying with ICPA SS-1, except for composition.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design: Daltile / One Quartz.
  - 2. Color: Jasmine Jasmin White.
- B. Acceptable Manufacturers with architects approval of product:
  - 1. Formica.
  - 2. Ceasarstone.
- C. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- D. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

#### 2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions and the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
  - 1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
  - 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
- C. Countertops: **1.18 inch-thick (3cm)**, quartz agglomerate with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Backsplashes: **1.18 inch-thick (3cm)**, quartz agglomerate.



- E. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
- F. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
- G. Cutouts and Holes:
  - 1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures in shop using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
    - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting **3/16 inch** into fixture opening.
    - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to **3/8-inch** radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting **3/16 inch** into fixture opening.
    - c. Provide **3/4-inch** full bullnose edges projecting **3/8 inch** into fixture opening.
  - 2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
  - 3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by quartz agglomerate manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive quartz agglomerate countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 8 feet**, **1/4 inch** maximum. Do not exceed **1/64-inch** difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.

- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with quartz agglomerate manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
  - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints where indicated. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
  - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- G. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Pre-drill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
  - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 12 3661.19

## SECTION 12 3663.16 - SOLID SURFACING WINDOWSILLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Solid surface material windowsill.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For windowsill materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.
1. Show locations and details of joints.
  2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of material exposed to view.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
1. Windowsill material, 6 inches square.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For solid surface material countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements before countertop fabrication is complete.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SOLID SURFACE WINDOWSILL MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ISFA 2-01.
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hanex by Hanwha Surfaces.
    - b. Avonite Surfaces; a Brand of Aristech Surfaces LLC.
    - c. Formica Corporation.
    - d. Wilsonart LLC.
  2. Type: Provide Standard type unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
  3. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate windowsills according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Windowsill:
  - 1. ~~1/2-inch~~ thick, solid surface material.
- C. Joints:
  - 1. Fabricate windowsill in sections for joining in field.

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.
- B. Sealant for Windowsills: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material windowsill and conditions under which windowsill will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of windowsills.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install windowsills level to a tolerance of ~~1/8 inch in 8 feet~~, ~~1/4 inch~~ maximum. Do not exceed ~~1/64-inch~~ difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Secure windowsills with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of windowsills adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- D. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION 12 3663.16

## SECTION 12 4813 - ENTRANCE FLOOR TILES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Walk-off system for direct glue down installation.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 09 6519 "Resilient Tile Flooring".
  - 2. Section 09 6813 "Tile Carpeting".

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Layout Drawings: Show layout of carpet type installation.
- B. Samples: Submit for verification purposes, one full tile of each carpet required. Samples shall be accompanied by manufacturer's technical specification for each carpet required using terminology characteristics as listed in this specification. Also include a complete representation in sample form of all available colorations.
- C. Maintenance Data: Submit manufacturer's printed maintenance recommendations for the care, cleaning, and maintenance of the carpet, including detailed instructions pertaining to hot water extraction methods.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Flooring Contractor's Qualifications: Firm with not less than five (5) consecutive years of experience in installation of commercial carpeting of type, quantity and installation methods similar to work of this section. Flooring Contractor shall submit with bid proposal written certification from carpet manufacturer, demonstrating their firm is an authorized dealer.
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Firm (carpet mill) with not less than five (5) consecutive years of production experience with carpet similar to type specified in this section; whose published product literature clearly indicates general compliance of products with requirements of the section.
- C. Flooring Contractor shall be totally responsible for the accuracy of his measurements of total yardage, individual floor yardage, and dye lot yardage requirements, extra yardage for pattern match, and roll length requirements; no additional compensation shall be allowed for shortage of materials.
- D. Dye Lots: All carpet of the same type in continuous areas shall be from the same dye lots.

- E. Owner reserves the right to test carpet at their expense to verify that the delivered carpet is as specified. If carpet does not meet specifications, manufacturer will reimburse Owner the testing expense and the carpet may be rejected.

#### 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Measurement Verification: Dimensions shown on drawings are approximate. It is the Flooring Contractor's responsibility to verify all dimensions and job site conditions; order sufficient yardage to fully carpet areas as indicated and to fill overage requirements as specified. No substitutions shall be permitted to make up for any shortage of material in overage or in carpet to be installed.

#### 1.6 SEAMING REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: In addition to the requirements and recommendations of the Carpet Manufacturer, the following criteria shall be adhered to:
  - 1. Installation layout shall enable future replacement, especially in large open areas and traffic paths, unless specifically indicated in writing by Owner or Owner's representative.
  - 2. No carpet tile pieces smaller than 6" in width or length shall be used.
  - 3. Seams occurring at doors of different types of carpet shall be parallel to closed door, and be centered directly under the closed door.
  - 4. Flooring Contractor is responsible for trimming all loose yarn and fuzzy edges of carpet tiles.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location in concrete with installation of finish floors to receive floor mats.

#### 1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Entrance Tiles: Full-size units equal to 2 percent of amount installed for each size, color, and pattern indicated.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. General: Provide special warranty, signed by Flooring Contractor, and Carpet Manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace defective materials and workmanship of carpeting work during a 10-year warranty period following date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ENTRANCE TILE

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide EF Contract "Access Style – Pattern/Color: Granite 967". or a comparable product by one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Mannington.
  - 2. Tandus Flooring.
  - 3. Lees Carpets.
  - 4. Patcraft.

B. Materials:

1. Construction: Textured Loop
2. Face Fiber: Encore SD Ultima.
3. Dye Method: Solution Dyed.
4. Gauge: 1/10 (3.94 rows/ cm)
5. Stitches Per Inches: 10.
6. Pile Density: 8000 oz./y3.
7. Total Weight: 30 oz/ yd<sup>2</sup>
8. Product Size: 24 x 24 in.
9. Backing: Nexus Modular

C. Warranties: Lifetime commercial limited.

D. Accessories:

1. Adhesives: Lees warrants that the use of Lees adhesives will bond the carpet to the properly prepared substrate for the life of the carpet. Substrate must meet Lees recommended floor preparation procedures. Should Lees adhesive not be used, Lifetime Adhesive Warranties become null and void.
2. Miscellaneous Materials: As recommended and approved in writing by manufacturer of carpet and selected by Flooring Contractor to meet project circumstance and requirements.
3. Transition Strip: Provide Roppe #66 transition strip (or other approved manufacturer product as selected by Architect). Transition strip to provide a smooth transition between entrance floor mat and resilient tile flooring.
  - a. Color as selected by Architect.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and floor conditions for compliance with requirements for location, sizes, and other conditions affecting installation of floor mats and frames.
  1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of this type of carpet by the glue down method.
  1. Installation Method: Quarter-Turn.
- B. Prepare the subfloor to insure a successful installation. Utilize a floor sealer such as Lees Everseal where needed or recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Carpeting shall be installed with pile lying in the same direction. Cut carpet evenly and accurately to fit neatly at walls, columns, and projections. Extend carpet under open-bottomed and raised-bottom obstructions, and under removable flanges of obstructions.
- D. Installed carpet shall be free from ripples, ravels, frays, puckers and raw exposed edges. All loop pile carpets will demonstrate some fuzzy edges due to normal manufacturing conditions. It is the carpet installer's responsibility to trim all edges to eliminate fuzzy seams.

END OF SECTION 12 4813



**DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

13 3419 METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

## SECTION 13 3419 - METAL BUILDING SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural-steel framing.
2. Foamed-insulation-core metal wall panels.
3. Accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete foundations, slabs, and anchor-bolt installation.
2. Section 08 1113 "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for personnel doors in metal buildings.
3. Section 08 3323 "Overhead Coiling Doors" for coiling vehicular doors in metal building systems.
4. Section 08 4113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" for entry doors in metal building systems.
5. Section 08 4523 "Translucent Structural Skylight & Wall System" for translucent wall system in metal building system.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terminology Standard: See MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for definitions of terms for metal building system construction not otherwise defined in this Section or in standards referenced by this Section.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete foundations and casting of anchor-rod inserts into foundation walls and footings. Anchor rod installation, concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate metal panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of supports and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to metal building systems including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Condition of foundations and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
  - b. Structural load limitations.
  - c. Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials and erector's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - d. Required tests, inspections, and certifications.
  - e. Unfavorable weather and forecasted weather conditions and impact on construction schedule.
2. Review methods and procedures related to metal roof panel assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:

- a. Compliance with requirements for purlin and rafter conditions, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
  - b. Structural limitations of purlins and rafters during and after roofing.
  - c. Flashings, special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect metal roof panels.
  - d. Temporary protection requirements for metal roof panel assembly during and after installation.
  - e. Roof observation and repair after metal roof panel installation.
3. Review methods and procedures related to metal wall panel assemblies including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Compliance with requirements for support conditions, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
  - b. Structural limitations of girts and columns during and after wall panel installation.
  - c. Flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that will affect metal wall panels.
  - d. Temporary protection requirements for metal wall panel assembly during and after installation.
  - e. Wall observation and repair after metal wall panel installation.

## 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of metal building system component.
1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
    - a. Foamed-insulation-core metal panels.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate components by others. Include full building plan, elevations, sections, details and the following:
1. Anchor-Rod Plans: Submit anchor-rod plans and templates before foundation work begins. Include location, diameter, and minimum required projection of anchor rods required to attach metal building to foundation. Indicate column reactions at each location.
  2. Structural-Framing Drawings: Show complete fabrication of primary and secondary framing; include provisions for openings. Indicate welds and bolted connections, distinguishing between shop and field applications. Include transverse cross-sections.
    - a. Show provisions for attaching mezzanines.
  3. Metal Roof and Wall Panel Layout Drawings: Show layouts of panels including methods of support. Include details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, clip spacing, trim, flashings, closures, and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work; show locations of exposed fasteners.
    - a. Show roof-mounted items including roof hatches, equipment supports, pipe supports and penetrations, lighting fixtures, and items mounted on roof curbs.
    - b. Show wall-mounted items including personnel doors, vehicular doors, windows, louvers, and lighting fixtures.
    - c. Show translucent panels.
  4. Accessory Drawings: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Gutters.
    - c. Downspouts.
    - d. Service walkways.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Panels: Nominal 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other exposed panel accessories.
  2. Flashing and Trim: Nominal 12 inches long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  3. Vapor-Retarder Facings: Nominal 6-inch- square Samples.
  4. Windows: Full-size, nominal 12-inch- long frame Samples showing typical profile.
  5. Accessories: Nominal 12-inch- long Samples for each type of accessory.
- E. Door Schedule: For doors and frames. Use same designations indicated on Drawings. Include details of reinforcement.
1. Door Hardware Schedule: Include details of fabrication and assembly of door hardware. Organize schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening.
  2. Keying Schedule: Detail Owner's final keying instructions for locks. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key set to unique door designations.
- F. Delegated Design Submittals: For metal building systems.
1. Include analysis data indicating compliance with performance requirements and design data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For erector manufacturer.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Letter of Design Certification: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Include the following:
1. Name and location of Project.
  2. Order number.
  3. Name of manufacturer.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Building dimensions including width, length, height, and roof slope.
  6. Indicate compliance with AISC standards for hot-rolled steel and AISI standards for cold-rolled steel, including edition dates of each standard.
  7. Governing building code and year of edition.
  8. Design Loads: Include dead load, roof live load, collateral loads, roof snow load, deflection, wind loads/speeds and exposure, seismic design category or effective peak velocity-related acceleration/peak acceleration, and auxiliary loads (cranes).
  9. Load Combinations: Indicate that loads were applied acting simultaneously with concentrated loads, according to governing building code.
  10. Building-Use Category: Indicate category of building use and its effect on load importance factors.
- D. Erector Certificates: For qualified erector, from manufacturer.
- E. Material Test Reports: For each of the following products:
1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
  2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
  3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.

4. Shop primers.
5. Nonshrink grout.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Surveys: Show final elevations and locations of major members. Indicate discrepancies between actual installation and the Contract Documents. Have surveyor who performed surveys certify their accuracy.

H. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panel finishes and door hardware to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer.

1. Accreditation: Manufacturer's facility accredited according to IAS AC472, "Accreditation Criteria for Inspection Programs for Manufacturers of Metal Building Systems."
2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of comprehensive engineering analysis and Shop Drawings by a professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located.

B. Erector Qualifications: An experienced erector who specializes in erecting and installing work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and who is acceptable to manufacturer.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, sheets, panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to Project site before installation time.

3. Complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with panel installation only when weather conditions permit metal panels to be installed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Exterior Finish Warranty period: 25 years.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Amrican Buildings, a Nucor Company.
  2. Nucor Building Systems; a Nucor company.
  3. Butler Manufacturing Company; a division of BlueScope Buildings North America, Inc.
  4. Ceco Building Systems; part of the Cornerstone Building Brands.
  5. Garco Building Systems; a division of NCI.
  6. Star Building Systems, part of the Cornerstone Building Brands.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain metal building system components, including primary and secondary framing and metal panel assemblies, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide a complete, integrated set of mutually dependent components and assemblies that form a metal building system capable of withstanding structural and other loads, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into building interior.

#### 2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 4000 "Quality Requirements," to design metal building system.
- B. Structural Performance: Metal building systems to withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to procedures in MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual."
  1. Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Deflection and Drift Limits:
    - a. Design metal building system assemblies to withstand serviceability design loads without exceeding deflections and drift limits recommended in AISC Steel Design Guide No. 3 "Serviceability Design Considerations for Steel Buildings." Or as indicated in Structural Drawings, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Seismic Performance: Metal building system to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Structural Performance for Metal Roof and Wall Panels: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
  - 1. Uplift Rating: UL 60.
- G. FM Global Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Global 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.
- H. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels according to one of the following when tested according to CRRC-1:
  - 1. Three-year, aged, solar reflectance of not less than 0.55 and emissivity of not less than 0.75.
  - 2. Three-year, aged, Solar Reflectance Index of not less than 64 when calculated according to ASTM E1980.

## 2.4 STRUCTURAL-STEEL FRAMING

- A. General:
  - 1. Primary structural members or framing refer to any built-up, hot-rolled, or cold-form columns or framing systems which transfer their loads directly to the structure's foundation.
  - 2. Secondary structural members or framing refer to any cold-form, hot-rolled, or built-up purlins, girts, struts, bracing, or beams which transfer their loads from the cladding to the primary structural member or framing to which they attach
  - 3. Unless otherwise specified, the minimum standard design thickness of structural framing members shall be as follows:
    - a. Webs of welded built-up members 0.125 inch
    - b. Flanges of welded built-up members 0.175 inch
    - c. Cold-formed secondary framing members 0.060 inch
    - d. Cable bracing 0.250 inch
    - e. Rod bracing 0.625 inch
    - f. Angle bracing 0.1875 inch
  - 4. All hot-rolled sheet, plate, and strip steel used in webs from 0.125 to 0.175 inch thick shall conform to the provisions of ASTM A-1011 SS Grade 55 (55,000 psi minimum yield strength). All thicknesses greater than 0.175 inch (to 0.5 inch inclusive) shall conform to ASTM A572 Grade 55 (55,000 ksi minimum yield).
  - 5. All hot-rolled flat bars used in flanges shall conform to the provisions of ASTM A572 Grade 55, with minimum yield of 55,000 psi.

6. All wide-flange, channel, and "S" shapes shall conform to the provisions of ASTM A-36, ASTM A-572 or ASTM A-992 ("W" shape only). All tube and pipe shapes shall conform to ASTM A-500, Grade B.
7. All hot-rolled or cold-rolled sheet and strip steel less than 0.150 inch thick used in fabrication of cold-formed structural members shall be of ASTM A-1011, Grade 55 (55,000 psi minimum yield stress) or Grade 55 Mod 57 (57,000 psi minimum yield stress).
8. Cable used for diagonal bracing shall conform to ASTM A-475; coating Class A, Grade-Extra High Strength 7 wire. Threaded rod shall meet ASTM A-529, Grade 50 requirements. Angle sections shall meet minimum A-36 requirements.
9. Structural steel members shall be sheared, formed, punched, welded, and painted by the manufacturer. All shop connections shall be welded in conformance with standards based upon the current edition of ANSI/AWS D1.1 referenced previously in this guide in Paragraph 2.1.1. Welders and welding operators are qualified as provided in this same code.
10. Bolt field connections of primary structural members with high strength bolts and nuts (ASTM A-325) and fully tighten unless otherwise specified. Field bolt secondary structural members with ASTM A-307 or A-325 bolt assemblies as called for in design.
11. Manufacture light gage cold-formed sections by roll or brake-forming. Fabricate dimensions to MBMA tolerances.
12. Structural-framing members that are not galvanized shall be given one shop coat of a red primer.
  - a. In accordance with systems industry standards, clean surfaces of loose rust, loose mill scale, and other foreign matter by using, as a minimum, the hand tool cleaning method SSPC-SP2 prior to painting.
    - 1) Method is described in "Surface Preparation Specification No. 2", Steel Structures Painting Manual – Systems and Specifications, Volume 2, 7th Edition, Steel Structures Painting Council, Pittsburgh, PA, 1995, pp. 35-36.)
  - b. Painted surfaces are to be reasonably free of excessive drips, runs, sags, and cracking.
    - 1) Reference MBMA Article IV, Section 4.2.4 of the 2006 Edition of the MBMA Metal Building Systems Manual, p. 328.
    - 2) Also reference AISC3 Section 6.5 of the "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges", AISC, 2005 for intended primer protection, proper care, erection, and function of shop prime coat.
13. Provide identifying marks on framing members to aid in the erection of the building.

B. Primary Structural Members:

1. Manufacturer's standard primary-framing system, designed to withstand required loads and specified requirements. Primary framing includes transverse and lean-to frames; rafters, rake, and canopy beams; sidewall, intermediate, end-wall, and corner columns; and wind bracing.
2. Rigid frame, sidewall columns, rafter beams, and canopy beams shall be shop-welded, built-up "I" shapes. Members shall be of constant depth or tapered, having base plates, necessary clips, and splice plates for completely field-bolted assembly and attachment of secondary members.
3. Rafter beams and endwall columns shall be either built-up "I" shapes, "WF" shapes, or roll-formed "C" sections as required to satisfy load and span requirements.
4. Interior columns shall be round pipe sections. Built-up "I" shapes or hot-rolled "WF" or tube sections shall be provided as required to satisfy certain load or order requirements.

C. Secondary Structural Members:

1. Purlins and girts shall be roll-formed "Z" or "C" sections of adequate size and thickness as determined by the design criteria. Purlins and girts shall be either simple-span or continuous members.



2. Purlins for "long-bay" building layouts shall typically consist of bar joists designed under Steel Joist Institute specifications for the prescribed loads. Field welding of joist bridging and seats is the standard method for connection of joists to supporting primary structural members.
3. Eave struts shall be roll-formed or brake-formed "C" sections.
4. Wind bracing shall consist of diagonal cable, rod, or angle bracing. Adjustment to cable braces shall be made by an eyebolt assembly. Adjustment to rod bracing may be by threaded assembly. Angle bracing is not adjustable and may require final field welding.
5. Flange bracing shall consist of angle bracing connected to the web of the purlin or girt and to the compression flange of the primary structural member. Flange braces shall be attached to bar joists via field welding.
6. Base support for wall panels shall consist of a continuous base angle, base angle flash, or base girt which shall be securely attached to concrete by the contractor using powder actuated drive pins/nails, expansion anchors, or other similar anchorage.

D. Structural Steel: Comply with AISC 360, "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."

E. Bolted Connections: Comply with RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts."

F. Cold-Formed Steel: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" for design requirements and allowable stresses.

## 2.5 FOAMED-INSULATION-CORE METAL WALL PANELS

A. Concealed-Fastener, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with tongue-and-groove panel edges; designed for sequential installation by interlocking panel edges and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips or fasteners.

1. Panel Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): **17.5**.
2. Facing Material: Fabricate panel with exterior and interior facings of same material and thickness. Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.024-inch nominal uncoated steel thickness. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
  - a. Exterior Surface:
    - 1) Metal Panel EM-1A & EM-1B: Metl-Span CF Striated Insulated Metal Wall Panel as manufactured by Nucor Building Group.
    - 2) Metal Panel EM-2: Metl-Span CF Mesa Insulated Metal Wall Panels with minor ribs as manufactured by Nucor Building Group.
  - b. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
  - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
3. Panel Coverage: **36 inches** nominal.
4. Panel Thickness: **2 inches**.
5. Insulation Core: Modified polyisocyanurate or polyurethane foam using a non-CFC blowing agent, foamed-in-place or board type, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively.
  - a. Closed-Cell Content: 90 percent when tested according to ASTM D6226.
  - b. Density: **2.0 to 2.6 lb/cu. ft.** when tested according to ASTM D1622.
  - c. Compressive Strength: Minimum **20 psi** when tested according to ASTM D1621.
  - d. Shear Strength: 26 psi when tested according to ASTM C273/C273M.
6. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Class A according to ASTM E108.
7. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Flame-spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E84.

B. Finishes:

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of **0.5 mil**.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide accessories as standard with metal building system manufacturer and as specified. Fabricate and finish accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
  1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- B. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same material as metal roof panels.
  2. Clips: Manufacturer's standard, formed from stainless steel sheet, designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
  3. Cleats: Manufacturer's standard, mechanically seamed cleats formed from stainless steel sheet or nylon-coated aluminum sheet.
  4. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  5. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch** thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same material as metal wall panels.
  2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
  3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum **1-inch** thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- D. Flashing and Trim: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.018-inch nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating; finished to match adjacent metal panels.

1. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers.
2. Opening Trim: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.030-inch nominal uncoated steel thickness, prepainted with coil coating. Trim head and jamb of door openings, and head, jamb, and sill of other openings.

E. Materials:

1. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide fasteners with heads matching color of materials being fastened by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
2. Fasteners for Metal Roof Panels:
  - a. Self-drilling or self-tapping, zinc-plated, hex-head carbon-steel screws, with a stainless-steel cap or zinc-aluminum-alloy head and EPDM sealing washer.
  - b. Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless steel or zinc-alloy-steel hex washer head, with EPDM washer under heads of fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
3. Fasteners for Metal Wall Panels:
  - a. Self-drilling or self-tapping, zinc-plated, hex-head carbon-steel screws, with EPDM sealing washers bearing on weather side of metal panels.
  - b. Self-drilling, Type 410 stainless steel or self-tapping, Type 304 stainless steel or zinc-alloy-steel hex washer head, with EPDM sealing washers bearing on weather side of metal panels.
4. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws with hex washer head.
5. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets.
6. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
7. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
8. Metal Panel Sealants:
  - a. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene-compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape of manufacturer's standard size.
  - b. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; one-part elastomeric polyurethane or polysulfide; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended by metal building system manufacturer.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Design components and field connections required for erection to permit easy assembly.
  1. Mark each piece and part of the assembly to correspond with previously prepared erection drawings, diagrams, and instruction manuals.
  2. Fabricate structural framing to produce clean, smooth cuts and bends. Punch holes of proper size, shape, and location. Members to be free of cracks, tears, and ruptures.
- B. Tolerances: Comply with MBMA's "Metal Building Systems Manual" for fabrication and erection tolerances.

- C. Primary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other items required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld framing for bolted field assembly.
  - 1. Make shop connections by welding or by using high-strength bolts.
  - 2. Join flanges to webs of built-up members by a continuous, submerged arc-welding process.
  - 3. Brace compression flange of primary framing with steel angles or cold-formed structural tubing between frame web and purlin web or girt web, so flange compressive strength is within allowable limits for any combination of loadings.
  - 4. Weld clips to frames for attaching secondary framing if applicable, or punch for bolts.
  - 5. Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces for shop priming according to SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime primary framing with specified primer after fabrication.
  
- D. Secondary Framing: Shop fabricate framing components to indicated size and section by roll forming or break forming, with baseplates, bearing plates, stiffeners, and other plates required for erection welded into place. Cut, form, punch, drill, and weld secondary framing for bolted field connections to primary framing.
  - 1. Make shop connections by welding or by using non-high-strength bolts.
  - 2. Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated surfaces for shop priming according to SSPC-SP 2. Shop prime uncoated secondary framing with specified primer after fabrication.
  
- E. Metal Panels: Fabricate and finish metal panels at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
  - 1. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of metal panel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with erector present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Before erection proceeds, survey elevations and locations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments to receive structural framing, with erector present, for compliance with requirements and metal building system manufacturer's tolerances.
  - 1. Engage land surveyor to perform surveying.
- C. Proceed with erection only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean and prepare surfaces to be painted according to manufacturer's written instructions for each particular substrate condition.
- B. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural framing secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural framing, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 ERECTION OF STRUCTURAL FRAMING

- A. Erect metal building system according to manufacturer's written instructions and drawings.
- B. Do not field cut, drill, or alter structural members without written approval from metal building system manufacturer's professional engineer.
- C. Set structural framing accurately in locations and to elevations indicated, according to AISC specifications referenced in this Section. Maintain structural stability of frame during erection.
- D. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.
  - 1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
  - 2. Tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
  - 3. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- E. Align and adjust structural framing before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with framing. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
  - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
  - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure will be completed and in service.
- F. Primary Framing and End Walls: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Level baseplates to a true even plane with full bearing to supporting structures, set with double-nutted anchor bolts. Use grout to obtain uniform bearing and to maintain a level base-line elevation. Moist-cure grout for not less than seven days after placement.
  - 1. Make field connections using high-strength bolts installed according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for bolt type and joint type specified.
    - a. Joint Type: Snug tightened or pretensioned as required by manufacturer.
- G. Secondary Framing: Erect framing level, plumb, rigid, secure, and true to line. Field bolt secondary framing to clips attached to primary framing.
  - 1. Provide rake or gable purlins with tight-fitting closure channels and fasciae.
  - 2. Locate and space wall girts to suit openings such as doors and windows.
  - 3. Provide supplemental framing at entire perimeter of openings, including doors, windows, louvers, ventilators, and other penetrations of roof and walls.
- H. Bracing: Install bracing in roof and sidewalls where indicated on erection drawings.
  - 1. Tighten rod and cable bracing to avoid sag.
  - 2. Locate interior end-bay bracing only where indicated.
- I. Framing for Openings: Provide shapes of proper design and size to reinforce openings and to carry loads and vibrations imposed, including equipment furnished under mechanical and electrical work. Securely attach to structural framing.

- J. Erection Tolerances: Maintain erection tolerances of structural framing within AISC 303.

### 3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Examination: Examine primary and secondary framing to verify that structural-panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by manufacturer.
1. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels, to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seams before metal panel installation.
- D. General: Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
1. Field cut metal panels as required for doors, windows, and other openings. Cut openings as small as possible, neatly to size required, and without damage to adjacent metal panel finishes.
    - a. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted unless approved in writing by manufacturer.
  2. Install metal panels perpendicular to structural supports unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Flash and seal metal panels with weather closures at perimeter of openings and similar elements. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
  4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  5. Locate metal panel splices over structural supports with end laps in alignment.
  6. Lap metal flashing over metal panels to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
- E. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Install screw fasteners using power tools with controlled torque adjusted to compress EPDM washers tightly without damage to washers, screw threads, or metal panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
1. Arrange and nest side-lap joints so prevailing winds blow over, not into, lapped joints. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply metal panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
- F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.
1. Seal metal panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant the full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.5 TRANSLUCENT PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Translucent Panels: Attach translucent panels to structural framing with fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor translucent panels securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  1. Provide end laps of not less than **6 inches** and side laps of not less than **1-1/2-inch** corrugations for metal roof panels.
  2. Provide end laps of not less than **4 inches** and side laps of not less than **1-1/2-inch** corrugations for metal wall panels.
  3. Align horizontal laps with adjacent metal panels.
  4. Seal intermediate end laps and side laps of translucent panels with translucent mastic.

### 3.6 DOOR AND FRAME INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place according to manufacturers' written instructions. Coordinate installation with wall flashings and other components. Seal perimeter of each door frame with elastomeric sealant used for metal wall panels.
- B. Personnel Doors and Frames: Install doors and frames according to NAAMM-HMMA 840. Fit non-fire-rated doors accurately in their respective frames, with the following clearances:
  1. Between Doors and Frames at Jambs and Head: **1/8 inch**.
  2. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: **1/8 inch**.
  3. At Door Sills with Threshold: **3/8 inch**.
  4. At Door Sills without Threshold: **3/4 inch**.
  5. At fire-rated openings, install frames according to, and doors with clearances specified in, NFPA 80.
- C. Sliding Service Doors: Bolt support angles to opening head members through factory-punched holes. Bolt door tracks to support angles at maximum **24 inches** o.c. Set doors and operating equipment with necessary hardware, jamb and head mold stops, continuous hood flashing, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports.
- D. Field Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 8000 "Glazing."
- E. Door Hardware:
  1. Install surface-mounted items after finishes have been completed at heights indicated in DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
  2. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
  3. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
  4. Set thresholds for exterior doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements for concealed mastics specified in Section 07 9200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.7 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
  - 1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly, including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
  - 2. Install components for a complete metal wall panel assembly, including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
  - 3. Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with corrosion-resistant coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
  - 1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  - 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of **10 feet** with no joints allowed within **24 inches** of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than **1 inch** deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform field quality control special inspections and to submit reports.
- B. Product will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Doors: After completing installation, test and adjust doors to operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Door Hardware: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation and function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.
- C. Windows: Adjust operating sashes and ventilators, screens, hardware, and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and at weather stripping to ensure smooth operation and weathertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.



3.10 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A780/A780M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- C. Touchup Painting:
  - 1. After erection, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted structural framing , bearing plates, and accessories.
    - a. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning," or by SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
    - b. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- D. Metal Panels: Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
  - 1. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- E. Doors and Frames: Immediately after installation, sand rusted or damaged areas of prime coat until smooth and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.
  - 1. Immediately before final inspection, remove protective wrappings from doors and frames.

END OF SECTION 13 3419

**DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT**

14 2400      HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

## SECTION 14 2400 - HYDRAULIC ELEVATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Machine Room-less Hydraulic passenger elevators.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Facilities and Controls" for temporary use of elevators for construction purposes.
  - 2. Section 03 3000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in concrete.
  - 3. Section 05 1200 "Structural Steel Framing" for the following:
    - a. Attachment plates, angle brackets, and other structural-steel preparations for fastening guide-rail brackets.
    - b. Divider beams.
    - c. Hoist beams.
    - d. Structural-steel shapes for subsills that are part of steel frame.
  - 4. Section 05 5000 "Metal Fabrications" for the following:
    - a. Attachment plates and angle brackets for supporting guide-rail brackets.
    - b. Divider beams.
    - c. Hoist beams.
    - d. Structural-steel shapes for subsills.
    - e. Pit ladders.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 apply to work of this Section.
- B. Service Elevator: A passenger elevator that is also used to carry freight.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include capacities, sizes, performances, operations, safety features, finishes, and similar information. Include product data for car enclosures; hoistway entrances; and operation, control, and signal systems.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and large-scale details indicating service at each landing; machine room layout; coordination with building structure; relationships with other construction; and locations of equipment.
  - 2. Include large-scale layout of car-control station.
  - 3. Indicate maximum dynamic and static loads imposed on building structure at points of support as well as maximum and average power demands.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For finishes involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For exposed car, hoistway door and frame, and signal equipment finishes, 3-inch-square Samples of sheet materials and 4-inch lengths of running trim members.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For elevators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Submit manufacturer's/installer's standard operation and maintenance manual, in accordance with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 including diagnostic and repair information available to manufacturer's and Installer's maintenance personnel.
- B. Inspection and Acceptance Certificates and Operating Permits: As required by authorities having jurisdiction for normal, unrestricted elevator use.
- C. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: Submit a continuing maintenance proposal from Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard one-year maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Elevator manufacturer or an authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle materials, components and equipment in manufacturer's protective packaging. Store materials, components, and equipment off of ground, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sleeves, block outs, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and other items that are embedded in concrete or masonry for elevator equipment. Furnish templates, sleeves, elevator equipment with integral anchors, and installation instructions and deliver to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Furnish well casing and coordinate delivery with related excavation work.
- C. Coordinate locations and dimensions of other work specified in other Sections that relates to hydraulic elevators, including pit ladders; sumps and floor drains in pits; entrance subsills; electrical service; and electrical outlets, lights, and switches in hoistways, pits, and machine rooms.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair, restore, or replace elevator work that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, operation or control system failure, including excessive malfunctions; performances below specified ratings; excessive wear; unusual deterioration or aging of materials or finishes; unsafe conditions; need for excessive maintenance; abnormal noise or vibration; and similar unusual, unexpected, and unsatisfactory conditions.
  - 2. Warranty Period: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. KONE Inc.
  2. Otis Worldwide Corporation.
  3. Schindler Elevator Corp.
  4. ThyssenKrupp Elevator.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain elevators from single manufacturer.
1. Major elevator components, including pump-and-tank units, plunger-cylinder assemblies, controllers, signal fixtures, door operators, car frames, cars, and entrances, are manufactured by single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the United States Access Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC A117.1.
- C. Seismic Performance: Elevator system withstands the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7 Seismic Zone "4" and complies with elevator seismic requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
1. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
  2. Project Seismic Design Category: D.
  3. Elevator Component Importance Factor: 1.5 1.0.
  4. Provide earthquake equipment required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
  5. Provide seismic switch required by ASCE/SEI 7.

### 2.3 ELEVATORS

- A. Elevator System, General: Manufacturer's standard machine room-less hydraulic elevator systems. Unless otherwise indicated, manufacturers' standard components are used, as included in standard elevator systems and as required for complete system.
- B. Elevator Description:
1. Group Number: 1.
  2. Elevator Number(s): 1.
  3. Type:
    - a. Holeless, beside-the-car, single-acting, cylinder.
  4. Rated Load: **4500 lb.**
  5. Rated Speed: **100 fpm.**
  6. Operation System: Single automatic operation.
  7. Security Features: Card-reader operation.
  8. Car Enclosures:
    - a. Inside Width: Not less than **64 inches** from side wall to side wall.
    - b. Inside Depth: Not less than **95 inches** from back wall to front wall (return panels).
    - c. Inside Height: Not less than **93 inches** to underside of ceiling.
    - d. Front Walls (Return Panels): Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish with integral car door frames.
    - e. Car Fixtures: Satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.

- f. Side and Rear Wall Panels: Plastic-Laminate.
  - g. Reveals: Enameled or powder-coated steel.
  - h. Door Faces (Interior): Enameled or powder-coated steel.
  - i. Door Sills: Aluminum.
  - j. Ceiling: Enameled or powder-coated steel.
  - k. Handrails: 1/2 by 2 inches rectangular satin stainless steel, at sides and rear of car.
  - l. Floor prepared to receive resilient flooring (specified in Section 09 6500 "Resilient Flooring").
9. Hoistway Entrances:
- a. Width: 48 inches.
  - b. Height: 84 inches.
  - c. Type: Single-speed side sliding.
  - d. Frames: Enameled or powder-coated steel.
  - e. Doors: Enameled or powder-coated steel.
  - f. Sills: Aluminum.
10. Hall Fixtures: Recessed type with no exposed-metal surfaces.
11. Elevator Pit: 4'-0"
12. Additional Requirements:
- a. Provide inspection certificate in each car, mounted under acrylic cover with frame made from satin stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M, No. 4 finish.

## 2.4 SYSTEMS AND COMPONENTS

- A. Pump Units: Positive-displacement type with a maximum of 10 percent variation between no load and full load and with minimum pulsations.
- 1. Pump is submersible type with submersible squirrel-cage induction motor and shall be suspended inside oil tank from vibration isolation mounts.
  - 2. Motor has variable-voltage, variable-frequency control.
- B. Hydraulic Silencers: System has hydraulic silencer containing pulsation-absorbing material in blowout-proof housing at pump unit.
- C. Piping: Size, type, and weight of piping as recommended by elevator manufacturer, with flexible connectors to minimize sound and vibration transmissions from power unit.
- 1. Cylinder units are connected with dielectric couplings.
  - 2. Casing for Underground Piping: Schedule 40 PVC pipe complying with ASTM D1785, joined with PVC fittings complying with ASTM D2466 and solvent cement complying with ASTM D2564.
- D. Hydraulic Fluid: Elevator manufacturer's standard fluid with additives as needed to prevent oxidation of fluid, corrosion of cylinder and other components, and other adverse effects.
- E. Inserts: Furnish required concrete and masonry inserts and similar anchorage devices for installing guide rails, machinery, and other components of elevator work. Device installation is specified in another Section.
- F. Protective Cylinder Casing: PVC or HDPE pipe casing complying with ASME A17.1/CSA B44, of sufficient size to provide not less than 1-inch clearance from cylinder and extending above pit floor. Casing has means of monitoring effectiveness to comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- G. Car Frame and Platform: Welded steel units.
- H. Guides: Roller guides. Provide guides at top and bottom of car frame.

## 2.5 OPERATION SYSTEMS

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard microprocessor operation system as required to provide type of operation indicated.
- B. Auxiliary Operations:
  - 1. Service: Service is initiated by a card reader at designated floors. One elevator is removed from group operation and directed to the floor where service was initiated. On arriving at the floor, elevator opens its doors and parks, and a lighted sign directs passengers to exit elevator. Car is placed in operation by selecting a floor and pressing door close button or by operating keyswitch to put car in independent service. After responding to floor selected or being removed from independent service, car returns to group operation. If car is not placed in operation within a preset time after being called, it is returned to group operation.

## 2.6 DOOR-REOPENING DEVICES

- A. Infrared Array: Provide door-reopening device with uniform array of 36 or more microprocessor-controlled, infrared light beams projecting across car entrance. Interruption of one or more light beams causes doors to stop and reopen.
- B. Nudging Feature: After car doors are prevented from closing for predetermined adjustable time, through activating door-reopening device, a loud buzzer sounds and doors begin to close at reduced kinetic energy.

## 2.7 CAR ENCLOSURES

- A. Provide steel-framed car enclosures with nonremovable wall panels, with removable car roof, access doors, power door operators, and ventilation.
  - 1. Provide standard railings complying with ASME A17.1/CSA B44 on car tops where required by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.
- B. Materials and Finishes: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
  - 1. Subfloor:
    - a. Exterior, C-C Plugged grade plywood, not less than 7/8-inch nominal thickness.
  - 2. Floor Finish:
    - a. Specified in 09 6519 " Resilient Tile Flooring."
  - 3. Enameled- or Powder-Coated-Steel Wall Panels: Flush, formed-metal construction; fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet. Provide with factory-applied enamel or powder-coat finish; colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 4. Fabricate car with recesses and cutouts for signal equipment.
  - 5. Fabricate car door frame integrally with front wall of car.
  - 6. Enameled- or Powder-Coated-Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet. Provide with factory-applied enamel or powder-coat finish; colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 7. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on car doors.
  - 8. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, 1/4 inch thick.
  - 9. Metal Ceiling: Flush panels, with four low-voltage downlights in each panel. Align ceiling panel joints with joints between wall panels.
  - 10. Light Fixture Efficiency: Not less than 35 lumens/W.
  - 11. Ventilation Fan Efficiency: Not less than 3.0 cfm/W.

## 2.8 HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

- A. Hoistway Entrance Assemblies: Manufacturer's standard horizontal-sliding, door-and-frame hoistway entrances complete with track systems, hardware, sills, and accessories. Frame size and profile accommodate hoistway wall construction.
  - 1. Where gypsum board wall construction is indicated, frames are self-supporting with reinforced head sections.
- B. Materials and Fabrication: Manufacturer's standards, but not less than the following:
  - 1. Enameled- or Powder-Coated-Steel Frames: Formed from cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet. Provide with factory-applied enamel or powder-coat finish; colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 2. Primed or Powder-Coated-Steel Frames: Formed from cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet. Provide with factory-applied, rust-resistant primer or powder coating for field painting.
  - 3. Steel Subframes: Formed from cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet, with factory-applied enamel or powder-coat finish or rust-resistant primer. Fabricate to receive applied finish as indicated.
  - 4. Stainless Steel Frames: Formed from stainless steel sheet.
  - 5. Bronze Frames: Formed from cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet, with enamel or powder-coat finish, and with formed-bronze sheet laminated to steel frames using adhesive that fully bonds metal to metal without telegraphing or oil-canning.
  - 6. Star of Life Symbol: Identify emergency elevators with star of life symbol, not less than **3 inches** high, on both jambs of hoistway door frames.
  - 7. Enameled- or Powder-Coated-Steel Doors: Flush, hollow-metal construction; fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet. Provide with factory-applied enamel or powder-coat finish; colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  - 8. Sight Guards: Provide sight guards on doors matching door edges.
  - 9. Sills: Extruded or machined metal, with grooved surface, **1/4 inch** thick.
  - 10. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M.

## 2.9 SIGNAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide hall-call and car-call buttons that light when activated and remain lit until call has been fulfilled. Provide vandal-resistant buttons and lighted elements illuminated with LEDs.
- B. Car-Control Stations: Provide manufacturer's standard recessed car-control stations. Mount in return panel adjacent to car door unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Mark buttons and switches for required use or function. Use both tactile symbols and Braille.
  - 2. Provide "No Smoking" sign matching car-control station, either integral with car-control station or mounted adjacent to it, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Emergency Communication System: Two-way voice communication system, with visible signal, which dials preprogrammed number of monitoring station and does not require handset use. System is contained in flush-mounted cabinet, with identification, instructions for use, and battery backup power supply.
- D. Car Position Indicator: Provide illuminated, digital-type car position indicator, located above car door or above car-control station. Also, provide audible signal to indicate to passengers that car is either stopping at or passing each of the floors served. Include travel direction arrows if not provided in car-control station.
- E. Hall Push-Button Stations: Provide one hall push-button station at each landing.
  - 1. Provide units with flat faceplate for mounting with body of unit recessed in wall.



2. Equip units with buttons for calling elevator and for indicating applicable direction of travel.
- F. Hall Lanterns: Units with illuminated arrows; however, provide single arrow at terminal landings. Provide the following:
  1. Manufacturer's standard wall-mounted units, for mounting above entrance frames.
- G. Hall Annunciator: With each hall lantern, provide audible signals indicating car arrival and direction of travel. Signals sound once for up and twice for down.
  1. At manufacturer's option, audible signals may be placed on cars.
- H. Hall Position Indicators: Provide illuminated, digital-display-type position indicators, located above each hoistway entrance at ground floor.
  1. Provide units with flat faceplate for mounting and with body of unit recessed in wall.
- I. Emergency Pictorial Signs: Fabricate from materials matching hall push-button stations, with text and graphics as required by authorities having jurisdiction, indicating that in case of fire, elevators are out of service and exits should be used instead. Provide one sign at each hall push-button station unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.10 FINISH MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, commercial steel, Type B, exposed, matte finish.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel, Type B, pickled.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304.
- D. Textured Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, with embossed texture rolled into exposed surface.
  1. Metal surface is satin polished after texturing.
- E. Stainless Steel Bars: ASTM A276, Type 304.
- F. Stainless Steel Tubing: ASTM A554, Grade MT 304.
- G. Bronze Plate and Sheet: ASTM B36/B36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal).
- H. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (architectural bronze).
- I. Bronze Tubing: **ASTM B135**, Alloy UNS No. C23000 (red brass, 85 percent copper).
- J. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B221**, Alloy 6063.
- K. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B151/B151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500 or No. C77600.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elevator areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Verify critical dimensions and examine supporting structure and other conditions under which elevator work is to be installed.

- B. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Provide well casing as necessary to retain well-hole walls.
- B. Install cylinder in protective casing within well hole. Before installing protective casing, remove water and debris from well hole.
  - 1. Fill void space between protective casing and cylinder with corrosion-protective filler.
  - 2. Align cylinder and fill space around protective casing with fine sand.
- C. Install cylinder plumb and accurately centered for elevator car position and travel. Anchor securely in place, supported at pit floor. Seal between protective casing and pit floor with **4 inches** of nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- D. Install cylinder plumb and accurately centered for elevator car position and travel. Anchor securely in place, supported at pit floor and braced at intervals as needed to maintain alignment. Anchor cylinder guides at spacing needed to maintain alignment and avoid overstressing guides.
- E. Welded Construction: Provide welded connections for installing elevator work where bolted connections are not required for subsequent removal or for normal operation, adjustment, inspection, maintenance, and replacement of worn parts. Comply with AWS workmanship and welding operator qualification standards.
- F. Sound Isolation: Mount rotating and vibrating equipment on vibration-isolating mounts to minimize vibration transmission to structure and structure-borne noise due to elevator system.
- G. Install piping above the floor, where possible. Install underground piping in casing.
  - 1. Excavate for piping and backfill encased piping according to applicable requirements in Section 31 2000 "Earth Moving."
- H. Lubricate operating parts of systems as recommended by manufacturers.
- I. Alignment: Coordinate installation of hoistway entrances with installation of elevator guide rails for accurate alignment of entrances with car. Where possible, delay installation of sills and frames until car is operable in shaft. Reduce clearances to minimum, safe, workable dimension at each landing.
- J. Leveling Tolerance: **1/4 inch**, up or down, regardless of load and travel direction.
- K. Set sills flush with finished floor surface at landing. Fill space under sill solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
- L. Locate hall signal equipment for elevators as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. For groups of elevators, locate hall push-button stations between two elevators at center of group or at location most convenient for approaching passengers.
  - 2. Place hall lanterns either above or beside each hoistway entrance.
  - 3. Mount hall lanterns at a minimum of **72 inches** above finished floor.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate elevator(s).
- B. Check operation of elevator with Owner's personnel present before date of Substantial Completion. Determine that operation systems and devices are functioning properly.

3.4 MAINTENANCE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service includes 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of elevator Installer. Include monthly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper elevator operation. Parts and supplies are manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  - 1. Perform maintenance during normal working hours.
  - 2. Perform emergency callback service during normal working hours with response time of two hours or less.

END OF SECTION 14 2400